

LEARNLOGOS.COM



eNewsLetter

Learning the “Word/Logos” through Training

Welcome!

Being our inauguration eNewsletter, I know some of you will have great ideas to improve this format. So feel free to provide positive and negative feedback to me at tips@learnlogos.com

Thanks! And Enjoy

John Fallahee
President/CEO
LearnLogos.com

ALERT!!!

Free Book for Logos 4: The Greek New Testament: SBL Edition

Learn More/Download Now: <http://www.logos.com/sblgnt?sblgnt>

OPTIMIZING LOGOS 4

Guides: Faster than a Speeding Bullet

When you run your passage guide, exegetical guide, and Bible word study report you may experience what I call “The Great Wait”! You know what I am talking about...it can take some time for Logos 4 to search your library and return important results in the guides. After the guides are finally completed, and your computer “catches its breath”; you can actually start clicking and reading the search results.

I propose a different approach. Instead of the Logos default of “expanding” every section of the guide, you should “collapse” every section. Here is what I mean:

Expanded

Passage Guide | Matthew 28:16-20

Matthew 28:16-20

See Also Passage Guide July 17

▶ MATTHEW 28:16-20 STUDY NOTES (MATTHEW 28:16-20)

▶ CROSS REFERENCES

The New Treasury of Scripture Knowledge
The Treasury of Scripture Knowledge

Mk 16:7 | And He said to them, "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to all creation.

Da 7:13 | "I kept looking in the night visions, And behold, with the clouds of heaven One like a Son of Man was coming. And He came up to the Ancient of Days And was presented before Him.

Da 7:14 | "And to Him was given dominion, Glory and a kingdom, That all the peoples, nations and men of every language Might serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion Which will not pass away. And His kingdom is one Which will not be destroyed.

▶ MY CONTENT

▶ PARALLEL PASSAGES

Collapsed

Passage Guide | Matthew 28:16-20

Matthew 28:16-20

See Also Passage Guide July 17

▶ MATTHEW 28:16-20 STUDY NOTES (MATTHEW 28:16-20)

▶ CROSS REFERENCES

▶ MY CONTENT

▶ PARALLEL PASSAGES

▶ LITERARY TYPING

▶ HANDOUT

▶ BIBLICAL PEOPLE

▶ BIBLICAL PLACES

▶ BIBLICAL THINGS

▶ MEDIA RESOURCES

▶ MUSIC

▶ TOPICS

▶ INTERESTING WORDS

▶ COMPARE VERSIONS

▶ COMMENTARIES | All Commentaries

▶ COLLECTIONS | Theology

HOW TO: (Guides > Passage Guide, Exegetical Guide, Bible Word Study)

Shortcut: Click the link to open the [Passage Guide](#), [Exegetical Guide](#), [Bible Word Study](#)

To collapse any section, simply click on the section name or the small, black triangle.

To expand any section, simply click on the section name or the small, black triangle.

Note: Whenever you close the guide, Logos 4 will remember which section of the guide is expanded, and which is collapsed. A good “housekeeping” habit is to open and close one section at a time. This will keep Logos 4 fast, almost as fast a speeding bullet :)

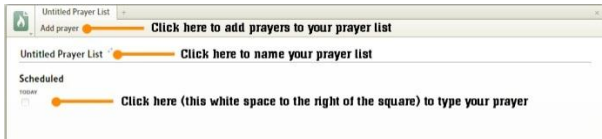
PRAYER

Prayer List: I Almost Forgot to Pray!

We know the power of prayer, we know the importance of prayer, but few of us persevere in prayer. Let me show one tool that can change all that. It's the prayer list.

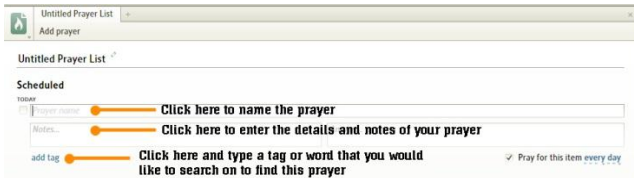
Shortcut: [Click here to open the prayer list](#)

How to: Tools > Prayer List



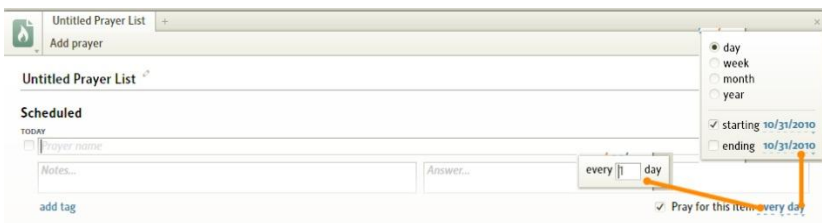
Once the prayer list is opened, you can change the name of the prayer list from “Untitled Prayer List” to something more specific. There is no need to click “Add prayer”, since Logos 4 by default has added one already. Of course, you will need to click “Add prayer” to add additional prayers to the prayer list.

In order to type your prayer, click the white space to the right of the small white box under the word “today”.

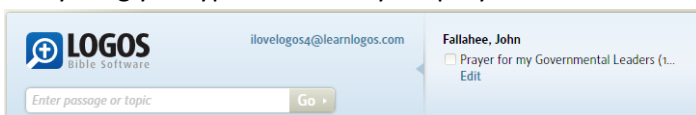


You can now enter the details of your prayer including the name of the prayer, specific details of the prayer, and even create a tag or word that you can associate with the prayer to organize and search later to find your prayer. Some tag ideas could include the following: Family, Church, Co-Workers, Government, etc.

Now that you have entered your prayer details, it is important to determine how often you want pray this prayer. Logos 4 has a built in reminder system to help you remember to pray. In the bottom right you will the word “every” and the word “day”. These are the defaults. If you click on “day” you can choose the starting and ending dates. You can also choose whether you will pray on a daily, weekly, monthly, or yearly basis. Next, you need to choose the frequency. In other words, how many days, how many weeks, how many months, and how many years to pray this prayer. See below:

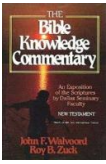


Once you have finished entering the details of your prayer, you can close this prayer list and Logos 4 will remember everything you typed. Look for your prayer list on the home page.



Historical Background/Theological Background

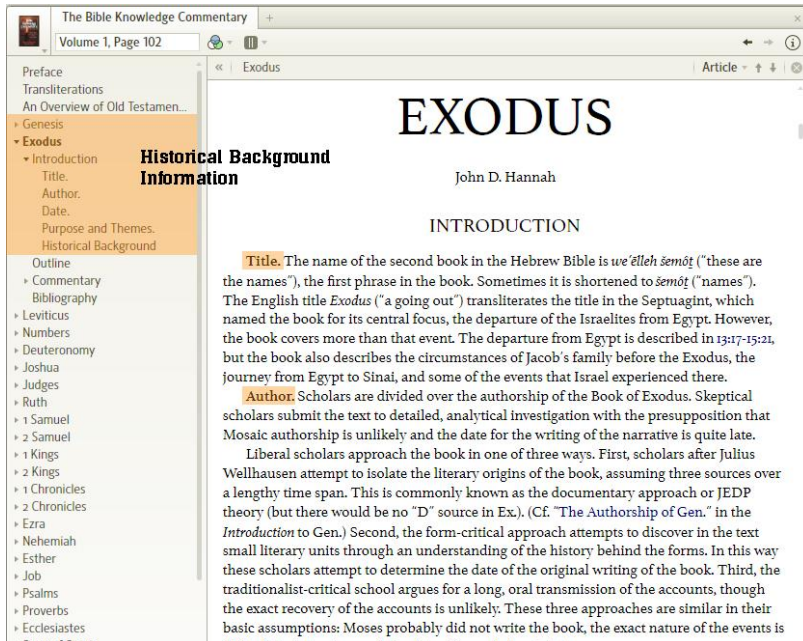
Commentaries: It was so long ago!



Bridging the biblical past with our present day is important when it comes to interpretation and application. But it can be difficult tracking down the relevant information. One of the first places I visit for this information is the Bible Knowledge commentary.

Shortcut: [Click here to open this commentary](#)

Did you know that at the front of every commentary is a mini-history lesson? Check this out:



Do you see that at the beginning of every book of the Bible you can learn about the title, author, date, purpose, themes, and additional historical background?

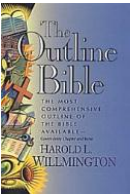
What book do you use for historical background research?

Email me so I can share in our next eNewsletter.

tips@learnlogos.com

Outlining

Getting a Quick Overview



There are several ways to outline a text and use an outline for studying. This week I would like to introduce to you the idea of using an outline to review large sections of the biblical text, even overview a whole book of the Bible. Please keep in mind that it is essential that you have read the book several times before taking this step.

One of my favorite resources for this task is the Outline Bible by Harold Wilmington

Action: [Click here to open The Outline Bible](#)

As you can see below, this resource explains in an exposition, summary fashion the details of the book. So anytime you are studying a verse or passage of the book, review the whole book's outline to grasp how that passage fits in the greater context.

The Outline Bible

Jude 1

Letters > Jude > Section Outline One (Jude 1)

Article

SECTION OUTLINE ONE (JUDE 1)

Jude writes about apostasy.

- I. THE BURDEN TO WARN AGAINST APOSTASY (1:1-3)
 - A. Jude's prayer (1:1-2): He asks God to grant his readers mercy, peace, and love.
 - B. Jude's plan (1:3a): He originally planned to write concerning God's wonderful salvation.
 - C. Jude's perception (1:3b): He then realized that the Spirit wanted him to warn against apostasy.
- II. THE NEED TO WARN AGAINST APOSTASY (1:4a): Wicked apostates have secretly slipped in among the believers.
- III. THE HISTORICAL EXAMPLES OF APOSTASY (1:5-6, 7b, 11): Jude lists six such examples.
 - A. The nation of Israel (1:5): Apostasy caused by unbelief.
 - B. Fallen angels (1:6): Apostasy caused by rebellion.
 - C. Sodom and Gomorrah (1:7b): Apostasy caused by sexual immorality.
 - D. Cain (1:11a): Apostasy caused by religious perversion.
 - E. Balaam (1:11b): Apostasy caused by financial greed.
 - F. Korah (1:11c): Apostasy caused by rejection of divine authority.
- IV. THE CHARACTERISTICS OF APOSTASY (1:4b-4c, 8-10, 16-19)
 - A. Changing God's grace into a license for immorality (1:4b)
 - B. Denying the deity of Jesus Christ (1:4c)
 - C. Degrading the human body (1:8a)
 - D. Rejecting authority (1:8b)
 - E. Slandering celestial beings (1:8c-9): Here Jude gives a classic example underlining the seriousness of this particular sin.
 - 1. The background (1:8c-9a): The archangel Michael was disputing with Satan about the body of Moses.
 - 2. The back-down (1:9b): Michael refused to level a slanderous accusation against the Devil, leaving that to God himself.
 - F. Degenerating into brute unreasoning animals (1:10)
 - G. Faultfinding (1:16a)
 - H. Flattering others only for their own advantage (1:16b)
 - I. Scoffing and divisive, following their own evil instincts, which are totally devoid of God (1:17-19)

If you are leader, teacher, or preacher this is a must use book. By the way, if you had Logos prior to Logos 4, you may already have this book in your library. If Logos 4 is your first Logos Bible Software program than you will need to purchase this book. [Click here to buy this book from Logos.](#)

Do you use outlines from a different book, let me know via email: tips@newsletter.com?

Word Study

To Infinity and Beyond...the Dictionaries and Lexicons

If you have used the Exegetical Guide or Bible Word Study Report, then you have used dictionaries and lexicons to further understand the meaning of a word. But what happens when this is not enough information or you want to know more about a word?

One of my favorite techniques is to search for a Hebrew or Greek Word in my entire library or in a special collection (we'll talk about this next week) I have created. You will be thrilled to realize how many other books can provide additional insight into a word's meaning.

Here are the steps:

Step 1: Open an interlinear Bible like the NAS and right click on a word. In this example, we are in Philippians 4:10 and are right clicking on the word "revived". [Click here to go to Philippians 4:10 in the NAS.](#)

Step 2: Choose from the menu *at the right*, 'manuscript'.

Note: The reason we chose 'manuscript' verses 'lemma' is that many use this form in their writings. You can search the lemma form as well.

Step 3: Choose from the menu *at the left*, 'search entire library'.

The screenshot shows the NAS Bible interface with Philippians 4:10 open. The word 'revived' is highlighted, and a context menu is open. The menu options are: Copy, Search this resource, Search all open resources, Search entire library (3), Selection Reference, Manuscript (2), Lemma, Morph, Greek Strong's, Louw-Nida, Add a note to 'Gallat.Robby', Add a clipping to 'Worship', and Show Information. The 'Search entire library' option is selected, and the 'Manuscript' option is also highlighted.

Please remember that results will vary based on the books and resources in your library. [Click here to run the search.](#)

The screenshot shows the search results for the Greek word ἀνεθάλτε (anethaltes). The search results show the word in the context of Philippians 4:10, with a translation and commentary. The search results are displayed in a table format with columns for the word, the text, and the translation/commentary.

Illustrations/Applications

A Picture is worth a thousand words...

I don't know about you, but I struggle to find good illustrations. The best illustrations are from your own life, but even these too can be limited or not appropriate to share with others. So this week I will share with you a list of all the books of illustrations I have and how many illustrations are in each book. I have also included hymn books because of their rich, vivid lyrical content.

Encyclopedia of 7700 illustrations
Great Quotations (500)
My Favorite Illustrations (400)
The Merriam-Webster Dictionary of Quotations (4000)
1000 Illustrations for Preaching and Teaching
AMG's 4,000 Illustration Collection
Illustrations for Biblical Preaching (1500)
Thomas Nelson's Speaker's Sourcebook of New Illustrations (500)
750 Engaging Illustrations
The Speaker's Quote Book (4,500)
2200 Quotations: Spurgeon
10,000 Sermon Illustrations
Encyclopedia of Christian Quotations (20000)
R.A. Torrey Anecdotes & Illustrations (100)
Stories, Illustrations, and Quotes (2000)
Cups of Light and Other Illustrations (200)
Thomas Nelson's Speaker's Sourcebook (300)
Collin's Quotations Finder (13,000)
Hymn & Scripture Selection Guide (432)
Real Stories (101)
More Real Stories (101)
101 Hymn Stories (200)
101 More hymn Stories (200)
The Psalms and Hymns of Isaac Watts (400)
Hymns of Ter Steegen, Suso, and Others (90)
Steve Green's Midi Hymnal (3000)
Logos Hymnal Media Resource (300)
Logos Hymnal (101)

If you are using a book of illustrations that I did not mention, please let me know so I can tell others in the next eNewsLetter! Email: tips@learnlogos.com



Searching

The Surgeon's Search

If you have spent any time in Logos searching for something specific than you probably have experienced the frustration of the two extremes: finding nothing relevant and finding too much of something!

Well, I have a tip that you can use to avoid this problem. It is the surgeon's search.

Here is the search formula:

Key Verse + Key Books + Key Word = Relevant Search Results

Here is an example of the search:

<bible = john 3:16> WITHIN 10 WORDS faith

Ok, let's break this down search formula. Note: You need to use the "Basic Search Engine"

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

- **<bible = john 3:16>** This is the most important part of the search query. If an author has taken the time to cite a verse in their discussion, there is a high probability the discussion has something to do with John 3:16.
- **"faith"** This is a keyword. Please notice that I did not use any words from the verse John 3:16. If I had, then my search results would include any book that mentioned the text of this passage. This would increase my search results significantly with necessarily gaining any additional insight about the verse. I chose faith, because it's an idea or topic associated with the passage. This is so important. If I am looking to gain a greater insight into faith and its relationship to John 3:16, I need to find discussions in books that mention this as well. If the book talks about John 3:16 without ever mentioning faith, well I don't want that in my search results. So choose your topic or related idea carefully.
- **"WITHIN 10 WORDS"** First this must be all caps. Now the purpose of this phrase is keep John 3:16 and the topic faith in close proximity. I chose "10 words" as a good starting point. If you get too many results, choose "5 Words". If you get too few results, choose "20 words". This "proximity" is essential because if the author of a book is talking about "John 3:16" in one chapter and talking about "faith" in another chapter, than that author does not have the information I am looking for. However, if the author has joined the ideas together in close proximity, than it has a high probability of being very relevant to my study.

Now you may have noticed that we have discussed key words and key verses, but what about key books? This last part of the search formula is equally important. I need to ask the question, where would I most likely find this information? For example, if I was looking for an illustration related to "John 3:16" and "faith" than I would create and search a collection of books of illustrations. If I wanted more scholarly insights into this passage, I would create and search commentaries. In fact, I would replace the English word "faith" and use the Greek word for believe "πιστεύω".

[Click here to run the following search with your library <john 3:16> WITHIN 10 WORDS faith](#)

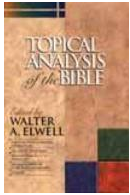
As you can see this search formula is not only precise but it is flexible. Have fun with this one!

Email me your most helpful "surgeon's search" to tips@learnlogos.com

Book Overview & Review

Topical Analysis of the Bible

One of my favorite books in my digital library is the little known “Topical Analysis of the Bible”. I like it for three reasons.



#1) It has a very detailed outline of some of the most significant topics in the Bible!

#2) It has a plethora (fancy word for a whole bunch!) of Bible references!

#3) It is easy to use!

Take a look below:

Topical Analysis of the Bible

Title Page

Information

Introduction

1. The Personal God

2. Jesus Christ

1. Christ in the OT

A. The Preexistent Christ

1. The Preexistent Christ in Theo...

2. The Preexistent Christ in Theo...

B. Christ in Prophecy

C. Christ in Type

1. Persons as Types of Christ

2. Objects as Types of Christ

D. Christ in Parallel

II. Prophecies concerning Christ

III. The Deity of Christ

IV. The Humanity of Christ

V. Metaphors, Titles, and Names of...

VI. The Name of Christ

3. The Holy Spirit

4. The Works of God

5. The Revelation of God

6. Supernatural Beings

7. Human Beings

8. Human Beings: Women

9. Sin

10. Salvation

11. Sanctification

12. Christian Living: Responsibilities to...

13. Christian Living: Responsibilities to...

14. The Church

15. Eschatology

2. Jesus Christ > I. Christ in the OT > C. Christ in Type

Article

C. Christ in Type

1. Persons as Types of Christ

a) Aaron

Exod. 28:1; Heb. 5:4-5

b) Adam

Rom. 5:14; 1 Cor. 15:45

c) David

2 Sam. 8:15; Ps. 89:19-20; Ezek. 37:24; Matt. 1:1; Acts 13:22

d) Jonah

Jon 1:17; Matt. 12:40

e) Melchizedek

Gen. 14:18-20; Heb. 5:8-10; Heb. 7:1-17

f) Moses

Num. 12:7; Deut. 18:15; Acts 3:20-22; Heb. 3:2-6

g) Solomon

1 Kings 10:1-5; Matt. 12:42

2. Objects as Types of Christ

a) Bronze Snake

Num. 21:9; John 3:14-15

b) Manna

Exod. 16:11-15; John 6:32-35

c) Passover Lamb

Exod. 12:3-6, 46; Num. 9:12; Ps. 34:20; John 19:36; 1 Cor. 5:7

d) Rock of Horeb

Exod. 17:6; 1 Cor. 10:3-4

e) Veil

Exod. 40:21; 2 Chron. 3:14; Heb. 10:19-20

D. Christ in Parallel

1. Persons as Parallels to Christ

a) Abel

Gen. 4:8, 10; Heb. 12:24

b) Eliakim

Isa. 22:20-22; Rev. 3:7

c) Elijah

Luke 4:24-26

d) Elisha

2 Kings 4:42-44; Mark 6:35-44; Luke 4:23-24, 27

e) Isaac

Gen. 22:1-2; John 3:16; Heb. 11:17-19

f) Joshua

Josh. 1:5-6; Heb. 4:8-9

g) Kinsman-Redeemer

Ruth 3:9; Ruth 4:14; Gal. 3:13

h) Noah

Gen. 5:29; 2 Cor. 1:5

Amazing Detailed Outlines

Excellent Cross References

[Click here to buy the book from Logos](#)

How to Study the Bible

12 Important Questions

How do you interact with the Bible when you read? Years ago I learned about inductive Bible study and five important questions to ask the text: Who, What, Where, When, Why & How (The 5Ws and H). This helped me turn **Passive Bible Reading** into **Active Bible Study**. As I read each verse, I would ask these questions and then write down in a list what I learned from the biblical text. It revolutionized my Bible study time.

Today, I would like to take you further. I would like to help you gain greater insight into scripture and help you organize better what you learn from scripture. In fact, these twelve questions can help see how one verse is related to another.

The questions are as follows:

12 KEY QUESTIONS

- | | |
|---|--|
| # 1) What does this verse say about the scriptures? | # 7) ... salvation? |
| # 2) ... God the Father? | # 8) ... Israel? |
| # 3) ... God the Son (Jesus Christ)? | # 9) ... Church? |
| # 4) ... God the Holy Spirit? | #10) ... Angels? |
| # 5) ... man? | #11) ...Demons? |
| # 6) ... sin? | #12) ..end times/yet to be fulfilled prophecy? |

So let me give you an example of how this works:

Ephesians 2:1 (NAS) 1 And you were dead in your trespasses and sins,

Man: Because man is spiritually dead, he sins and trespasses

This technique will not only help you see clearly these great themes of the Bible, but you will see how these doctrines are important to understanding the Bible.

Prayer

Integrating Prayer into Bible Study

A unique role that prayer can play in your Bible study is asking God to illuminate your mind. I chose the word illuminate specifically because God does not audibly speak directly to His people today. Through the written Word and the Holy Spirit's help, we can gain insight into the scriptures, but we must ask.

Therefore, using the prayer list tool, I suggest that when you read the text for the first time, and questions about the text come to mind, write those down and place them in the prayer list. Then before you study, lift up these questions to the Father and ask him to help you find the answers to these questions to your study.

Here are some example prayers that I have used in the past:

- Lord, I am really stuck in understanding Ephesians 2:1-3, why does Paul bring up their past?
- Father, what is the connection between Philippians 2:1-3 and Philippians 4-13?

Now after you prayer, be on alert for the answer!

By the way, keep those questions for teaching and preaching, they are very useful in introducing the text to your audience. More often than not, they are asking the same questions.

How to Preach

Clarity

Many students and preachers ask me, what is the most important aspect of preaching and/or teaching? At first blush, this is a hard question to answer, because there are so many elements that go into preaching. Such as, character and lifestyle of the preacher, preparation and study time, presentation style, the text chosen, etc. But when you step back from it all, there is one aspect of preaching that if missing, the sermon and/or the lesson would utterly fail. That aspect is clarity.

When I raise the issue of clarity, what I am referring to is are you making the Bible clear to the listener. Are you explaining the text so that they can understand its meaning? As I listen to preachers today, there is more confusion than clarity in the pulpit. They are clear to understand, but they don't clearly explain the text and that difference will result in a congregation that will grow in the grace and knowledge of the truth or become undiscerning.

The scriptures are clear, and it is the responsibility of the preacher to make it clear to the audience. Furthermore, the Holy Spirit is not limited by man, but it can do a greater work when the Bible is speaking rather than man is speaking.

I believe the most significant way to improve the clarity of your message is to get an outline rooted in the biblical text.

In my training videos, I have a video that shows you how to create a clear outline from the Biblical text:

1. Best Practices (Supplemental CD)
 - Lesson 5 Observing the Text, Exercise 6 – Identifying Key Ideas/Clauses with the Text (6 Minutes)

Q & A / Questions & Answers

Sentence Diagramming/Structuring

Question:

How do I change the default text size for all my books?

Answer:

There are actually two ways.

- First, you change the zoom or program scaling. This literally will make everything bigger or small.
Tools > Program Settings > Accessibility > Program Scaling > You choose the %
- Second, you can change the text or font size of the all books, everything else remains the same.
Tools > Program Settings > Accessibility > Default Text Size > You choose the %

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter!

tips@learnlogos.com

LEARNLOGOS.COM



eNewsLetter

Learning the “Word/Logos” through Training

Welcome!

I know some of you will have great ideas to improve this format. So feel free to provide positive and negative feedback to me at tips@learnlogos.com

Note: There are several types of links in this document: book links, scripture links, and more. Feel free to click on them.

Thanks! And Enjoy

John Fallahee
President/CEO
LearnLogos.com

ALERT!!!

1. Free Book for Logos 4: The Lexham English Bible

Learn More/Download Now: <http://www.logos.com/product/6162/lexham-english-bible>

2. Free Book for Logos 4: Gospel Coalition Foundation Documents

Learn More/Download Now: <http://www.logos.com/product/5163/gospel-coalition-foundation-documents>

OPTIMIZING LOGOS 4

Guides: Sights & Sounds

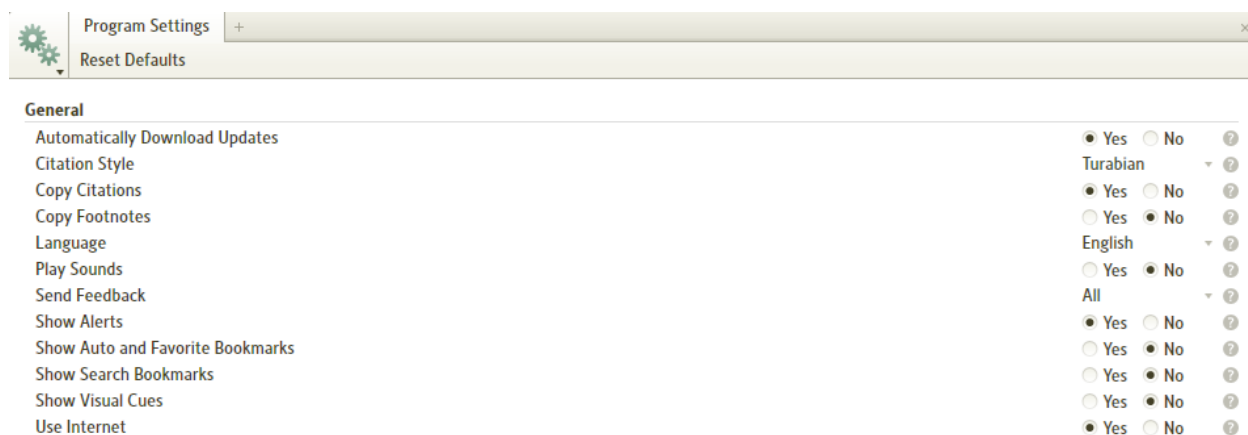
Sights: You may have noticed that when you click on a link to a book/resource a flashing, orange circle will appear. I have found this to be a little annoying and slow the performance of the program. See instructions below.

Sounds: I remember one elder meeting when a pastor walked in late during prayer time, then turned on his Logos program, and well, you can imagine what happened next! If you wish to avoid having Logos sing to your friends, family, and others when you least expect it, try the instructions below.

HOW TO: (go to the Main Menu > Tools > Program Settings)

Sights: Next, click the circle labeled “NO” for “Show Visual Cues”

Sounds: Next, click the circle labeled “NO” for “Play Sounds”

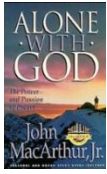


PRAYER

Two Must Have Books for Prayer:

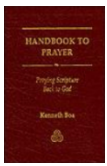
Do you remember in [Luke 11:1](#), after Jesus finished praying to the Father, one of the disciples asked Jesus “Lord, teach us to pray...”? What if you could learn how to pray in such a way that others would ask you to teach them how to pray?

Well you can get prayer training from two key books:



[John MacArthur's Alone with God](#)

This book will teach how to pray based on the Lord's Prayer/Disciples Prayer (Matthew 6:9-13, Luke 11:1-4)



[Kenneth Boa's Handbook to Prayer](#)

This book will help you develop a habit of prayer

HOW TO: (File > Prayer List)

[Click here](#) to use your prayer list in Logos 4 to record your prayers.

Historical Background/Theological Background

Theology: Seeing the “Forest through the Trees”

If you have studied the Bible for any time you know the experience of studying one passage and having related passages come to mind. The more you study, the more connections you will see.

Theology books can help connect the passage you are studying to the larger Scriptural theme; in other words you can see the proverbial “forest through the trees”.

So how do you use a theology book this way? I thought you would never ask!

HOW TO:

- 1) To discover the theological theme let’s open one of your theology books. I am going to use [Moody’s Handbook of Theology](#). You could use any theology book from your library or even create a collection of theology books.
- 2) Next, let’s open the basic search engine (Choose from the main menu, **Search**, then click **Basic Search**) and then type in the find box **<bible = Romans 8:28>**. [Click here and I will do it for you automatically.](#)
- 3) Now let’s look at the search results:

The screenshot shows a search interface for 'The Moody Handbook of Theology'. The search bar contains '<bible = romans 8:28>'. Below the search bar, it says 'LIBRARY RESULTS 5 results in 5 articles (0.13 sec)'. The results are ranked by book. The first result is 'Predestination' from The Moody Handbook of Theology, p 481, discussing God's sovereign call to salvation. The second is 'Manifestation of the Decree' from The Moody Handbook of Theology, p 208, discussing God's choice of believers. The third is 'His Works Confirm His Personality' from The Moody Handbook of Theology, p 247, discussing the Spirit's intercession. The fourth is 'God' from The Moody Handbook of Theology, p 106, discussing God's effectual call to salvation. The fifth is 'Efficacious Grace' from The Moody Handbook of Theology, p 335, discussing the 'called' passages of Scripture.

- 4) If you look closely at the search results we can see various theological themes: Predestination, God, Grace. Wow! You are a theologian! Now if you click the Bible verse links in the search results, you will get more cross references for this theological theme! Wow! You know your Bible better!

What is your favorite theological book?

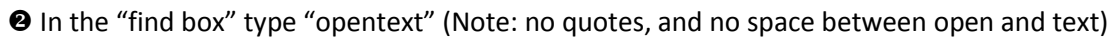
tips@learnlogos.com

Using Syntax to Develop a Biblical Outline: Part 1

For some it can take hours or even days to figure out what the main idea and subordinate ideas are of the Biblical text. And even after all that effort, many are not confident that the final outline is truly reflective of the Biblical author's intent.

HOW TO:

➊ Go to the main menu at the top, click on the “Library” or “Book” icon.



OpenText

3

View

Browse

Prioritize

Rank	Title
1	The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament
3	The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament Glossary
2	OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament: Clause Analysis

NO COVER

OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament: Clause Analysis

OpenText.org Clauses

Porter, Stanley E., O'Donnell, Matthew Brook, Reed, Jeffrey T., Tan, Randall, OpenText.org

The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament offers a syntactic analysis of the Greek New Testament.

The following resources are included:

- The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament
- The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament: Clause Analysis
- The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed...

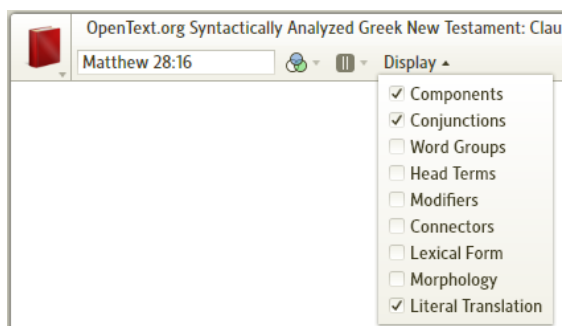
more »

add tag

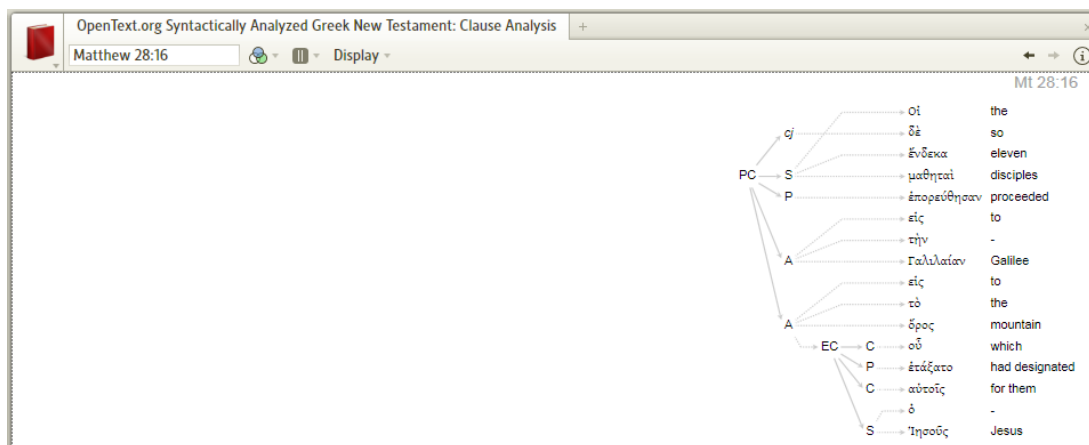
Porter, Stanley E., Matthew Brook O'Donnell, Jeffrey T. Reed et al. The OpenText.org Syntactically Analyzed Greek New Testament: Clause Analysis. OpenText.org Clause Analysis. Logos Research Systems, Inc., 2006.

[illegible]

5 Now all these abbreviations can be maddening! Let's turn some of these off. Here are my settings:



6 Now our syntax is easy to read:



7 Ok, are you ready for a vocabulary lesson?

PC → you might think “politically correct” but it actually is “Primary Clause” or in simpler terms, it’s the main idea or main thought.

P → is predicator or verb.

S → is subject.

EC → is embedded clause or a phrase inside another large phrase that further defines the phrase

SC → is the secondary clause or a phrase dependent on another phrase and further defines the phrase

So how does this help you make a better Biblical outline?

Let’s look at the PC and write down the S and the P and build a preliminary “skeleton” outline.

I. Disciples Proceeded (Matthew 28:16)

That’s it! Wow. You may be thinking this seem way too easy! And well, you are right!

With these syntax graphs you can more quickly identify the main idea because syntax takes into account morphology and grammar! Let's do another one for practice, look at OpenText for Matthew 28:17.



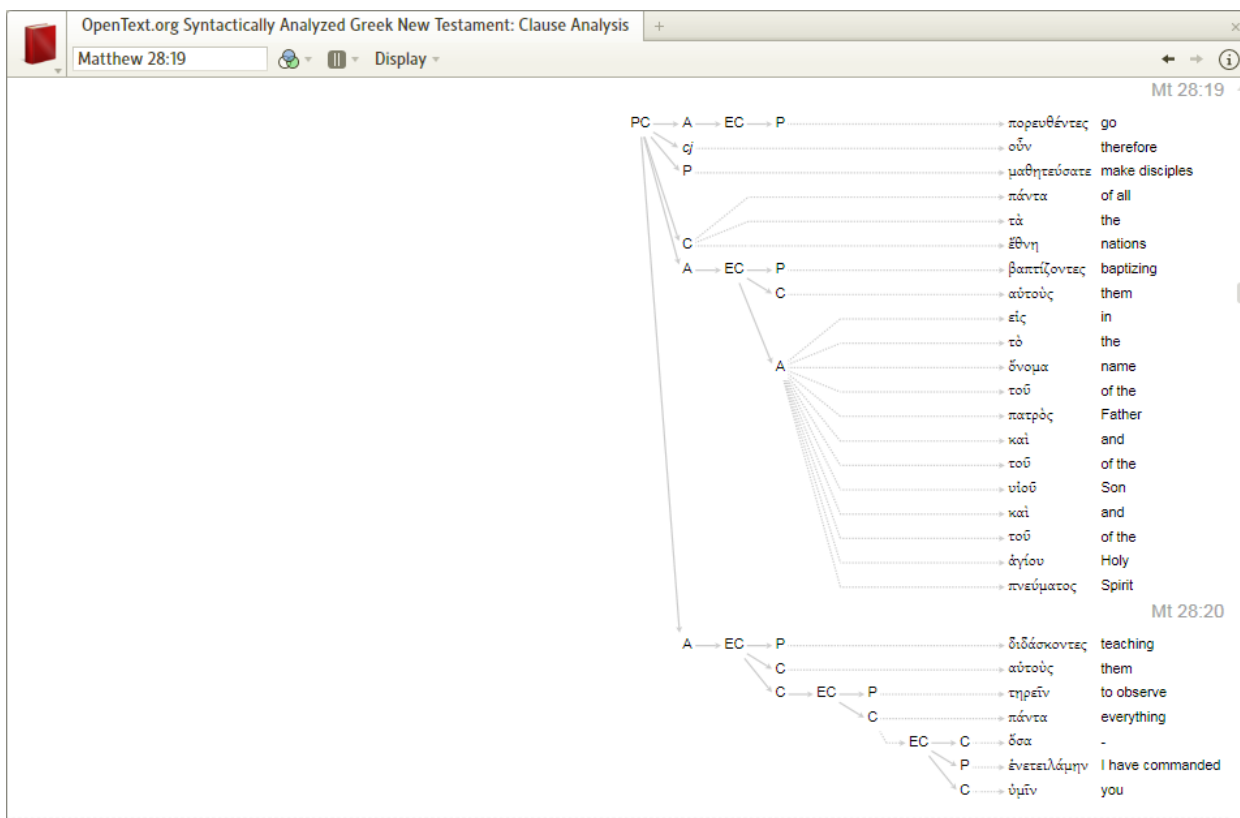
Now there is no S (subject) by itself, but the subject is mentioned with the P (predicator/verb).

- II. They Worshipped (Matthew 28:17a)
- III. Some Doubted (Matthew 28:17b)

Wow! You are building an outline! Why don't you try Matthew 28:18 on your own. Here is the solution.

- IV. Jesus Spoke (Matthew 28:18a)
- V. Authority has been given (Matthew 28:18b)

Now let's do one more, Matthew 28:19-20



Now watch out for those embedded clauses:

- VI. Make Disciples
 - a. Go
 - b. Baptizing
 - c. Teaching

Can you see why I made “Make Disciples” the main verb, it’s the only P (predicator/verb) connected directly to the PC (primary clause/main idea). Go, Baptizing, and teaching are verbs that are connected to EC (embedded clause/phrase within a phrase) and therefore are subordinate to “Make Disciples”. How many times have you heard a sermon on the “Great Commission” where the teacher/preacher emphasized “GO” as the most important point! Yikes! The main point is “Make Disciples”. Go, baptizing, and teaching define the process of “Making disciples”.

In the next LearnLogos.com eNewsletter I will show you how to “chunk” or refine this outline further!

If you want more in-depth training on this, get my Interactive Training Videos (see Blue Disc, Supplemental Exercises, Lesson 5, Exercise 6) or signup for my Distant Education Class:



Click One

Word Study

Bring Order to Chaos! Creating a Collection of Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek Dictionaries

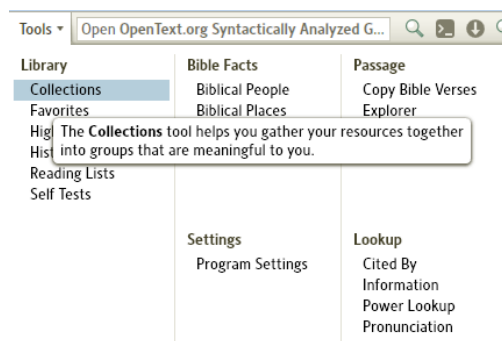
In the last LearnLogos.com eNewsletter we searched our entire library for a Greek word. This time, let's search a specialized collection of Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek dictionaries and lexicons (note: Lexicons is just another type of dictionary)

Now you may be asking, "John, why would I search a Hebrew dictionary for a Greek word or vice versa?" It may surprise you to know that there are Greek words in some of your Hebrew dictionaries and Hebrew words in your Greek dictionaries. And when that happens, it will help you find even more information about a word, plus you can build a bridge between the OT and NT.

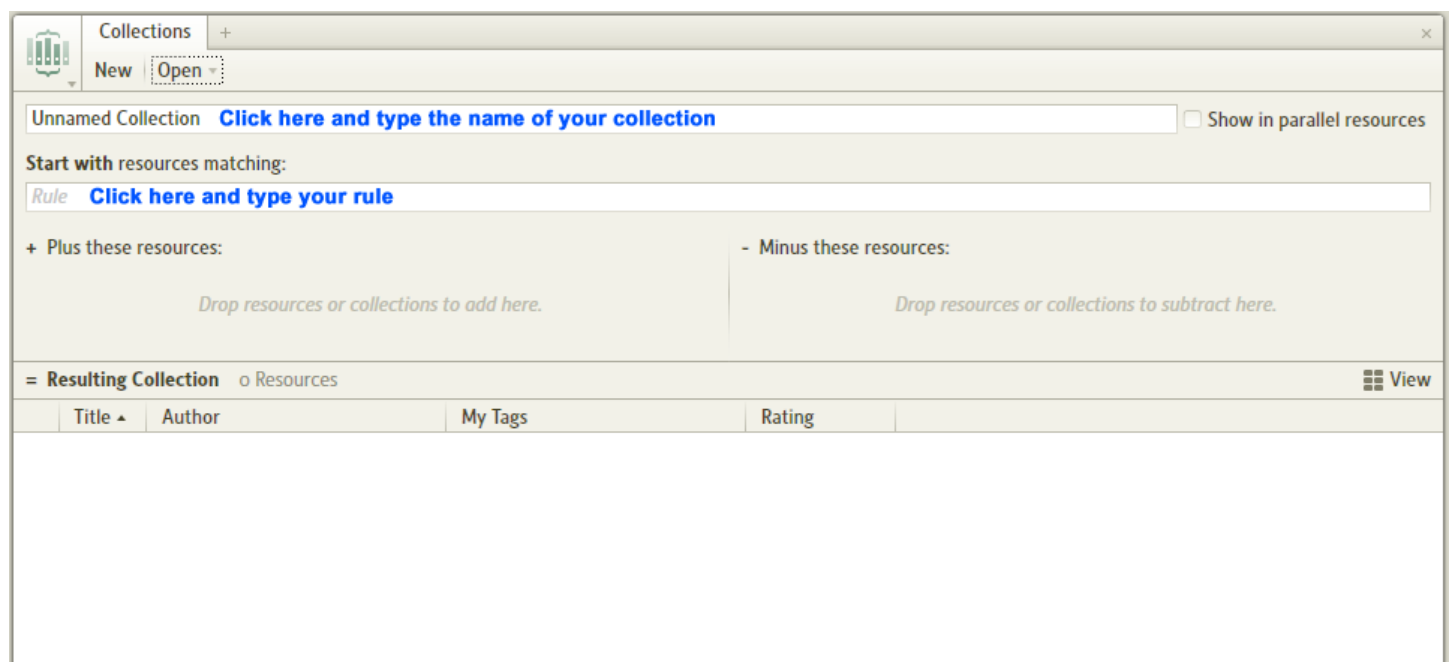
So let's get at it:

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu and choose "Tools", and then choose "Collections" from the menu



- 2 Now you are confronted with a seemingly complex screen, but with a little help, you will master this tool!



- 3 Click in the box labeled "Unnamed Collection" and type the following: **Hebrew-Greek Dictionaries**

- 4 In the box labeled "Rule", type the following: **type:lexicon**

Note: Rules are amazing! As you can see, by using a special field called “type” and using the special keyword “lexicon”, all of the dictionaries and lexicons appeared in the list. We don’t have to find and manually name every Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek dictionary! That saves time and is more accurate. An additional benefit of rules is that when you add books to your Logos 4 library, the rules will automatically add any new dictionaries. You don’t have to update your collection! Now that is smart!

So here is what my collection of dictionaries looks like:

The screenshot shows the Logos 4 Collections window. At the top, there's a search bar with 'Hebrew-Greek Dictionaries' and a checkbox for 'Show in parallel resources'. Below the search bar, it says 'Start with resources matching:' followed by a text box containing 'type:lexicon'. There are two sections for adding or subtracting resources, both currently empty. Below these, it says '= Resulting Collection 43 Resources'. At the bottom, there's a table with columns 'Title', 'Author', and 'My Tags'.

Title	Author	My Tags
Enhanced Brown-Driver-Briggs Hebrew and English Lexicon	Brown, Francis; Driver, Samuel...	
Enhanced Strong's Lexicon	Woodside Bible Fellowship	
The Exegetical Dictionary of the New Testament	Balz, Horst; Schneider, Gerhard	
Gesenius' Hebrew-Chaldee Lexicon to the Old Testament	Gesenius, Friedrich Wilhelm; Tre...	
Glosses for the Qumran Sectarian Manuscripts	Abegg, Jr., Martin G.	
A Greek-English Lexicon	Liddell, Henry George; Scott, Ro...	
A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature	Arndt, William; Gingrich, F. Wilb...	
A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature, Third Edition	Danker, Frederick William; Baue...	Greek Dictionary
Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament based on Semantic Domains	Louw, Johannes P.; Nida, Eugen...	
A Greek-English Lexicon of the Septuagint, Revised Edition	Lust, Johan; Eynikel, Erik; Hausp...	
The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament, CD-ROM Edition	Koehler, Ludwig; Baumgartner,...	
The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament: Volume 5, Aramaic	Koehler, Ludwig; Baumgartner,...	
An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon	Liddell, Henry George	
Kleines Wörterbuch zum Neuen Testament: Griechisch-Deutsch	Kassühlke, Rudolf; Newman, Bar...	
The Lexham Analytical Lexicon to the Greek New Testament	Logos Research Systems	
New American Standard Hebrew-Aramaic and Greek Dictionaries : Updated Edition	Thomas, Robert L.	
The New Strong's Dictionary of Hebrew and Greek Words	Strong, James	
New Strong's Guide to Bible Words	Strong, James	
Targum Lexicon	Comprehensive Aramaic Lexicon	
The Theological Dictionary of the New Testament	Kittel, Gerhard; Bromiley, Geoff...	
The Theological Dictionary of the New Testament, Abridged in One Volume	Kittel, Gerhard; Friedrich, Gerha...	
Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament	Harris, Robert Laird; Archer, Gle...	
Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words	Vine, W. E.; Unger, Merrill Frede...	
Vine's Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words	Vine, W. E.; Bruce, F. F.	
Vocabulary of the Greek Testament	Moulton, James Hope; Milligan,...	
Wörterbuch zum Alten Testament: Hebräisch/Aramäisch-Deutsch und Hebräisch/Aramäisch-Englisch	Bosman, H. J.; Oosting, R.; Pots...	

5 Now let’s close this window by clicking on the “X” in the upper right corner of this collections window and remember, Logos 4 will automatically save this collection.

6 Now let’s search for a word using this collection. Go to the main menu and click the search icon:



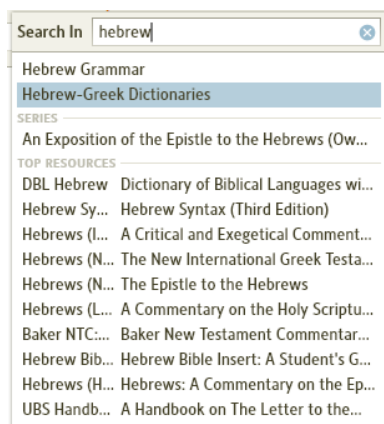
7 Click on “basic” at the top right of your search window

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

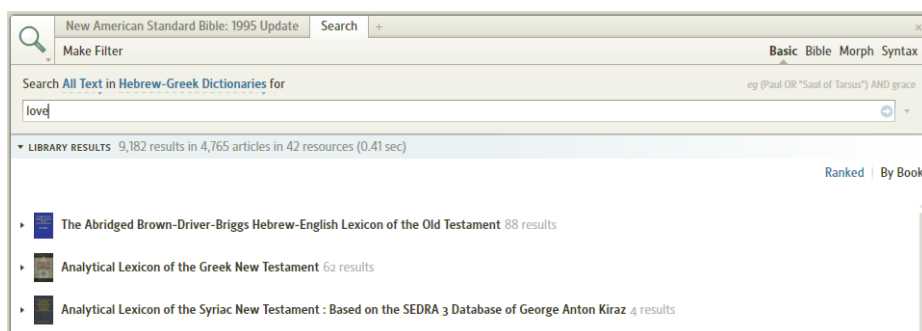
8 Click on “Entire Library” or whatever may be the second colored word listed

Search All Text in Entire Library for

9 Type “Hebrew” in the “Search in Box” and click “Hebrew-Greek Dictionaries” collection that you created



10 In the “find” box, type “love” (note: do not use quotes) and press the enter key and examine the search results.



Note: I clicked on the “by Book” option to view my results “by books view”

As you can see we have Hebrew and Greek dictionaries in our results! Now you are a scholar who knows multiple languages!

By the way, you can search using Hebrew and Greek words as well.

Illustrations/Applications

Finding the Right Illustration

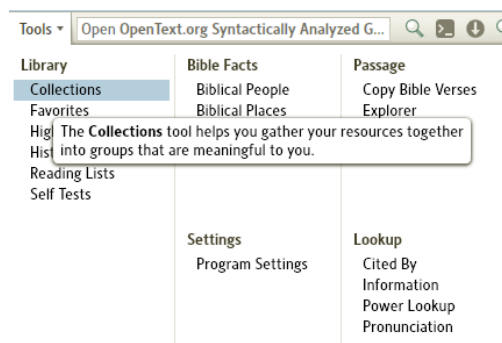
Finding an illustration that is related to a specific passage can be difficult, but not with Logos 4. Let me show you a search technique I use to save time and find the best illustration connected to my passage.

There are two steps to this process:

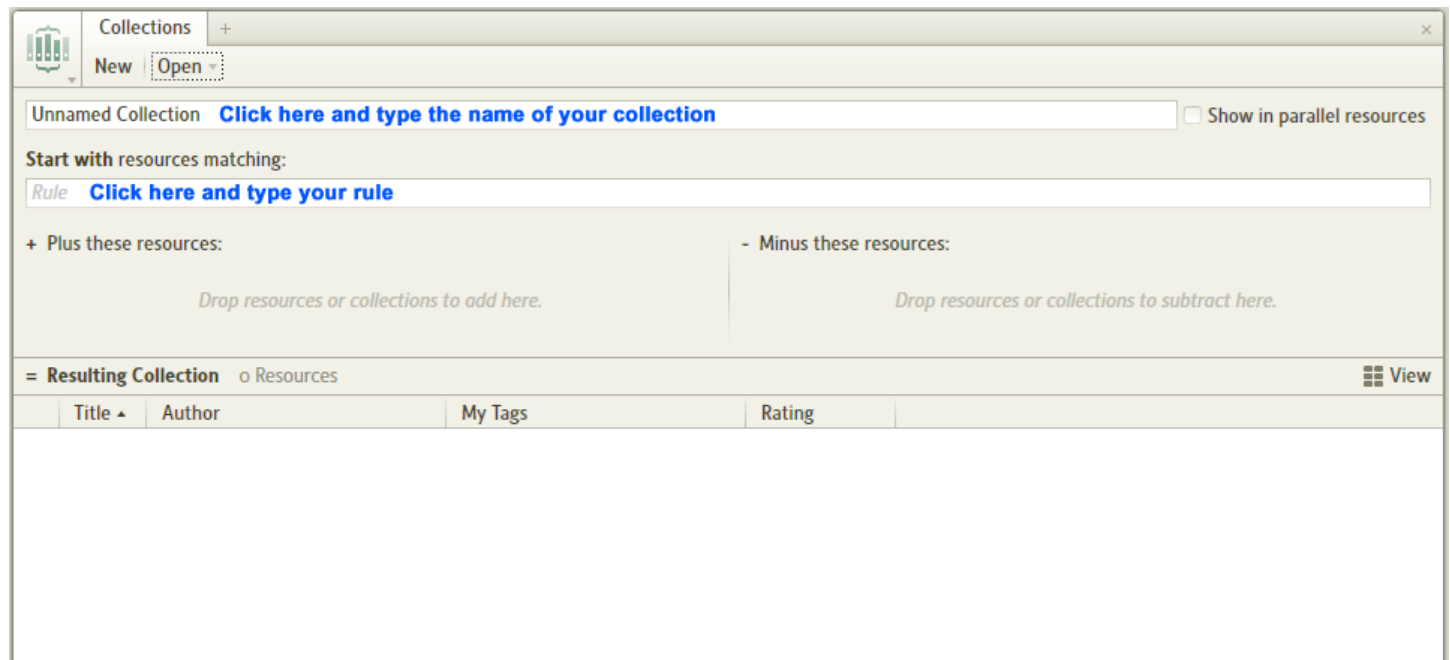
- (1) Create a collection of your illustrations books
- (2) Search your collection of illustrations

HOW TO:

❶ Go to the main menu and choose “Tools”, and then choose “Collections” from the menu



❷ Click in the box labeled “Unnamed Collection” and type the following: **Illustrations**



❸ In the box labeled “Rule”, type the following: **title:illustration OR title:quotes**

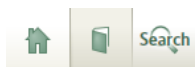
④ Here is my collection; yours will differ depending on the books in your library

The screenshot shows a window titled 'Collections' with a search bar containing 'Illustrations'. Below the search bar, it says 'Start with resources matching: title:illustration OR title:quotes'. There are two sections for adding or removing resources: '+ Plus these resources:' and '- Minus these resources:'. Below these sections, a table lists 15 resources. The first resource is '10,000 Sermon Illustrations' by Galaxie Software. The other resources are listed in the table below.

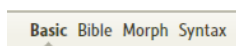
Title	Author
10,000 Sermon Illustrations	Galaxie Software
750 Engaging Illustrations for Preachers, Teachers and Writers	Larson, Craig Brian
1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching	Jones, G. Curtis
1500 Illustrations for Biblical Preaching	Green, Michael
AMG Bible Illustrations	AMG Publishers
Anecdotes and Illustrations	Torrey, R. A.
Encyclopedia of 7700 Illustrations	Tan, Paul Lee
Exploring the Mind and Heart of the Prince of Preachers: Five-Thousand Illustrations Selected from the Works of Charles Haddon Spurgeon	Spurgeon, Charles Ha
Illustrations for Biblical Preaching	Green, Michael P.
Lectures to my Students, Vol. 3: The Art of Illustration; Addresses Delivered to the Students of the Pastors' College, Metropolitan Tabernacle	Spurgeon, Charles H.
My Favorite Illustrations	Hobbs, Herschel
Nelson's Complete Book of Stories, Illustrations & Quotes	Morgan, Robert J.
Old Testament Quotes in the New Testament	Philipps, H. David
Speaker's Sourcebook of New Illustrations	Hurley, Virgil
Using Illustrations to Preach with Power	Chapell, Bryan

⑤ Go ahead and close this window by clicking on the “x” in the upper right corner of this window

⑥ Let's search this collection. Click on the “Search” icon in the main menu



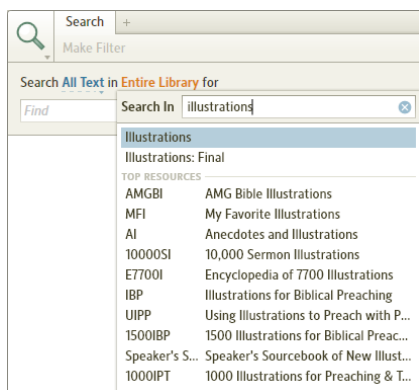
⑦ Click on “basic” at the top right of your search window



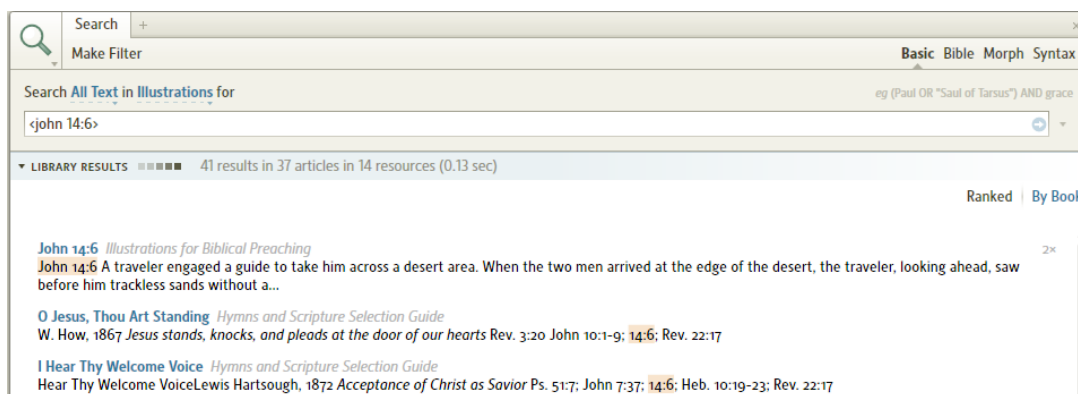
⑧ Click on “Entire Library” or whatever may be the second colored word listed



⑨ Type “Illustrations” in the “Search in Box” and click “Illustrations” collection that you created



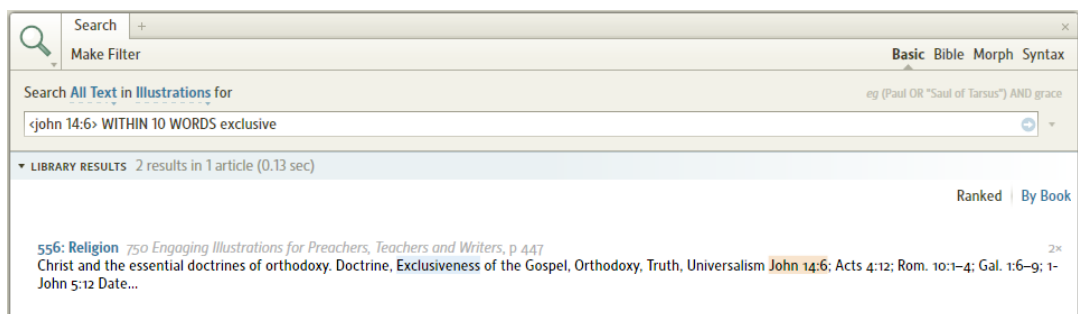
⑩ In the “find” box, type “<john 14:6>” (note: do not use quotes) and press the enter key and examine the search results.



All these illustrations cite John 14:6. Now you can go through the search results and pick the best illustration for your context.

BUT WAIT! Let’s get even more specific!

⑪ In the “find” box, type “<john 14:16> WITHIN 10 WORDS exclusive” (note: do not use quotes) and press the enter key and examine the search results.



Do you see how we narrowed our search results! This technique really helps when you get too many search results or you are looking for something very specific.

Searching

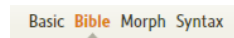
When does Jesus pray?

Back in my seminary days, I wrote a paper on Jesus and His Pattern of Prayer. It really gave me a new and biblically based perspective on prayer. In order to complete this assignment I needed to find every instance where Jesus talked about prayer, when He prayed, and any reference to Jesus and prayer. Let me show you how Logos 4 can help you learn about prayer from Jesus Christ.

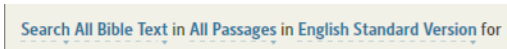
- 1 Go to the main menu and choose “Search”



- 2 At the top, right of the Search window, choose “Bible”



- 3 Now let's make changes to the following search criteria.



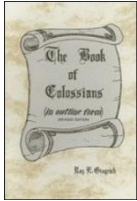
- 4 Click on “All Bible Text” and choose “Search Fields” and then click the box labeled “Words of Christ”



- 5 There is no need to change the search criteria “All Passages” to search only the gospels because when you search the “Words of Christ” you end up only searching the Gospels and a little bit of Acts and Revelation.
- 6 Pick your preferred English Translation. I have chosen the ESV for this example.
- 7 In the find box type “pray” (note: do not include the quotes)
- 8 Go ahead and examine the search results so you can learn about Jesus’ pattern of Prayer.

Book Overview & Review

Roy Gingrich's Commentaries in Outline Form (100 vols.)



A unique resource that is available in Logos 4 is the *Roy Gingrich's Commentaries in Outline Form*. It is an amazing set, 100 volumes for \$279. However, you can buy individual books of the Bible for only \$ 4.95.

BENEFITS

#1) One of the most detailed outlines for every book of the Bible!

#2) It has a plethora (fancy word for a whole bunch!) of Bible references!

#3) Very helpful for sermon outline development

#4) Concise explanations of the Biblical text

Take a look below:

The screenshot displays the Logos Bible Software interface for the book of 1 Corinthians. The left sidebar shows a detailed table of contents for 'The Book of First Corinthians', organized into three main parts: Part One (Introduction), Part Two (The Body of the Book), and Part Three (Conclusion). The main window displays the 'AN INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK' section, which includes 'I. THE AUTHOR OF THE BOOK—The apostle Paul' and 'II. THE ADDRESSEES OF THE BOOK—The church of God at Corinth'. Under 'II. THE ADDRESSEES OF THE BOOK', it further details 'A. THE CITY OF CORINTH', describing its location, history, and significance in the ancient world.

[Click here to buy the book from Logos](#)

How to Study the Bible

The most important word for Bible Study...

When I teach and train people to study the Bible I often observe at the outset the “deer in the headlights” look. It happens immediately after they open their Bible and turn to their passage to study. Have you experienced this? It is an almost paralyzing and overwhelming feeling when you consider all that one can glean from any Biblical text. But fear not, there is a simple solution to avoid this pitfall.

FOCUS ON THE VERBS!

Surprised? Yes...that is the secret to a productive, focused, and effective Bible study. Think about it...the subject is connected to the action of the passage. There may be an object connected to the verb as well. Furthermore, the verb itself describes what is happening in the passage. Starting with the verbs as our “jump off point” we can begin to ask the 5Ws & H questions (Who, What, Where, When, Why & How).

Furthermore, as you study the verbs it will give you a simple and straight path through the Biblical text. And as you study the verbs, it will cause you to ask questions of the Biblical text that will direct your study in a productive direction rather than a chaotic, confusing path.

FOCUS ON THE VERBS!

Prayer

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER

There are a lot of acronyms to guide believers through prayer:

ACTS

Adoration
Confession
Thanksgiving
Supplication

IOU'S

Incline
Open
Unite
Satisfy

PRAY

Praise
Repent
Ask
Yield

PRAISE

Praise
Repentance
Adoration
Intercession
Supplication
Eternal Results

PUSH

Pray
Until
Something
Happens

So you may ask, why one more? Most of these acronyms just cover the basic ideas of prayer, but don't help you develop a richer, more intimate prayer life. So what does the R.E.F.L.E.C.T. acronym look like? I thought you would never ask...

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life Through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

When you begin with prayer, focus first on God, not yourself! Bless Him as commanded in Psalm 103! The challenge for most of us in this step is we don't know our Bible well enough to bring to mind all that God is, all that He has done, and all that He will do! Therefore, the purpose of this step is honor, revere, adore, and respect His great character and His great deeds. Praise God for who He is and what He has done! Let everything that has breath praise the Lord. Praise the Lord! (Psalm 150:6)

Here are some additional ideas and Bible cross references to guide you in prayer this week as you:

Remember the Glories of God

- A. Desire to see the Glory of God ([Exodus 33:18](#))
- B. Desire for others to see the Glory of God ([Ephesians 1:18](#))
- C. Meditate often on the glory of God's Character ([2 Chronicles 6:14ff](#))
- D. Meditate on the glory of His Works and His Written Word ([Psalm 19](#))

How to Preach

The Proposition, The Big Idea, the CIT...

A sermon without a purpose, are words for the wind! – Anonymous

Have you (and most likely you have) listened to more than one sermon where you have no idea why the preacher preached the sermon? This is unfortunately an all too common occurrence. However, believe it or not, it is a very avoidable condition! It requires one simple step, the proposition statement.

The proposition is a one sentence, purpose statement. It describes for the audience what will be accomplished in the sermon. It will call them to act on the Biblical text. Without this purpose statement, the sermon loses its impact and power over the audience. The sermon turns into a lecture rather than an exhortation for change!

The proposition has 3 parts:

- 1) **Overviews the key points of the message**
- 2) **Purpose clause/Linking clause/Transition clause**
- 3) **Implication for obedience and disobedience to the message**

Let me give you several examples:

Tonight, let's explore **3 foundational truths** that will teach you and I **how to live with the past and be transformed from "mess to masterpiece"**.

I have color coded the phrases from the proposition statement with the various parts of the proposition statement.

The proposition tells us there will be a 3 point sermon and its implication is to help us live with the past in a transformative way. If we apply these 3 points, we will be transformed from "mess to masterpiece"

Let's do another one.

From Psalm 103, **David provides us 5 critical steps in building a** foundation to **honor rather than dishonor God the Father in our worship**.

Can you see the elements more clearly now? Now you may be wondering where do you place this "proposition".

I recommend you place it right at the end of the introduction and before the body of the message.

Lastly, I refine the proposition toward the end of the sermon.

If you want more training on this subject, check out my training videos. I have a video lecture and two training exercises that will teach you how to create a proposition for your next message:

See the Best Practices (Supplemental CD)

- Lesson 11 Proposition/Main Idea, Lesson 1 – How to Build a Proposition/Purpose Statement
- Two Exercises: (1) Create a Proposition (2) Examine Propositions in Sermons

Q & A / Questions & Answers

Sentence Diagramming/Structuring

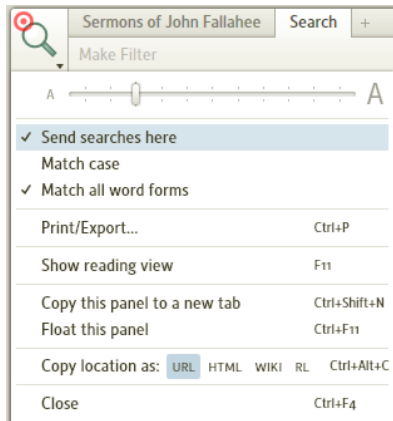
Question:

How do I reuse a search window so that I don't have too many search windows open?

Answer:

After you open your search window, click on the resource panel (top left of the search window).

Click on the menu choice "Send searches here". Please notice the check mark by the menu choice and the "red bulls eye" icon that appears in the resource panel.



Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter!
tips@learnlogos.com

LEARNLOGOS.COM eNewsletter

Learning the “Word/Logos” through Training, ISSUE 3

Welcome!

I know some of you will have great ideas to improve this format. So feel free to provide positive and negative feedback to me at tips@learnlogos.com

Note: There are several types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Feel free to click on them.

Thanks! And Enjoy

John Fallahee

President/CEO

LearnLogos.com

ALERT!!!

Webinars for Download:

- [Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) Only \$39.99

UPCOMING LIVE WEBINARS

- Mon, Dec. 13, 9-10 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 2
 - [Click Link to Signup: Notes, Prayer, Copy & Paste, Historical Background, Q & A](#)
- Tue, Dec. 14, 9 PM to 10 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4, Session 2
 - [Click Link to Signup: Taking Notes, Prayer, Meditation, Historical Analysis, Q&A](#)
- Thu, Dec. 16, 9 PM to 10 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 2
 - [Click Link to Signup: Prayer Prep. for Teach/Preach, Keys to Historical Analysis, Q&A](#)

6 Free Books for Logos 4 from Thomas Nelson

Learn More/Download Now: http://www.nelsonministryservices.com/nms/dept.asp?dept_id=5076&ref=11523

- **Note:** The instructions from Thomas Nelson may be a little cumbersome and you have to install Logos 3 if you don't have it installed. But if you want the following books, it might be worth the headache.
 1. KJV Bible
 2. KJV Bible Commentary
 3. Nelson's Complete Book of Bible Maps and Charts
 4. Smith's Bible Dictionary
 5. Enhanced Strong's Lexicon
 6. What Does the Bible Say About

OPTIMIZING LOGOS 4

Extra! Extra! Read all about!

The home page in Logos 4 is an amazing innovation. Not only does it present information in a newspaper format, but it displays information based on what you study and read in Logos 4. Now that is impressive and smart!

Now when I first saw the home page as a longtime Logos 3 user, I turned it off initially – too much information, let me just study!...But after a while, I realized its benefits and turned it back on!

The screenshot shows the Logos 4 Bible Software 4 home page, which is designed to look like a newspaper. The page features a top navigation bar with tabs for 'File', 'Guides', 'Tools', and 'Command'. Below this is a search bar and a 'Go' button. The main content area is divided into several columns. On the left, there's a section for 'Jesus and Zacchaeus' with a 'Morning and Evening' devotion. In the center, there's a 'Book of the Day' section featuring 'Baker Exegetical Commentary on the New Testament: 1 Corinthians'. To the right, there's a 'Threshing' article with an illustration of people harvesting wheat. Below the main articles, there's a 'Black Friday - Cyber Monday 2010' section with a 'BLACK FRIDAY SALE!' graphic. At the bottom left, there's a 'Customize Your eNewspaper' button. The right side of the page has a sidebar with 'John's Prayer Journal' and 'My Prayer Journal'. The bottom of the page shows a 'Features' list with checkboxes for various content types like 'Devotionals', 'Excerpts', 'Logos Blog', etc.

The first challenge is to understand what “news articles” you have in your personalized “Logos eNewspaper”. For example, I have highlighted one article in orange and if you notice at the bottom of each article is the article type.

Now you may be thinking, how many types of articles are there? Well if you click the “customize” menu option in the lower, left corner of the home page, you can get such a list. As you can see below, highlighted in orange are the various elements or “articles” you can add or subtract from your “eNewspaper”.

The screenshot shows the 'Customize Your eNewspaper' menu in Logos 4. The menu is divided into two sections: 'Features' and 'Content'. The 'Features' section includes checkboxes for 'Fallahee, John', 'Untitled Prayer List', 'Matthew 28:16-20 (2)', 'John's Prayer Journal', 'My Prayer Journal', 'Choose preferred Bible', 'Lectionary', and 'Library Slideshow'. The 'Content' section includes checkboxes for 'Devotionals', 'Excerpts', 'Logos Blog', 'Logos Community Pricing', 'Logos News', 'Logos Pre-Pubs', and 'My Logos Messages'. The 'Logos Blog' checkbox is highlighted in orange.

Once your “customize” menu appears, you can **choose to display** an article by “checking” the box or you can **remove an article** by “unchecking” the box.

Regardless of what you choose, I recommend you at least leave “Logos Blog”, “Logos Community Pricing”, and “Logos Pre-Pubs”. These three “articles” will keep you up-to-date on great deals and other important announcements.

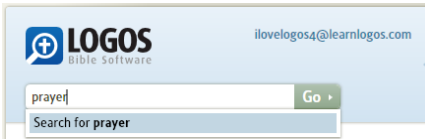
PRAYER

Help Me Pray...

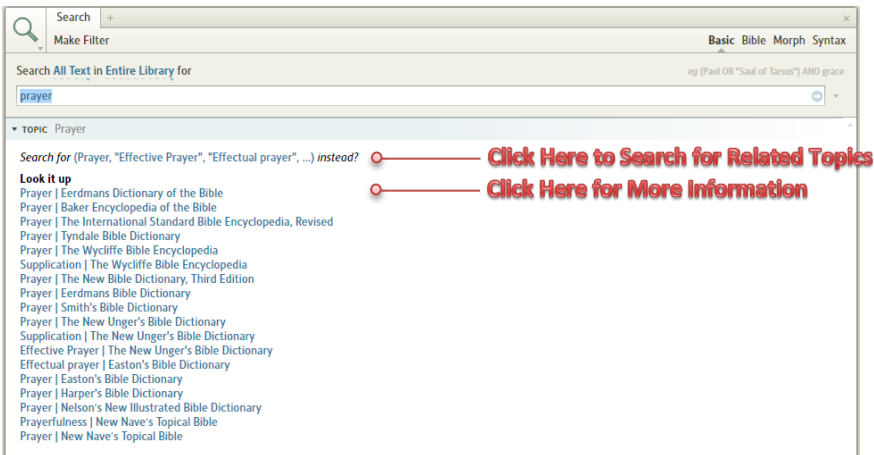
You may not realize how quickly you can find help to improve the way you pray. It begins at the home page.

HOW TO:

1. Type **“prayer”** (do not use quotes) and click the button labeled **“Go”** or choose **“Search for Prayer”** from the menu that appears

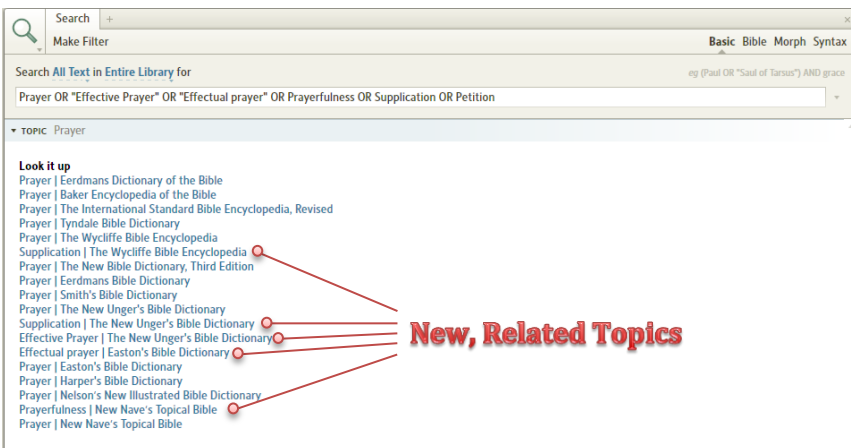


2. Click and expand the **topic** section



3. Under the **“Look it up”** section you will see all the articles in your library about the topic **“prayer”**

Now there is a new feature in Logos 4 called **“Search for...”**. This is a really helpful tool because it further explores your topic. When you click on these topics, Logos will find this information in your library, helping you to pray!



Historical Background/Theological Background

“History is written by the victors.” – Winston Churchill

Choosing a good set of history books for your studies can enrich your study time; provide answers to important historical background questions, and frankly save time. For my Historical Background Collection, I include Bible Dictionaries, Bible Handbooks, Atlases, and OT/NT Surveys.

Here a few of my favorite books:

[Anchor Yale Bible Dictionary](#)

[Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible](#)

[Halley's Bible Handbook](#)

[Holman Bible Atlas](#)

[The MacArthur Bible Handbook](#) * Consider buying the [MacArthur Life Works Collection](#) – Great Value

[A Survey of Old Testament Introduction](#)

[New Testament Introduction](#)

[Jensen's Survey OT & NT](#)

[The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church, rev. ed.](#)

[Dictionary of Deities and Demons in the Bible](#)

How do you create a collection? Check out this **FREE** exclusive training video for newsletter subscribers only!

This video is from the bundle training videos at www.LearnLogos.com

Do you have a favorite book for historical background? Email me: tips@learnlogos.com

Outlining

Using Syntax to Develop a Biblical Outline: Part 2

Last week we began a series devoted to making use of Syntax to develop a Biblical outline that reflects the Biblical author's intent. We did this for the Greek New Testament. This week we explore the Hebrew Old Testament.

HOW TO:

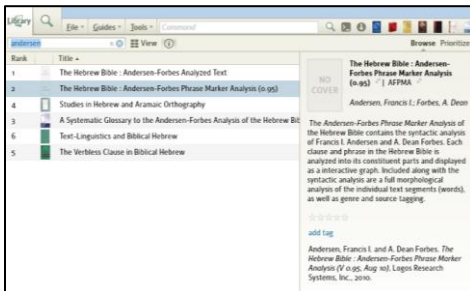
The first step is to open the eBook [“The Hebrew Bible: Andersen-Forbes Phrase Marker Analysis \(0.95\)”](#).

- 1 Go to the main menu at the top, click on the “Library” or “Book” icon

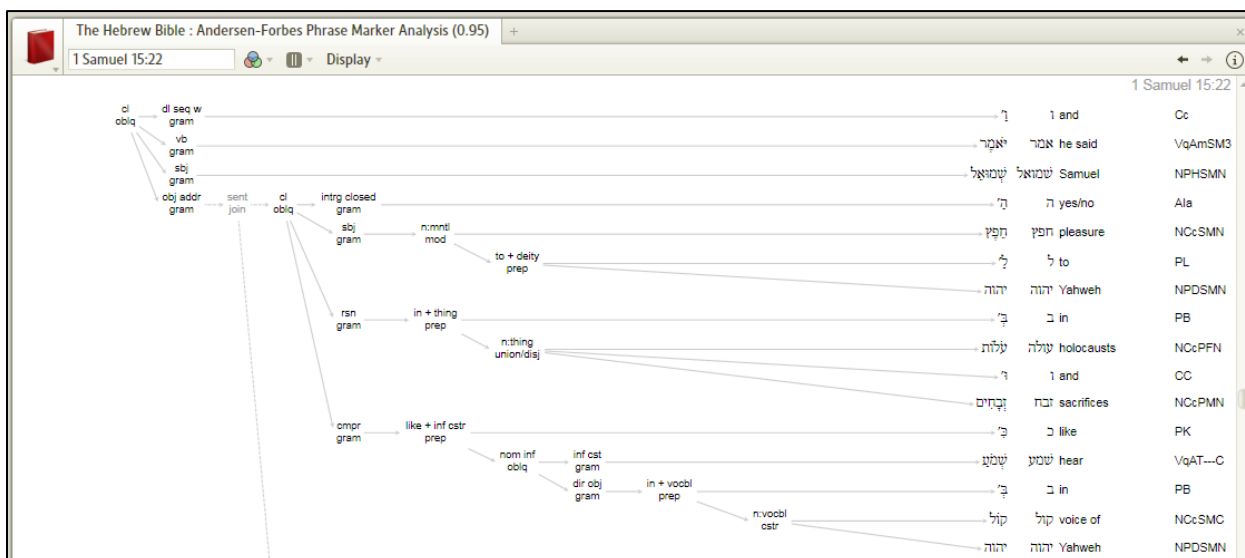


- 2 In the “find box” type “andersen” (Note: no quotes)

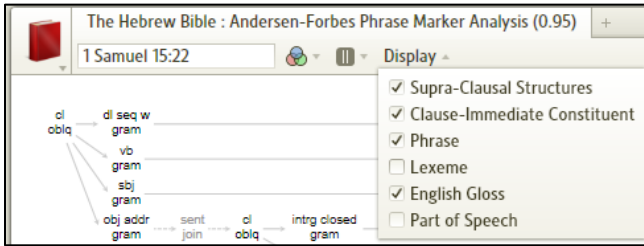
- 3 Click on the title [“The Hebrew Bible: Andersen-Forbes Phrase Marker Analysis \(0.95\)”](#).



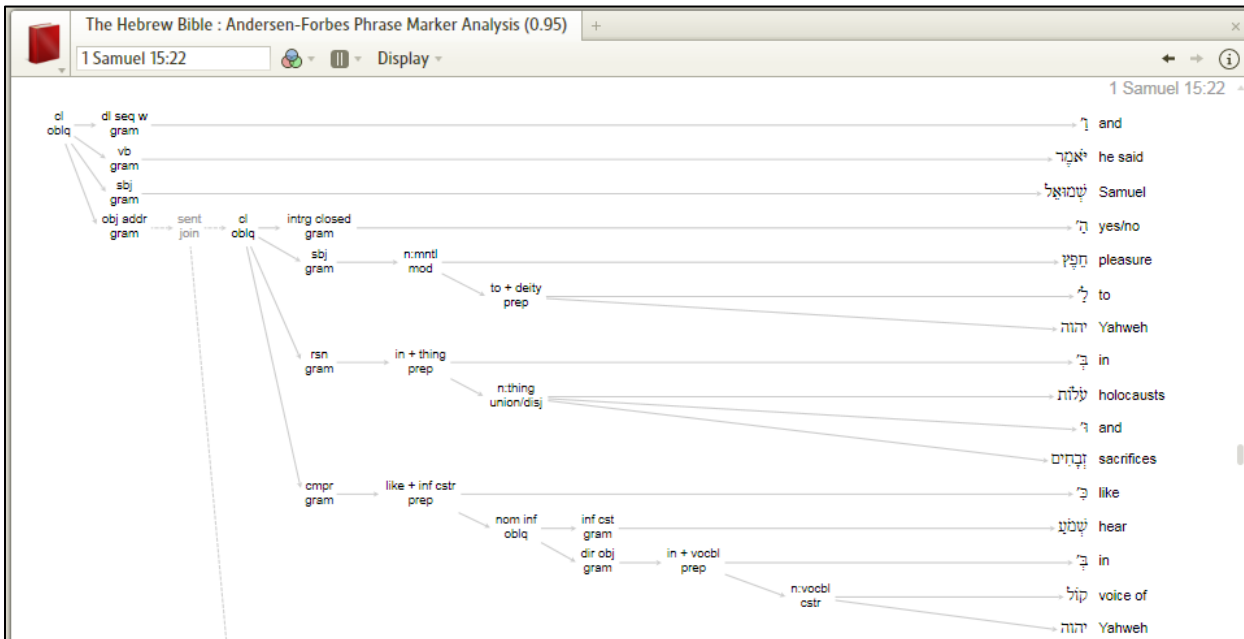
- 4 Next, let's go to the passage [1 Samuel 15:22](#) by entering the passage in the Bible reference box.



5 Now all these abbreviations can be maddening! Let's turn some of these off. Here are my settings:



6 Now our syntax is a little bit easier to read:



7 Ok, are you ready for a vocabulary lesson?

CL OBLQ: Primary Clause/Main Structure, in simpler terms, it's the main idea or main thought.

VB GRAM: Primary Verb

SBJ GRAM: Primary Subject

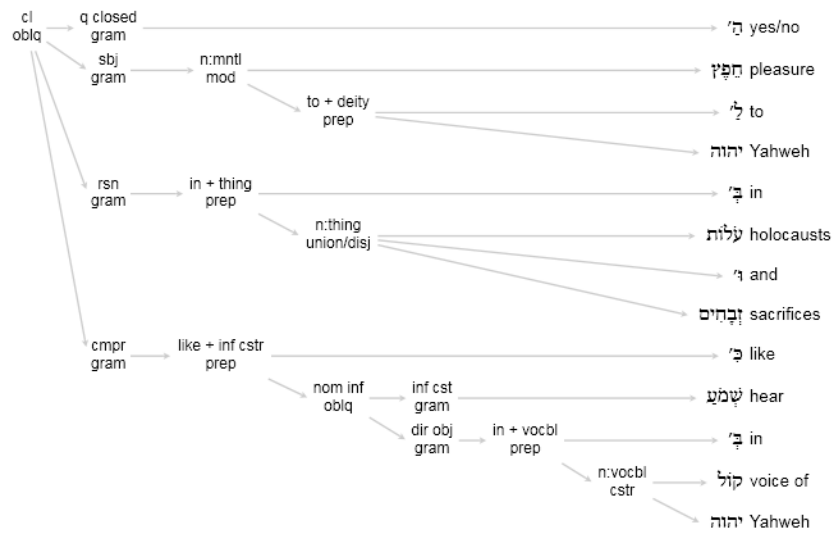
PREP: Prepositional Phrases

NOTE: There are numerous elements in the syntax graphs. Please consult [A Systematic Glossary to the Andersen-Forbes Analysis of the Hebrew Bible](#) for more information and greater detail.

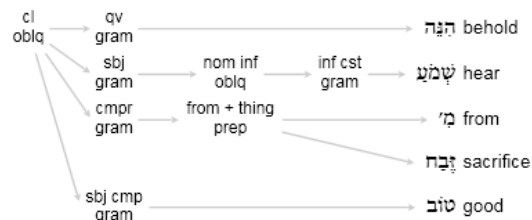
Are you ready to start building your Biblical outline?

STEP 1 – IDENTIFY AND GROUP EACH ‘CL OBLQ’ INTO SEPARATE PHRASES

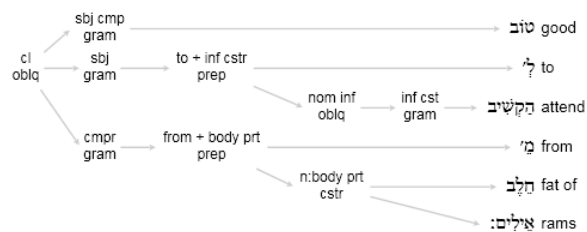
- Start with the “**CL OBLQ**” and diagram/organize these as the main points
- **Note:** focus on the subjects and verbs
- **Note:** Try to work along with me!



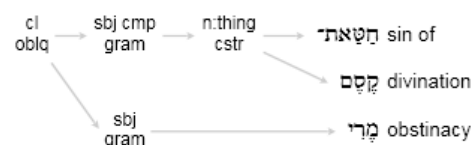
Phrase #1: “Has the LORD as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices As in obeying the voice of the LORD?”



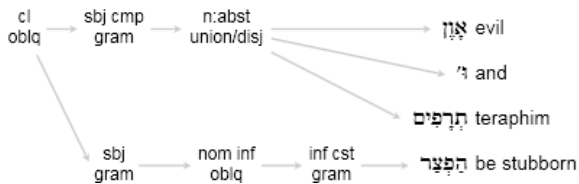
Phrase #2: “Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice”



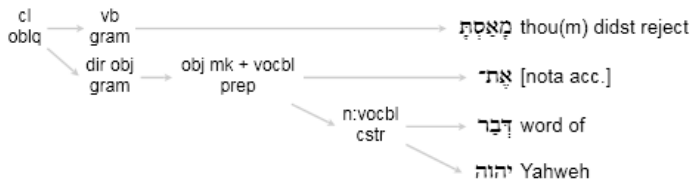
Phrase #3: “And to heed than the fat of rams”



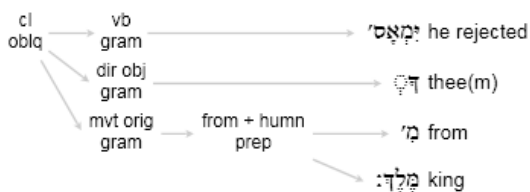
Phrase #4: “For rebellion is as the sin of divination”



Phrase #5: “And insubordination is as iniquity and idolatry”



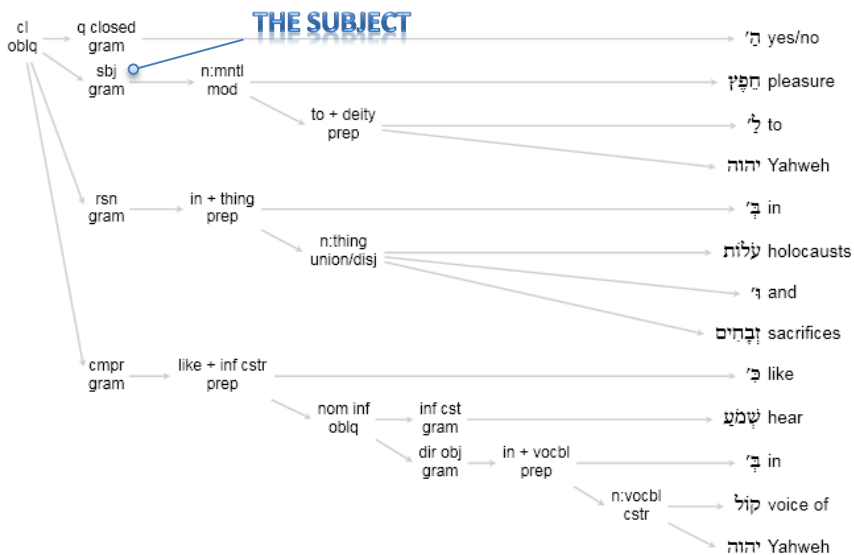
Phrase #6: “Because you have rejected the word of the LORD”



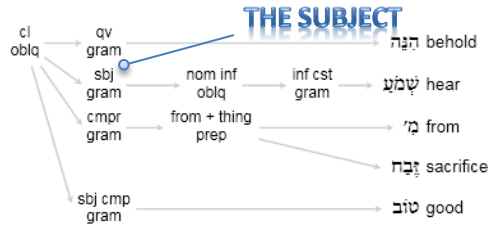
Phrase #7: “He has also rejected you from *being* king”

STEP 2 – IDENTIFY THE MAIN SUBJECT (SBJ GRAM) AND VERB AND BEGIN TO SIMPLIFY OUTLINE

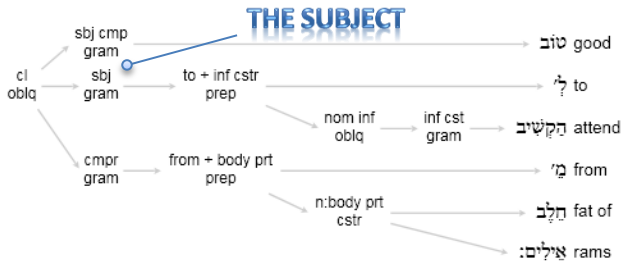
- Simplify the outline by identifying the main subject and the main verbal action
- **Note:** focus on the subjects and verbs



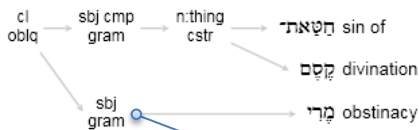
1. THE LORD'S DELIGHT



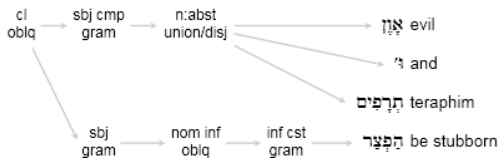
2. OBEY



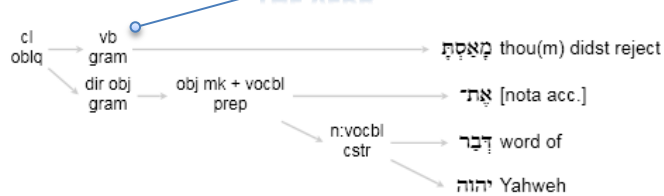
3. Heed



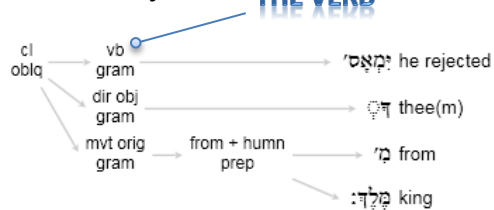
4. Rebellion



5. Insubordination



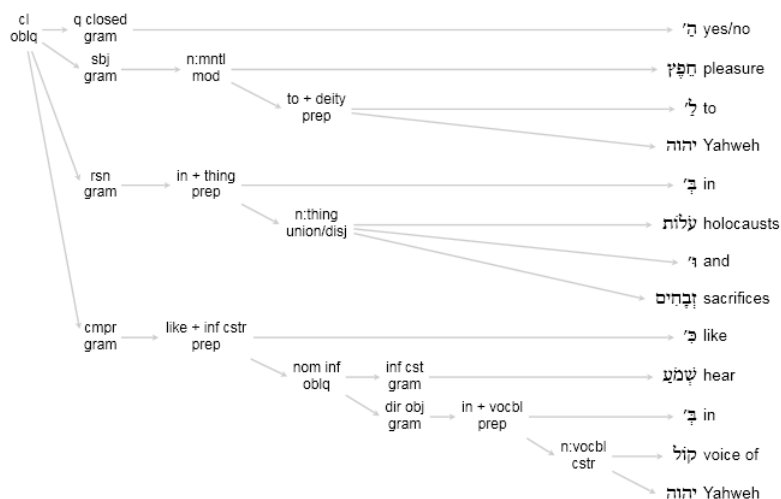
6. You have rejected



7. He (Lord) Rejected

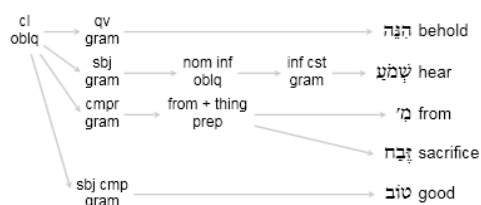
STEP 3 – REFINE OUTLINE’S SUB-POINTS

- Look for Sub-points: Example with prepositional phrase (PREP)



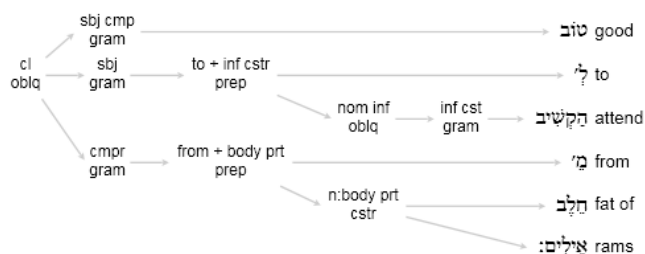
1. THE LORD'S DELIGHT

- BURNT OFFERINGS & SACRIFICES
- OBEYING HIS VOICE



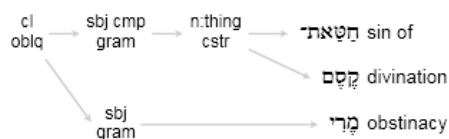
2. OBEY

- Better than sacrifice



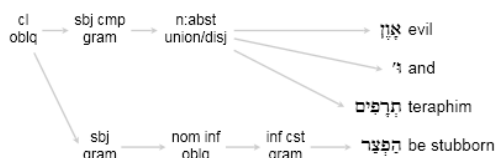
3. Heed

- (Better is implied) than the fat of rams



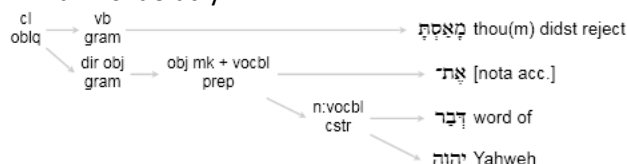
4. Rebellion

- Is Sin of Divination



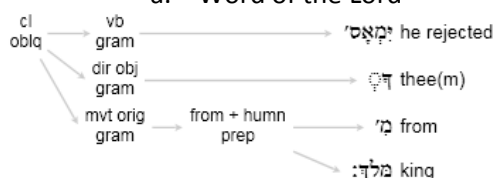
5. Insubordination

- Is iniquity
- Is Idolatry



6. You have rejected

- Word of the Lord



7. He (Lord) Rejected

- You being king

STEP 4 – REFINE OUTLINE BY GROUPING POINTS TOGETHER FOR FINAL SERMON

- What is the Lord's delight?**
 - Burnt Offerings & Sacrifices?
 - Obedying His Voice?
- What is the Lord's Answer?**
 - Obedience is Better than sacrifice
 - Heeding is (Better is implied) than the fat of rams
- What is the Lord Conclusion?**
 - Rebellion is Sin of Divination
 - Insubordination is iniquity & Idolatry
- What is the Lord's Punishment?**
 - Rejecting the Word of the Lord = Rejected as king

That's it! Wow. You may be thinking this seems way too easy! And well, not as easy as Greek, but close! Remember, with these syntax graphs you can quickly identify the main idea because syntax takes into account morphology and grammar!

If you want more in-depth training on this, get my Interactive Training Videos (see Blue Disc, Supplemental Exercises, Lesson 5, and Exercise 6) or sign up for my Distant Education Class:

Interactive Training 100+ Videos 10+ Hours of Training Free Updates Learn More BUY NOW	Distant Education Class Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep. 8 to 32 Week Modules Learn More BUY NOW
--	--

Click One

Word Study

Perseus: Isn't he a Greek god or hero or something?

Actually, Perseus is a major hero from Greek mythology best known for his clever decapitation of Medusa. But the “Perseus” I am referring to is a database of Greek words that can help your word studies. Did you know you can access this amazing tool from Logos 4?

HOW TO:

- 1 Let's open the New American Standard Bible to [Philippians 4:10](#) and right click on the word [revived](#)

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software interface. The main window displays the New American Standard Bible (1995 Update) with Philippians 4:11 open. The text reads: "But I rejoiced in the Lord greatly, that now at last you have **revived** your concern for me; indeed, you were concerned *before*, but you lacked opportunity." The word "revived" is highlighted. A right-click context menu is open over the word, showing various options. Two orange arrows point to "Perseus Lookup" and "Lemma" in the menu, both labeled "Click Here".

Selection	revived
Reference	Philippians 4:10
Manuscript	ἀνεθάλτε
Lemma	ἀναθάλλω
Morph	VAAIzP
Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #330
Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 13.23

- 2 Choose from the menu **Lemma**


- 3 Choose from the menu “**Perseus Lookup**”

Now an internet browser will open and take you to the Perseus Website where you can explore the Greek word for “revive”.

The screenshot shows the Greek Word Study Tool website. The page displays the word "ἀναθάλλω" (anathallō) with its lexicon entry in LSJ Middle Liddell. The word is shown in its base form and its inflected forms: "ἀναθάλλω" (verb 1st sg pres ind act) and "ἀναθάλλω" (verb 1st sg pres subj act). An orange arrow points to the "Word frequency statistics" link, labeled "Click Here".

④ Next click on the phrase “Word frequency statistics”

Word Frequency Information



Word frequency information for ἀναθάλλω

Home Collections/Texts Research Grants Open Source A

Click on a column heading to sort by that field

Words in Corpus	Max	Max/10k	Min	Min/10k	Corpus Name
137782	1	0.073	1	0.073	New Testament
8497	3	3.531	0	0	Aeschylus, Agamemnon

This list shows you the ancient Greek texts that use the Greek Word for “Revive”. We can see one use in the New Testament and 3 uses in two others texts “Aeschylus, Agamemnon”.

This tool is a great way to see how people used the Greek word outside of the New Testament, before, during and after the New Testament was written.

Warning: The site can be a little difficult to navigate and find the English translations. For more training on Perseus and other word study tools in Logos 4, order my Interactive Training Videos below. Just click the image.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!



DISC 1: Overview of Logos 4



DISC 2: Best Practices How to Study, Teach & Preach

Two Training Products to get "More out of 4"!

Interactive and **traditional non-interactive training videos** Included on every training CD

Videos play on Mac too!

Illustrations/Applications

Illustrations in the most unusual of places...

Having a good set of books with illustrations can be useful for studying, teaching, and preaching, but illustration books are not the only place where you can find good illustrations. Believe it or not, devotionals are a great place to find illustrations. These books are especially useful because they usually have an application built right into the illustration and many have a key Bible verse associated with the illustration.

To find all the devotional books in your library follow these instructions:

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu at the top, click on the “Library” or “Book” icon



- 2 In the find box, type the following: **type:devotional**

Rank	Title
18	The 365 Day Devotional Commentary
19	Amazing Grace
23	Amazing Grace—366 Inspiring Hymn Stories for Daily Devotions
10	American Minute
41	The Christian's Secret of a Holy Life
3	Conflict and Courage
24	A Day's Journey: 365 Daily Meditations from the Word
40	Drawing Near—Daily Readings for a Deeper Faith
22	Ears from Harvested Sheaves, or, Daily Portions
11	Enter His Gates
7	The Faith I Live By
15	For the Love of God, Volume One
34	For the Love of God, Volume Two
46	God Is Enough—Inspiring Words of Christian Affirmation for Every Day of the Year
20	God's Way Day by Day
1	In Heavenly Places
37	Into His Presence
17	Lift Him Up
16	The Loins Girded
8	Maranatha
38	Morning and Evening
4	My Life Today
28	My Utmost for His Highest
39	On Holy Ground
45	On This Day

The 365 Day Devotional Commentary | [Short title](#)

Richards, Larry

Each day you will find a core passage of scripture with devotional commentary, a personal application, and a quote from a well-known Christian. This is the perfect devotional commentary for those who do not have time to read the entire day's passage.

☆☆☆☆☆

[add tag](#)

Richards, Larry. *The 365 Day Devotional Commentary*. Wheaton, IL: Victor Books, 1990.

Here are some of my favorite devotionals:

[Morning and Evening](#)

[Tozer on the Holy Spirit](#)

[Strength for Today](#)

Searching

Got a question?

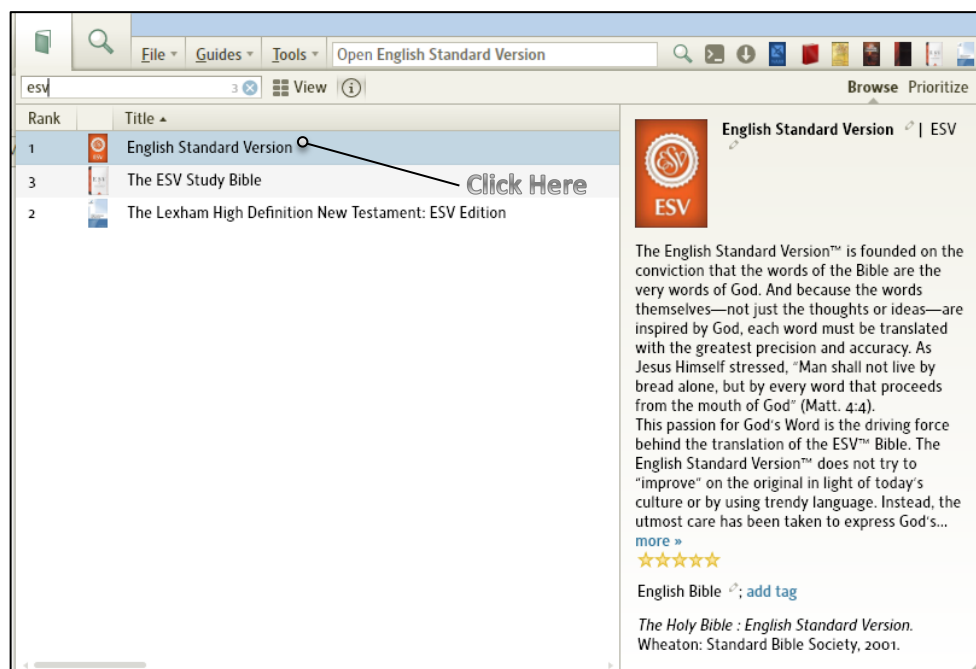
If you are familiar with the [Socratic Method](#), you'll know that it is a method of teaching by asking questions instead of lecturing.

In Logos 4, you can easily find all the questions in any book of the bible:

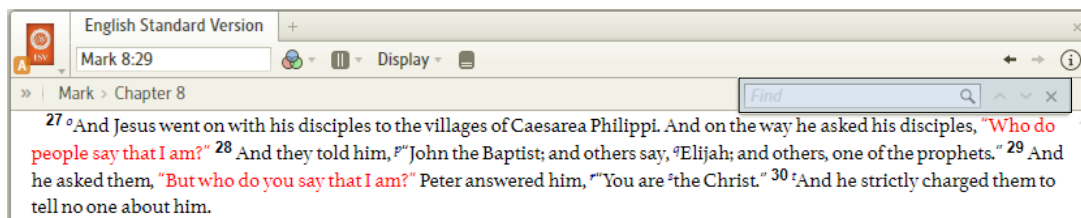
- 1 Open your favorite Bible, for this example, let's use the [ESV](#).



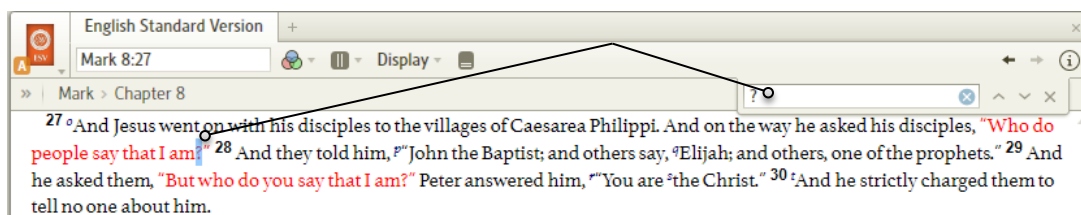
- 2 In the find box, type the following: **ESV**, and then click on the title "English Standard Version"



- 3 Next, press **CTRL+F** on your keyboard, please notice the "find box" that appears in the upper right corner of the ESV.

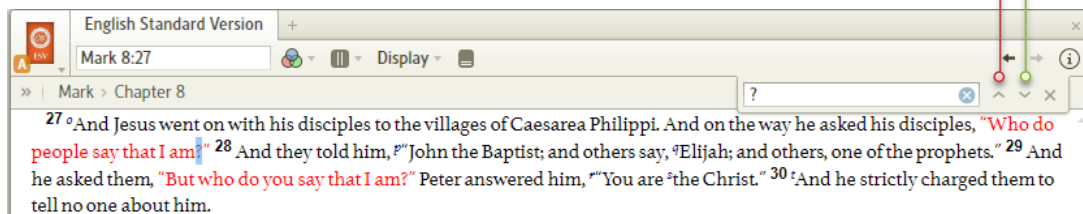


- 4 Now type "?" (Note: do not type the quotes) Do you see the highlighted "question"?



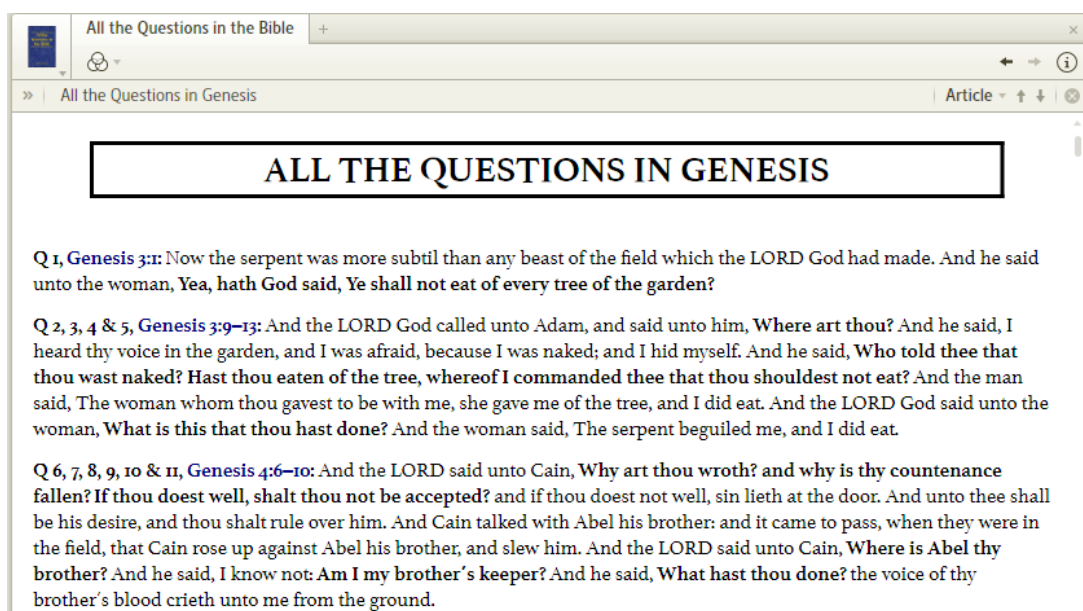
⑤ To find the next “question”, simply click the **forward** button, to see the previous “question”, simply click the **backward** button.

Backward/Previous Forward/Next



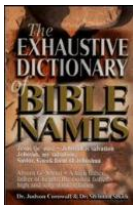
Now at this point, you may be wondering, “John, is there a way to search the whole Bible?” Unfortunately, no...however,

Logos does sell a book, [All the Questions of the Bible](#) for \$ 4.95.



Book Overview & Review

The Exhaustive Dictionary of Bible Names



You probably did not realize you own this one! From Bible Study Library and up, you have a dictionary with over 3000 names! The book is 250+ pages.

By the way, for additional books on names, click on the following books to learn more:



BENEFITS OF THIS BOOK FOR BIBLE STUDY

- #1) Detailed definitions of every name in the Bible!
- #2) There are two appendixes: (1) The [Jewish Calendar](#) (2) [The Stones in the Breastplate](#).
- #3) Under [Jehova](#), you can see the various names of God.
- #4) On [page 132](#), you have the descriptive titles of Jesus
- #5) On [page 50](#), you read about the restorative titles of believers!
- #6) A pronunciation guide

SEE BELOW:

The Exhaustive Dictionary of Bible Names

Page 170

Melchizedek

Article

Melchizedek (mel-kiz'-e-dek) = King of righteousness; (roots = [1] king; [2] righteousness; rectitude; justice; [3] to be right; to be just; to justify). My King of righteousness.

Melea (mel'-e-ah) = Fullness. My dear friend; object of care.

Melech (me'-lek) = King.

Melicu (mel'-i-cu) = Counselor. Same as Malluch = Reigning; (root = to be king). My royalty; they have made a king.

Melita (mel'-i-tah) = Honey.

Melzar (mel'-zar) = The overseer; steward. The circumcised, he straitened.

Memphis (mem'-fis) = Haven of good men; the gate of the blessed. Waving to and fro. Being made fair. Greek: blamable; encompassed.

Memucan (mem-u'-can) = Impoverished. Their poverty.

Menahem (men'-a-hem) = Consoling; comforter; a comforter; (root = to lament; to comfort; to comfort oneself; to take revenge).

Menan (me'-nan) = Consoling; comforting. Soothsayer; enchanted.

Mene (me'-ne) = To number; numbered; count. He has numbered.

How to Study the Bible

Observation: Making Lists

PITFALL: Another big pitfall in studying the Bible is failing to study a topic thoroughly; in other words, failing to check every scripture from Genesis through Revelation. Now if this was a 100 years ago, with no computers, I could understand missing a few passages here and there. But today, we have Logos 4. We can search on a word, phrase, or topic and instantly call up every instance in seconds.

Making lists is an effective technique that can help you in your immediate study of the Bible as well as your long term growth in the knowledge of the Word.

HOW DO YOU MAKE A LIST

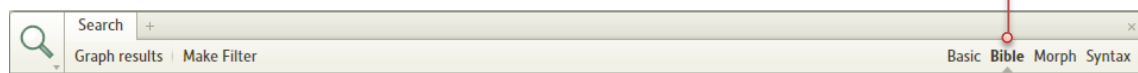
Let's search the Bible for the word "Vision".

HOW TO:

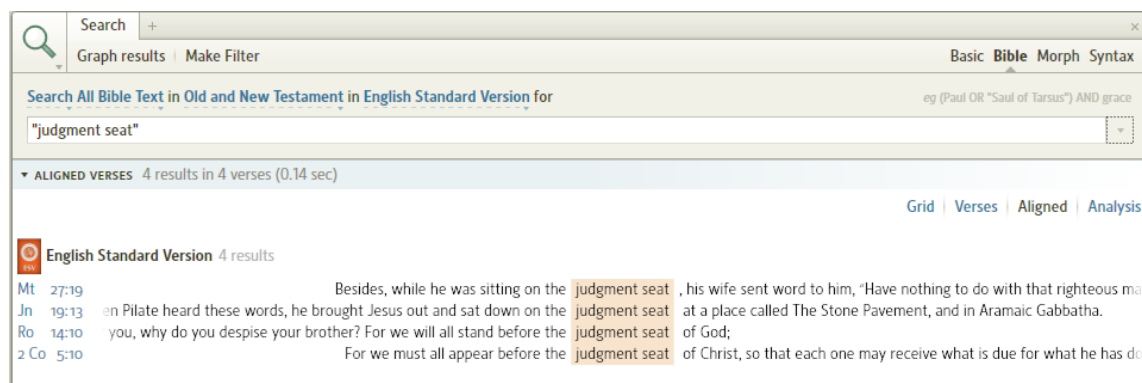
- 1 Go to the main menu at the top, click on "Search"



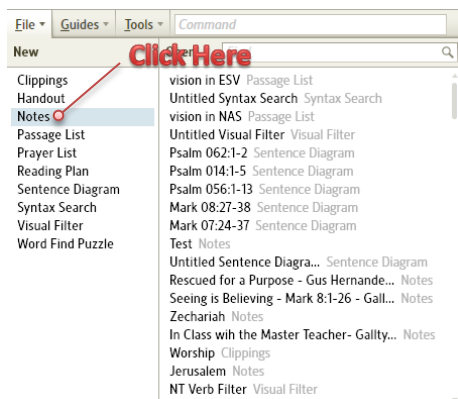
- 2 Next, at the right, click Bible.



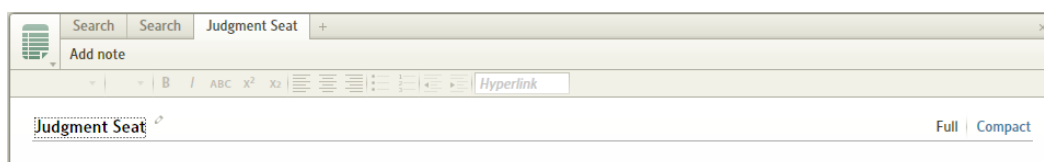
- 3 In the find box, type "judgment seat" (note: include the quotes since we want to search for this phrase)



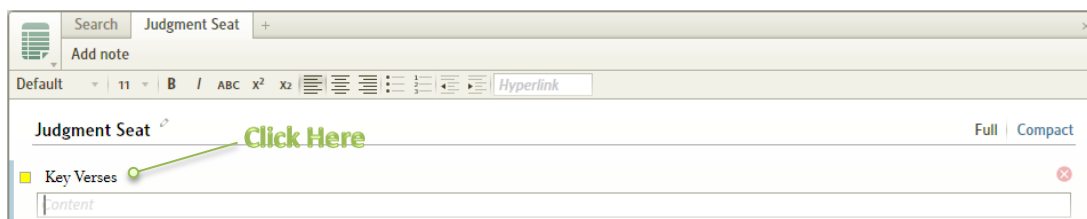
④ Let's now open a note file. Go to the main menu > choose **File** > then choose **notes**.



⑤ Now that the note file is open, let's rename it to "Judgment Seat"



⑤ Let's begin to observe the text and add what we learned to the note. Click "add note" and then type "Key Verses" in the **first** box. Then click in the **second** box. In the second box, we will type our notes.



⑥ So how do we observe the text? Here are some questions that I use to get started:

6 Initial Questions

Who...is mentioned in the text in reference to the Judgment Seat?

What...role does this *judgment seat* serve in this passage?

Where...is this *judgment seat*?

When...did this take place?

Why...is the *judgment seat* being discussed?

How...is the *judgment seat* related to the context of this passage?

Now keep in mind there are many more 5W & H questions to ask...

Look for **Contrasts** ("but"), **Purpose Statements** ("for" and "so that"), and **Conclusions** ("therefore").

12 Key Theological Questions

Additionally, if you recall from my first newsletter, there are an additional 12 questions to ask for each of these passages:

12 KEY QUESTIONS

- | | |
|---|--|
| # 1) What does this verse say about the Scriptures? | # 7) ... salvation? |
| # 2) ... God the Father? | # 8) ... Israel? |
| # 3) ... God the Son (Jesus Christ)? | # 9) ... Church? |
| # 4) ... God the Holy Spirit? | #10) ... Angels? |
| # 5) ... man? | #11) ... Demons? |
| # 6) ... sin? | #12) ... end times/yet to be fulfilled prophecy? |

Additional Resources

This is an excellent starting point! From here I would perform a Bible Study on all the **key verbs**, and other **key words** in each passage. Then I would check out [Treasury of Scripture Knowledge](#) for key Bible cross references, Bible dictionaries, encyclopedias, and commentaries.

The Study Funnel

Please notice that we started first with the Bible and then moved to books where I can find opinions of other notable scholars. This is what I call “The Study Funnel”. You start with the Bible first and then move to multiple sources.

Additionally, when you move beyond the Bible, start with **concise** resources before moving to **in-depth** resources. For example, for a word study dictionary I would use [Louw-Nida](#) before I would use the [TDNT](#).

Conclusion

This may seem like a lot of work, but as you organize this information in your notes, you will be building a wonderful, reusable resource that you can continue to use and develop further as you study. Imagine what a lifetime of study can do to bring you closer and more intimate with our Great God and Savior!

How to Improve Your Prayer/Devotional/Quiet Time

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, Part 2

Last week we introduced the prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **Remember the Glories of God**. This week we will look at “E” for **Examine Your Motives and Manner**

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life Through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

After focusing on God and remembering the Glories of God we move to that stage in prayer where we examine our motives and manners. For prayer to be intimate, we have to have a right view of God and a right view of ourselves before God. To view ourselves correctly, we confess our sins and we examine our motives. We have to make sure we don't approach God as a hypocrite. Did you know that before Jesus taught the disciples to pray in Matthew 6:9, in Matthew 6:5, Jesus warns them not to pray like the hypocrites? Since God is all-knowing and all-seeing, we must approach Him transparently, holding nothing back.

Here are some additional ideas and Bible cross references to guide you in prayer this week as you:

Examine Your Motives and Manner

- A. Ways & Words ([Matthew 6:5-7](#))
- B. Lack of Faith & Lusts ([James 4:1-3](#), [1 Timothy 2:1-8](#))
- C. Pray for one another ([James 5:16](#))
- D. Pray Earnestly ([James 5:17](#))
- E. Ask ([Matthew 7:7](#), [Luke 11:9](#))
- F. Look at the Lord's prayer/or the Disciple's Prayer for guidance ([Matt. 6:9-13](#))
- G. Watch ([Colossians 4:2](#))
- H. Wrong Manner & Motive ([James 4:3](#))

How to Preach

Let's Transition...

A sermon without proper transitions is like an intersection without stop lights! - Crash

One rainy night, on a dark road my car approached an intersection and the lights were flashing yellow. It had been some time since my last road test...does the flashing yellow light mean I stop? What about the other cars, will they stop? Oh yeah, yellow means proceed with caution and as I transitioned through the intersection safely, I saw that they had a flashing red light, so they were stopped at the intersection, waiting for me to pass...safely!

Think with me about the many transitions in a sermon. There is the introduction to the proposition, and then we drive to the overview of the outline, and then turn to the body. Within the body of the text, we motor through the explanation of the text, and then we see the illustrations, and pause at the application. Don't forget we need to venture further and bring our trip to the end with the conclusion. Of course there might be other windy roads and unfamiliar landscapes as we add content as the spirit leads. But remember, at each intersection, there must be some kind of transition, some kind of signpost to let your audience know where they are and where they are going. As passengers in your "car" they are listening and wondering what the destination is, when will you stop, and what they should be watching. Because your sermon is "audio", they need "verbal signposts" or "verbal transitions" to assist them in navigating with you through your message.

So what do these "verbal transitions" sound like? Here are my top five "verbal transition techniques":

1. Transition by **Questioning**

- a. Example: [15 Words of Hope by John MacArthur](#)
- b. Notice at the beginning of paragraph 7 and 8, he begins with a question and then proceeds to answer the question to transition from one paragraph to the next.
- c. Example: **But that brings up the question...How?** The Apostle Paul has been talking about the ministry of reconciliation.

2. Transition by **Summarizing**

- a. Example: [Jesus Christ and the Law of God by John Piper](#)
- b. Notice at the beginning of sermon he uses this device to transition from the introduction to the body.
- c. Example: **I would like to sum up** for you the meaning of Education for Exultation:
 - first, the meaning as it relates to buildings;
 - second, the meaning as it relates to funding;
 - third, the meaning as it relates to process; and
 - fourth, the meaning as it relates to Jesus Christ and the Law of God.

3. Transition by **Foreshadowing**

- a. Example: [The Ruler of the Waves by J.C. Ryles](#)
- b. Notice at the beginning of the introduction this preacher prepares our transition with images.
- c. Example: **Come now, and let us study together a page in our Master's history. Let us consider what we may learn from the verses of Scripture which stand at the head of this tract.** You see Jesus there crossing the lake of Galilee in a boat with his disciples. You see a sudden storm arise while He is asleep. The waves beat into the boat, and fill it. Death seems to be close at hand. The frightened disciples awake their Master and cry for help. He arises and rebukes the wind and waves, and at once there is a

calm. He mildly reproves the faithless fears of his companions, and all is over. Such is the picture. It is one full of deep instruction. Come now, and let us examine what we are meant to learn.

4. Transition by Defining

- a. *Example:* [Affliction is Certain by Gil Rugh](#)
- b. Notice how the preacher defines the word and transitions into an explanation.
- c. *Example:* **Paul says he prays for the Thessalonians "earnestly." This word means "abundantly, beyond all measure, exceedingly, and overflowing all bounds."** It is an adverb that describes something that goes beyond all measure. So when Paul says that he is praying "earnestly," he is indicating the intensity with which he prays. This word is used only two other times in the New Testament, both times by Paul. In Ephesians 3:20, Paul says, "Now to Him who is able to do exceeding abundantly beyond all that we ask or think, according to the power that works within us." We cannot grasp, with our finite minds, all that God can do. It is "exceeding abundantly" all that we can comprehend. This is the same concept used in 1 Thessalonians 3:10. Paul is praying for them more than they could comprehend. His prayers for them are "overflowing." Do you have anyone in your life that you are praying for "earnestly?" Is it any wonder that Paul's ministry was effective?

5. Transition by Bridging

- a. *Example:* God's Handwriting Upon David by Charles Spurgeon
- b. Notice that this preacher simply takes two ideas, the one previous and the one next up and places it in one sentence.
- c. *Example:* "And of the houses thereof," the places where the priests and Levites dwelt. Get a clear view of the houses that Christ gives his people to dwell in; how they dwell in him, how they abide in him, and go no more out for ever. **I cannot enlarge on this; but you can think it out for yourselves, and explain it to your hearers and scholars.** Think of those mansions of present joy and future bliss which they shall have who come in by the true and living way, even by Christ Jesus, who is the one way of entrance into the temple of salvation.

In wrapping up this topic, here are several websites that provide "transitional words and phrases":

<http://owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/574/02/>

<http://www.uark.edu/campus-resources/qwrtcntr/resources/handouts/transitions.htm>

<http://www.smart-words.org/transition-words.html>

http://www.ehow.com/how_4864740_use-transitional-devices.html

<http://essays.org.uk/english/simplicity/>

Q & A / Questions & Answers

Internet Shortcuts

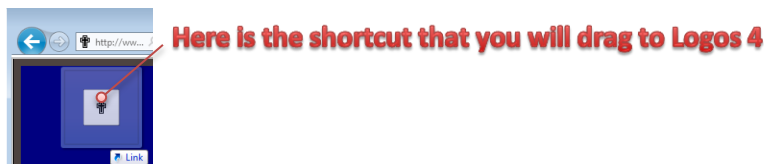
Question: How do I create a shortcut to a website (or anything else) in Logos 4?

Answer: Drag the website URL/Web Address to the shortcut bar in Logos 4.

❶ Click on the shortcut icon associated with the web address of your internet browser and drag it to Logos 4



❷ When you see the shortcut icon, drag to Logos 4 (Note: You can drag any shortcut to Logos 4)



❸ Drop the shortcut on the Logos 4 shortcut bar.

(Note: It important to have both applications in view for dragging & dropping.



Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter!
tips@learnlogos.com

[Interactive Training](#)

[Webinars](#)

[Bible Studies](#)

[Distant Education Class](#)

[Personalized Training](#)

[Tips, Tricks, and Helps](#)

Merry Christmas and Happy New Year!

I hope you like the new look of our eNewsletter.

You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about these training products.

Note: There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Feel free to click on them.

Thanks! And Enjoy!

John Fallahee

President/CEO

LearnLogos.com

#1 Just Released...Session 2 Webinars for Download

- [How to Study the Bible with Logos 4, Session 2](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 2](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 2](#) Only \$ 4.99

#2 Session 1 Webinars for Download:

- [Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99

#3 Training CDs:

[50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) Only \$39.99

#4 Upcoming Live Webinars – **NOTE: SCHEDULE CHANGE**

- **Thu, Jan. 10, 9-10 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 3**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Marking up the text, Part 1, Using theology rightly, Q & A
- **Mon, Jan. 17, 9 PM to 10 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4, Session 3**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Performing Theological Analysis/Build theological Library, Q&A
- **Tue, Jan. 24, 9 PM to 10 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 2**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Theology for Teaching/Preaching, Build Theological Library, Q&A

Alert: FREE BOOK

1 Free Bible for Logos 4 from Bible.org

Net Bible WITHOUT NOTES

About the NET Bible Translation:

The New English Translation (NET) is an amazing new translation of the Bible. It was completed by more than 25 scholars – experts in the original biblical languages – who worked directly from the best currently available Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek texts. As the first translation published free on the Internet, the NET Bible was developed for Ministry First™.

Reviews about the NET Bible: <http://bible.org/article/what-others-are-saying-about-net-bible>

Download Instructions: Visit <http://store.bible.org/product.asp?ProductID=251> and add to the shopping cart and check out.

Note: You may need Logos 3 to be installed

1 Free Commentary for Logos 4 from Galaxie.com

The Minor Prophets

About The Minor Prophets

A short commentary on the Minor Prophets by Hampton Keathley IV.

Download Instructions: Visit <http://store.galaxie.com/product.asp?ProductID=48> and add to the shopping cart and check out.

Note: You will need Logos 3 to be installed



Click One

Optimizing LOGOS 4

William Shakespeare: What's in a name? That which we call a rose by any other name would smell as sweet...

Shakespeare had it right when he penned these poetic musings, making the point that what matters most is not so much the name but what it is or what it does! But in Logos 4, the name is as important as the content, especially when you are trying to find your content!

There are several “name optimizing strategies” when it comes to naming your notes, handouts, passage lists, prayer lists, etc.

Strategy #1 - Integrate Bible passages into the name of your document

i.e. Notes about the Biblical text should be named after the passage: Mark 1:1-10, John 5:10-15

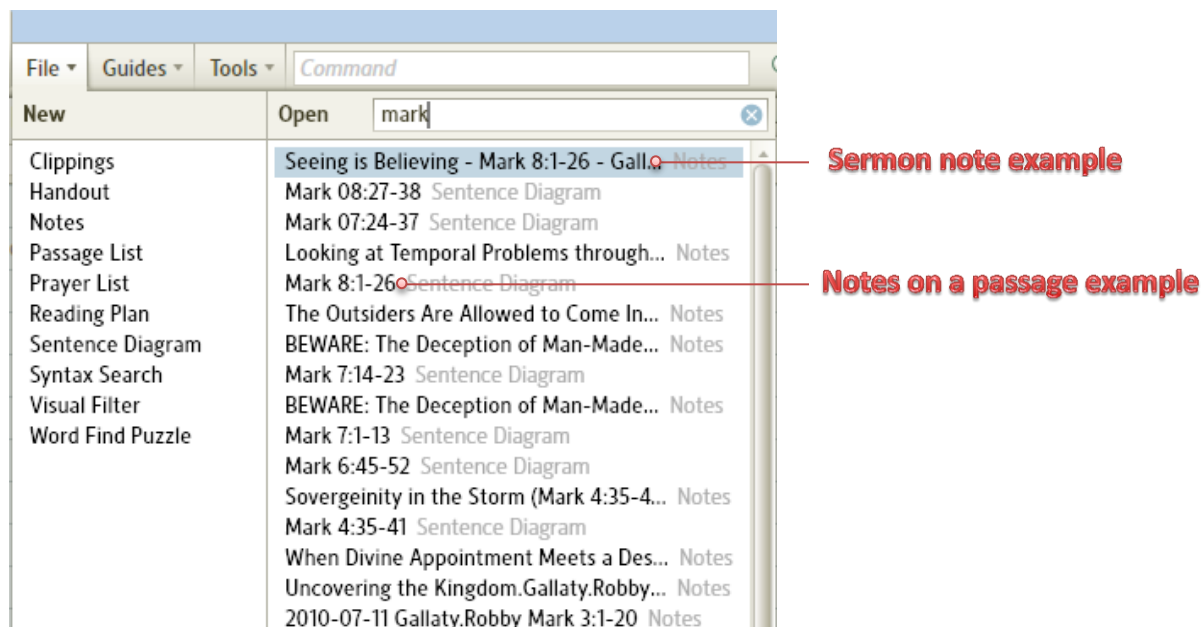
Strategy #2 – Integrate Key Words/Topics into the name of your document

i.e. Notes about people, places, or events should use the keywords/topics that you would find in a dictionary: Jesus, Jerusalem, or Rapture.

Strategy #3 – If you are taking notes from your pastor; be sure to include their name. I recommend last name and then first name.

i.e. 2010-12-12 Gallaty.Robby or **Title Book Author Date** (Seeing is Believing Mark 8:1-26 Gallaty.Robby 2010-12-12)

With these three strategies you can more easily find your files and organize them. So now when you use the find box, just type the passage or the keyword/topic and voila! You will find it more quickly!

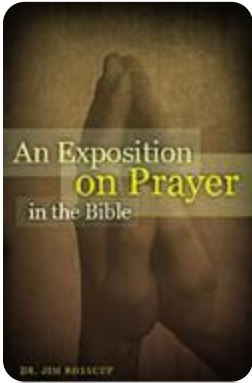


By the way, Logos is pre-selling [The Complete Works of William Shakespeare](#) for \$ 29.95.

Prayer in LOGOS 4

What if you could study every prayer in the Bible?

You can with this amazing book: [An Exposition on Prayer in the Bible](#)



Imagine traversing through Biblical history from Creation to Adam to the Cross, then through the early church and lastly peering into the prophetic future and reading the prayers of God, saints and sinners! With 3000 pages, a topical index, Bible introductions, Bible outlines, and alliterated teaching outlines with commentary, you will be certain to learn how to pray and gain fresh Biblical insights into the meaning and historical backgrounds of these prayers.

Tip: There are two buying options:

Buy as one book: \$ [259.95](#)

Buy each book separately:

Genesis – 2 Samuel: \$ [49.95](#)

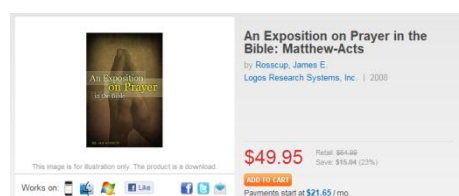
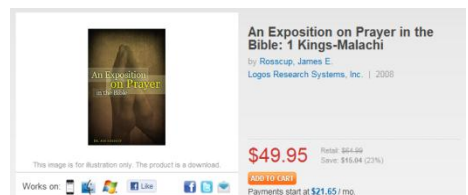
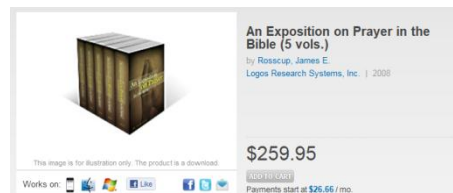
1 Kings – Malachi: \$ [49.95](#)

Matthew – Acts: \$ [49.95](#)

Romans – Revelation: \$ [49.95](#)

=====

Total: \$ **199.80**

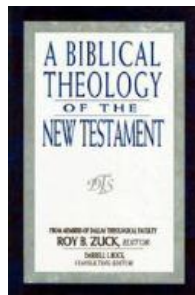
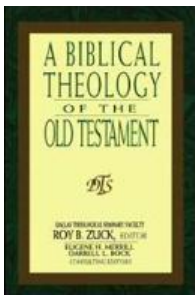


Now did you catch the price difference? Apparently Logos is not aware of the savings of \$60 when buying these books separately! I do not think anything is left out. Now that I have brought attention to this, the price may increase...buy now and save!

Historical/Theological Background

Theology by the Book, Chapter, and Verse...

Two must have book/resources:



Buy Now: \$ [21.95](#)

Buy Now: \$ [28.95](#)

Whenever you study a passage in Scripture it has a theological context and various theological themes. However, it can be difficult to understand the multitude of theological contexts and discover the various theological themes in one book of the Bible let alone all 66, especially if you have never used a theology book or studied theology systematically.

Theologian Roy Zuck authored these two fantastic resources to save you the time and enrich your Biblical studies.

The book is organized like your Bible, in two volumes. Nearly every book has an introduction and historical background section. The author summarized the theological themes in a commentary fashion with Biblical cross references. Additionally, each book has unique information; for example, in Genesis the author explores the covenants, whereas in Peter and Jude it deals with salvation and atonement. Lastly, there is a subject and person index.

So now you may be asking, how do you use these books in Logos?

I would use these books in one of two ways.

- 1) Simply read this before I study the passage in-depth to become aware of the theological concerns of the book
- 2) I would search for a verse in these books with the search engine as a collection and then read what find.

Note: See the November newsletter or Overview Training Videos to create a collection and search for a verse in a collection or order your training discs by CTRL+Click on the image at the right.

Orange Video Training Disc:

- Beginner > Searching > Collections
- Beginner > Searching > Searching
- Beginner > Searching > Basic Search

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!



DISC 1: Overview of Logos 4



DISC 2: Best Practices How to Study, Teach & Preach

Two Training Products to get "More out of 4"!

Interactive and **traditional non-interactive training videos** Included on every training CD

Videos play on Mac too!

Outlining

Parallelism: par•al•lel•ism \ 'pa-rə-,le-,li-zəm \ the quality or state of being parallel, repeated syntactical similarities introduced for rhetorical effect

One of the most frequently used literary devices you will find in the Bible is parallelism. You will see this most notably in the Psalms and Proverbs. To find parallel passages you will need to look for truths that are side by side or where one idea follows another. However, be aware that the parallel thought in many cases defines, completes, emphasizes, or drives the reader toward a conclusion and even sometimes contrasts the idea. In summary, parallelism repeats the same thought in different terms.

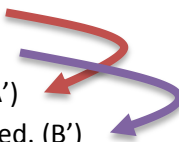
Here is my first example from **Psalms 103:2-5**. In this example, the parallel idea expands the idea of “Benefits”. There are six benefits:

- 2 Bless the LORD, O my soul,
And forget none of His **benefits**;
- 3 Who pardons all your iniquities, (Benefit #1)
Who heals all your diseases; (Benefit #2)
- 4 Who redeems your life from the pit, (Benefit #3)
Who crowns you with lovingkindness and compassion; (Benefit #4)
- 5 Who satisfies your years with good things, (Benefit #5)
So that your youth is renewed like the eagle. (Benefit #6)

Here is my second example from James 4:8. Notice the repeating of the idea with additional information.

James 4:8 Draw near to God and He will draw near to you.

Cleanse your hands, (A)
you sinners; (B)
and purify your hearts, (A')
you double-minded. (B')



Here is my third example, Proverbs 11:1. In this example, the parallel is antithetical. That is to say, two ideas contrast one another to make a single point. I color coded what is paralleled and contrasted.

Proverbs 11:1

1 A **false balance** is an **abomination** to the **LORD**,
But a **just weight** is **His delight**.

If you can see the parallelism in the text, then you can identify the preaching point of the passage. This is the point you want to make in your teaching and preaching outline.

Word Study

LEMMA VS. MANUSCRIPT: What is the difference? Why does it matter?

What is the Difference?

The lemma is the word you will find in a dictionary. It is sometimes called the root word.

The manuscript is the word you will find in the Hebrew or Greek Bible. These are the words written in the Bible.

The **lemma** has one form, whereas the **manuscript** has many forms.

For example, let's look at [Romans 4:5](#) But to the one who does not work, but believes in Him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness.

HOW TO:

❶ Go to [Romans 4:5](#) in your Bible and right click on the word **justifies**. Please notice the menu that appears:

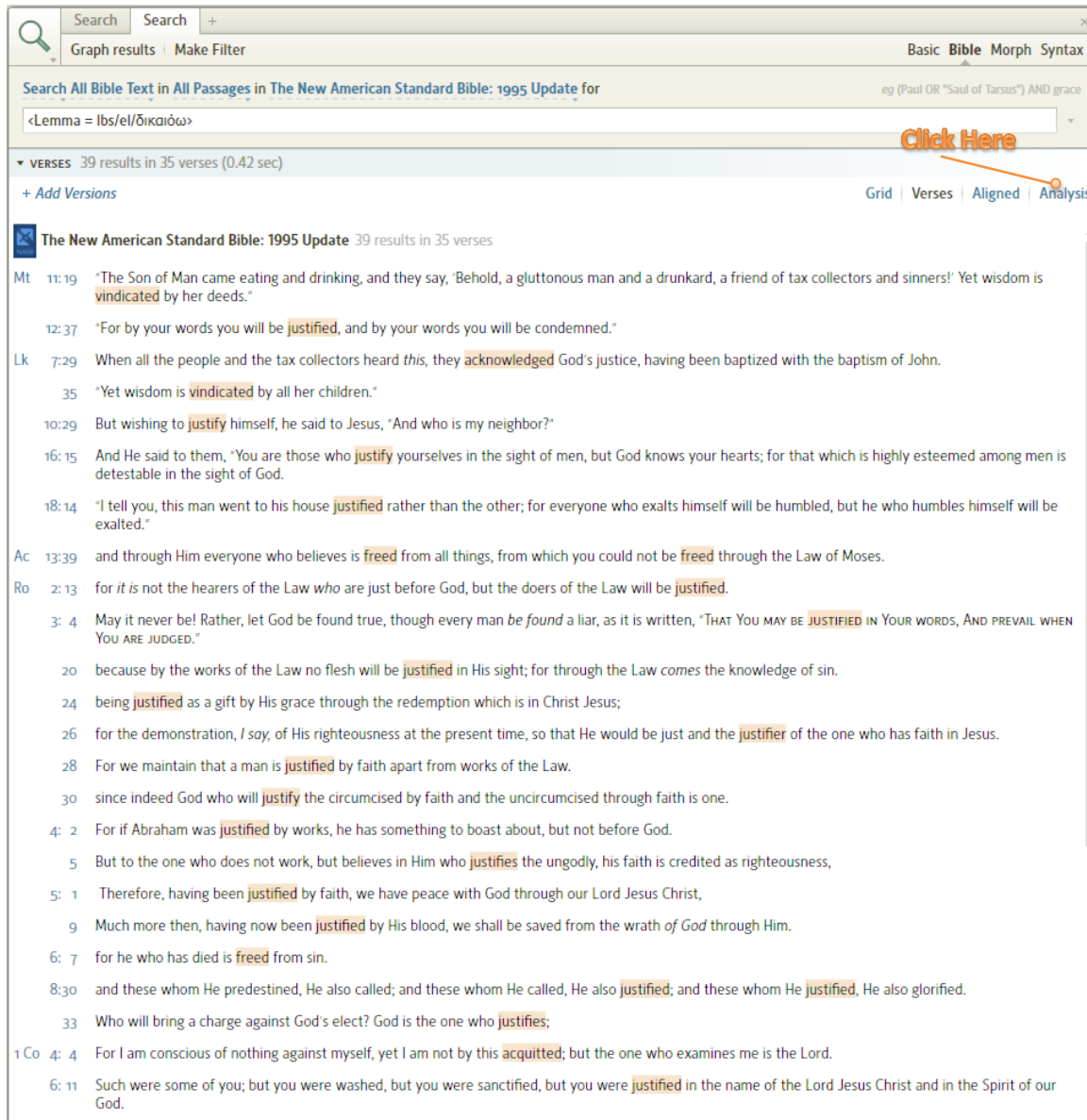
Selection	justifies
Reference	Romans 4:5
Manuscript	δικαιοῦντα
Lemma	δικαιόω
Morph	VPAP-SAM
Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #1344
Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 34.46

❷ At the right you can choose between lemma and manuscript. Let's click on **lemma**.

❸ Choose from the menu "Search this Resource".

Search this resource	Lemma	δικαιόω
----------------------	-------	---------

④ Our search results show us every place in the New Testament where the Greek word/Lemma for **Justify** is mentioned. Now this report can be a bit overwhelming, so let's click on the word **Analysis** at the right.



Search Search +
Graph results | Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for
eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace
<Lemma = ἰβς/εἰ/δικαίω>

VERSES 39 results in 35 verses (0.42 sec)
+ Add Versions Grid Verses Aligned Analysis

The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update 39 results in 35 verses

Mt 11:19 "The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and they say, 'Behold, a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' Yet wisdom is vindicated by her deeds."

12:37 "For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned."

Lk 7:29 When all the people and the tax collectors heard this, they acknowledged God's justice, having been baptized with the baptism of John.

35 "Yet wisdom is vindicated by all her children."

10:29 But wishing to justify himself, he said to Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?"

16:15 And He said to them, "You are those who justify yourselves in the sight of men, but God knows your hearts; for that which is highly esteemed among men is detestable in the sight of God.

18:14 "I tell you, this man went to his house justified rather than the other; for everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but he who humbles himself will be exalted."

Ac 13:39 and through Him everyone who believes is freed from all things, from which you could not be freed through the Law of Moses.

Ro 2:13 for it is not the hearers of the Law who are just before God, but the doers of the Law will be justified.

3: 4 May it never be! Rather, let God be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, "THAT YOU MAY BE JUSTIFIED IN YOUR WORDS, AND PREVAIL WHEN YOU ARE JUDGED."

20 because by the works of the Law no flesh will be justified in His sight; for through the Law comes the knowledge of sin.

24 being justified as a gift by His grace through the redemption which is in Christ Jesus;

26 for the demonstration, I say, of His righteousness at the present time, so that He would be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

28 For we maintain that a man is justified by faith apart from works of the Law.

30 since indeed God who will justify the circumcised by faith and the uncircumcised through faith is one.

4: 2 For if Abraham was justified by works, he has something to boast about, but not before God.

5 But to the one who does not work, but believes in Him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness,

5: 1 Therefore, having been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ,

9 Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath of God through Him.

6: 7 for he who has died is freed from sin.

8:30 and these whom He predestined, He also called; and these whom He called, He also justified; and these whom He justified, He also glorified.

33 Who will bring a charge against God's elect? God is the one who justifies;

1 Co 4: 4 For I am conscious of nothing against myself, yet I am not by this acquitted; but the one who examines me is the Lord.

6: 11 Such were some of you; but you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and in the Spirit of our God.

5 See our **Analysis** below. Next, click the column titled “**form**”. This will sort each **form** and group them together. Now that the list is sorted, you can see all the “manuscripted forms”.

Why does it matter?

Well, look at the column labeled “**Result**”. You can see how the **manuscript form** has been translated into English. Do you see all the different ways it has been translated? There are various English words for two main reasons. First, the translators change the word based on its morphology or parts of speech and secondly, context. This matters to help you more clearly understand and define the word.

⑥ Let's look closer at the morphology or parts of speech. Using the horizontal scroll bar at the bottom, scroll to the right

Search Search +
Graph results Make Filter

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for
eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

<Lemma = lbs/el/δικαίω>

▼ ANALYSIS 39 results in 35 verses (2.37 sec)

[Grid](#) | [Verses](#) | [Aligned](#) | [Analysis](#)

Drag a column header here to group by that column.

Reference	Previous Context	Result	Next Context	Form	Greek Strong's	Lemma (Greek)	Louw-Nida	Part of Speech	Case (Logos)
Mt 11:19	'rs! 'Yet wisdom is	vindicated	by her deeds.'	ἐδικαιώθη	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Mt 12:37	words you will be	justified	, and by your	δικαιωθήσῃ	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Lk 7:29	's heard this, they	acknowl...	God's justice,	ἐδικαίωσαν	G1344	δικαίω	LN 36.22	verb	—
Lk 7:35	"Yet wisdom is	vindicated	by all her chil	ἐδικαιώθη	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Lk 10:29	But wishing to	justify	himself, he sa	δικαιῶσαι	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Lk 16:15	'ou are those who	justify	yourselves in	δικαιοῦντες	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative
Lk 18:14	went to his house	justified	rather than th	δεδικαιωμένος	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	nominative
Ac 13:39	ie who believes is	freed	from all thing:	δικαιοῦται	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ac 13:39	you could not be	freed	through the L	δικαιωθῆναι	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ro 2:13	of the Law will be	justified	.	δικαιωθήσονται	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Ro 3:4	'HAT YOU MAY BE	justified	IN YOUR WOR	δικαιωθήξ	G1344	δικαίω	LN 88.16	verb	—
Ro 3:20	w no flesh will be	justified	in His sight; fo	δικαιωθήσεται	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ro 3:24	being	justified	as a gift by Hi	δικαιοῦμενοι	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative
Ro 3:26	ld be just and the	justifier	of the one wh	δικαιοῦντα	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	accusative
Ro 3:28	tain that a man is	justified	by faith apart	δικαιοῦσθαι	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ro 3:30	leed God who will	justify	the circumcis	δικαιώσει	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ro 4:2	or if Abraham was	justified	by works, he l	ἐδικαιώθη	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	—
Ro 4:5	lieves in Him who	justifies	the ungodly, t	δικαιοῦντα	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	accusative
Ro 5:1	fore, having been	justified	by faith, we h	δικαιωθέντες	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	nominative
Ro 5:9	having now been	justified	by His blood, i	δικαιωθέντες	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative
Ro 6:7	ie who has died is	freed	from sin.	δεδικάωται	G1344	δικαίω	LN 37.138	verb	—
Ro 8:30	He called, He also	justified	; and these wi	ἐδικαίωσεν	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	—
Ro 8:30	d these whom He	justified	, He also glori	ἐδικαίωσεν	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	—
Ro 8:33	od is the one who	justifies	;	δικαιών	G1344	δικαίω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative
1 Co 4:4	et I am not by this	acquitted	; but the one	δεδικάωμαι	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
1 Co 6:11	ied, but you were	justified	in the name o	ἐδικαιώθητε	G1344	δικαίω	LN 37.138	verb	—
Ga 2:16	that a man is not	justified	by the works	δικαιοῦται	G1344	δικαίω	LN 56.34	verb	—
Ga 2:16	o that we may be	justified	by faith in Chi	δικαιωθώμεν	G1344	δικαίω			

Click Here / Horizontal Scroll Bar

7 Now, at the far right you can see how the lemma/root has specific morphological attributes. These attributes: parts of speech, case, gender, mood, number, person, tense, and voice will determine the meaning and translation.

Search **Search** +
Graph results | Make Filter

Basic **Bible** Morph Syntax

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for
eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

<Lemma = ἰβς/el/δικαιοῶ>

▼ ANALYSIS 39 results in 35 verses (2.16 sec)

[Grid](#) | [Verses](#) | [Aligned](#) | [Analysis](#)

Drag a column header here to group by that column.

ima (Greek)	Louw-Nida	Part of Speech	Case (Logos)	Gender (Logos)	Mood (Logos)	Number (Logo)	Person (Logo)	Tense (Logo)	Voice (Li)
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	first person	perfect	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	singular	—	perfect	passive
ἰβω	LN 37.138	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	perfect	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	present	active
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	plural	—	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	accusative	masculine	participle	singular	—	present	active
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	accusative	masculine	participle	singular	—	present	active
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	plural	—	present	active
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	infinitive	—	—	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	plural	second per...	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	present	passive
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	plural	—	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	plural	—	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	plural	—	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	infinitive	—	—	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	infinitive	—	—	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	subjunctive	singular	second per...	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 56.34	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	future	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	third person	future	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	singular	second per...	future	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	indicative	plural	third person	future	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	subjunctive	plural	first person	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	subjunctive	plural	first person	aorist	passive
ἰβω	LN 34.46	verb	nominative	masculine	participle	singular	—	present	active
ἰβω	LN 88.16	verb	—	—	infinitive	—	—	aorist	active

Application: When you study a word in its context, be sure to examine its meaning in other contexts, to learn about the range of possible meanings.

Illustrations/ Applications

A song unsung is no melody at all!

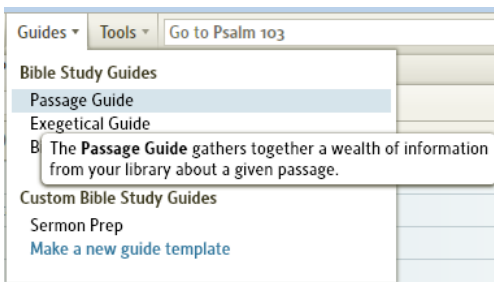
With Logos 4, you have a new tool to help you discover amazing illustrations and applications. However, what I am about to show you, is not like your typical illustration or application. We are going to use Hymns to enhance your presentation of the truth.

Good hymns are theologically in alignment with the Scriptures while bad hymns are not theologically accurate. So beware! But more importantly, the lyric of hymns are incredible word pictures that are concise in form. You won't tell a story with these illustrations; instead they will serve you better as an opening to a point, closing a point, or help strengthen a point.

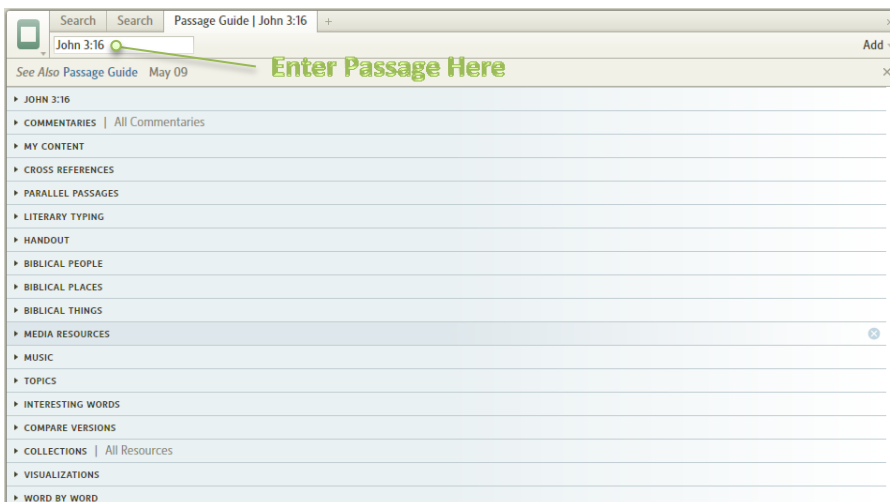
Let me demonstrate.

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu and click Guides > Passage Guide



- 2 Enter the passage **John 3:16** in the Bible Reference Box



3 Click on the section title **Media Resources** to expand this section and then click on the first hymn you see.



4 You may need to maximize the window for easier viewing. Notice the lyrics at the right.

204 To God, Be the Glory
FANNY J. CRESSY W. H. DOANE

1. To God be the glo-ry,--great things He hath done, So loved He the world that He
2. O per - fect re-demp-tion, the purchase of blood, To ev - ry be-liev - er the
3. Great things He hath taught us, great things He hath done, And great our re-joicing thro

gave us His Son, Who yield-ed His life an a-tone-ment for sin, And o-pened the
groom-ing of God; The vil - est of fend-er who tru-ly be-lieves, That moment from
Je - sus the Son; But pu - rer, and higher, and greater will be Our won-der, our

CO-RO-NU-S
Life-gate that all may go in. Praise the Lord, praise the Lord, Let the earth hear His
trans-port, when Je-sus we see.

voice! Praise the Lord, praise the Lord, Let the peo-ple re-joice! O come to the

Fa-ther, thro' Je-sus the Son, And give Him the glo-ry,--great things He hath done.

Lyrics

To God Be The Glory
MIDI
Ps 30:21 96:8 105:3-8 Jn 3:16 10:36 14:6 St
Ac 4:33 Ro 16:27 Ga 1:3-5 Eph 1:7 Col
Eph 1 Jn 3:3
1. To God be the glory, great things he
hath done! So loved he the world that
he gave us his Son. Who yielded his life
an atonement for sin, And opened the
life gate that we may go in.
2. Praise the Lord, praise the Lord. Let
the earth hear his voice! Praise the Lord,
praise the Lord. Let the people rejoice!
O come to the Father through Jesus the
Son, And give him the glory, great
things he hath done!
3. O perfect redemption, the purchase
of blood! To ev'ry believer the promise
of God! The vilest offender who truly
believes, That moment from Jesus
forgiveness receives.
4. Great things he hath taught us, great
things he hath done, And great our
rejoicing through Jesus the Son; But
purer, and higher, and greater will be
Our wonder, our transport, when Jesus
we see.

RELATED MEDIA

5 Read all the lyrics and see which lyric is the most appropriate for your lesson.

Note: Feel free to modernize the language of the hymn for your audience

Searching

Visiting Jerusalem!

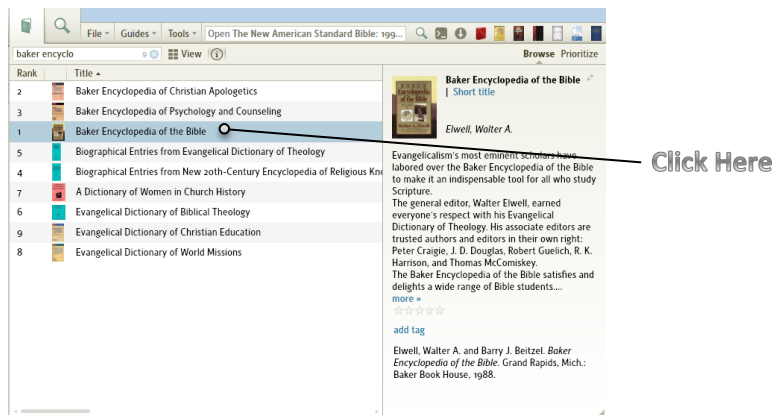
If you have the [Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible](#) or books with images then you can do an amazing search with Logos 4.

HOW TO:

- 1 First, let's open [Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible](#) by clicking on the Book icon, labeled **Library**.



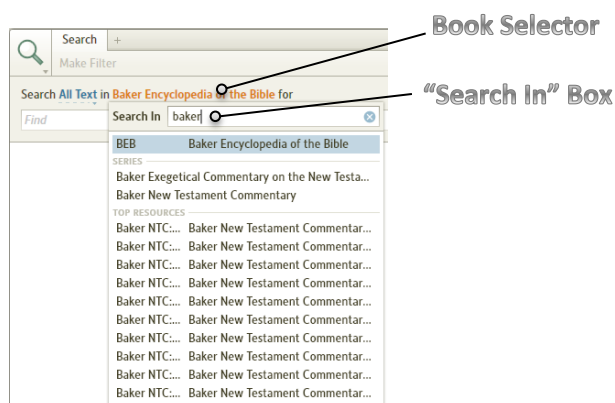
- 2 In the find box, type the following: **baker encyclopedia** and click on the book title: [Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible](#)



- 3 Next, click the search icon.

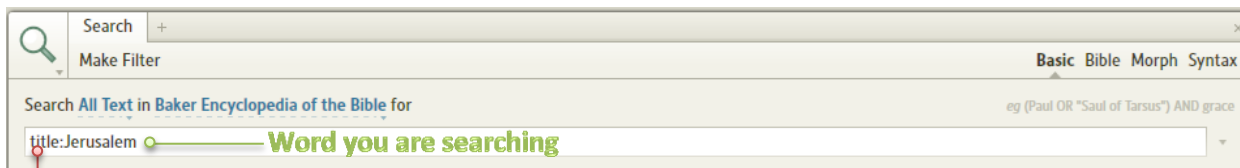


- 4 Click on the book selection menu and type "Baker in the **Search in**" box



Note: You don't have to have the book opened in your workspace/layout to find it in the search box. The search box can access you whole library.

- 5 Next type the following in the search box: **title:Jerusalem** and press enter



Special Search Field

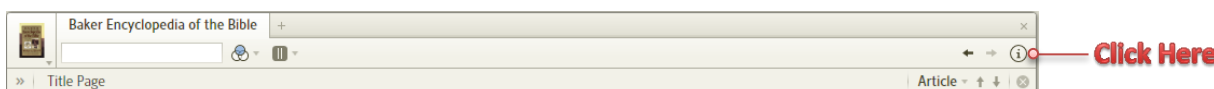
Now you may be wondering, what is a **special search field**? These “**fields**” help you find unique information in a resource/book more easily or help narrow your search results.

If you are wondering what kind of **fields** you can search, you need to know that every book is different. In fact, some books have a lot of search fields while others have very few.

Where can you find these fields? Let me show you:

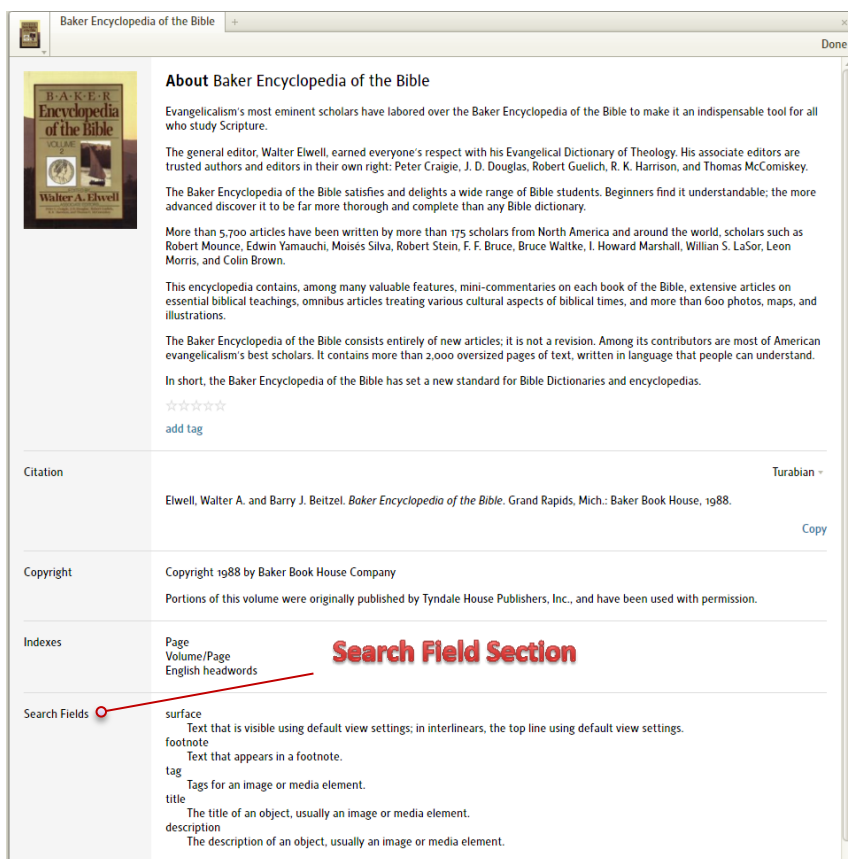
HOW TO:

- 1 Locate the **information button** at the far, top, right of your book. It looks like a circle with the letter “i” inside.



- 2 Scroll down to the **Search Fields** section. Click **Done** (at the top, right corner) when you are finished viewing.

Note: These are the fields you can search inside the [Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible](#).



③ Let's search! Type in the search box **title:Jerusalem** and then press enter.

Search +
Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

title:Jerusalem

④ Examine your search results.


Search +
Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax


Search All Text in Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace


title:Jerusalem

LIBRARY RESULTS 16 results in 16 articles (0.15 sec)

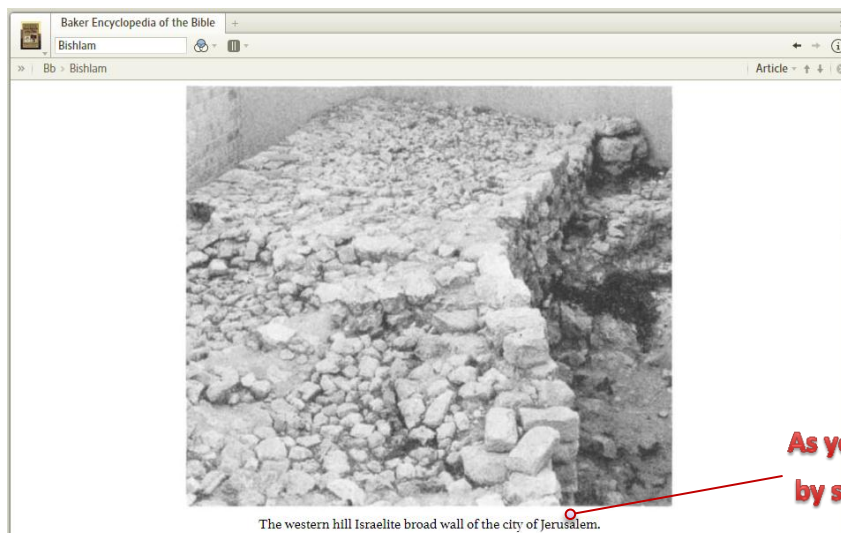
Ranked | By Book

Bishlam Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible, p 360
 wrote a letter complaining about the rebuilding to the Persian king Artaxerxes (Ezr 4:7). The western hill Israelite broad wall of the city of Jerusalem.

Sorek, Valley of Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible, p 1986
 which provided the setting for his intrigues and the concentration of his activities as judge. The Valley of Sorek, west of Jerusalem.

Winepress Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible, p 2148
 earth' gathered by angels into "the winepress of the wrath of God." See WINE, VINE, VINEYARD. A winepress in Jerusalem.

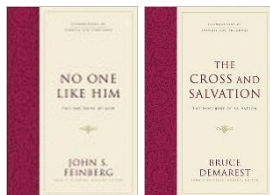
⑤ Let's click the first image



As you can see, Jerusalem was found by searching the "Title" field.

Book Overview and Review

Foundations of Evangelical Theology



Meet Bruce Demarest and John Feinberg. These two theologians will give you the insight you need to understand the two most important doctrines in the Bible – God and Salvation.

John Feinberg authored *No One Like Him* (879 pages) and Bruce Demarest authored *The Cross and Salvation* (544 pages). These books are in-depth studies providing you clear explanations, great cross references, and arm you with the knowledge to understand and defend these truths.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

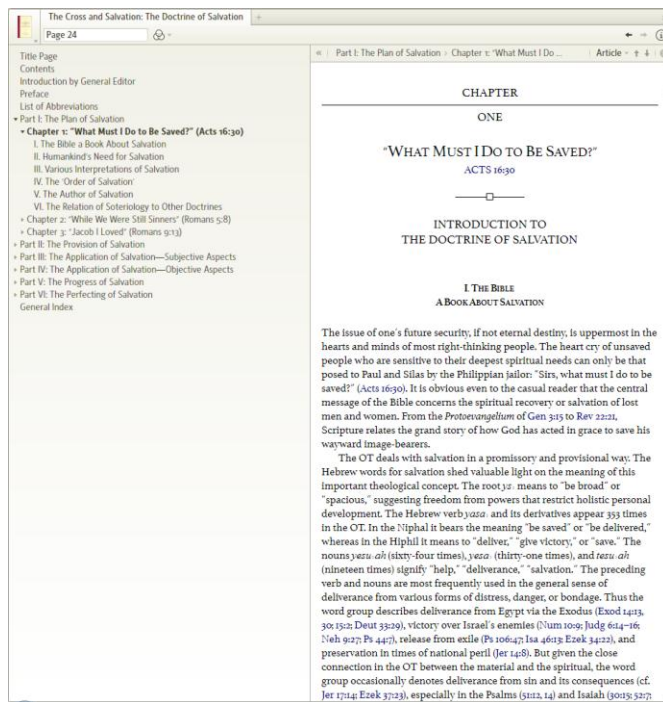
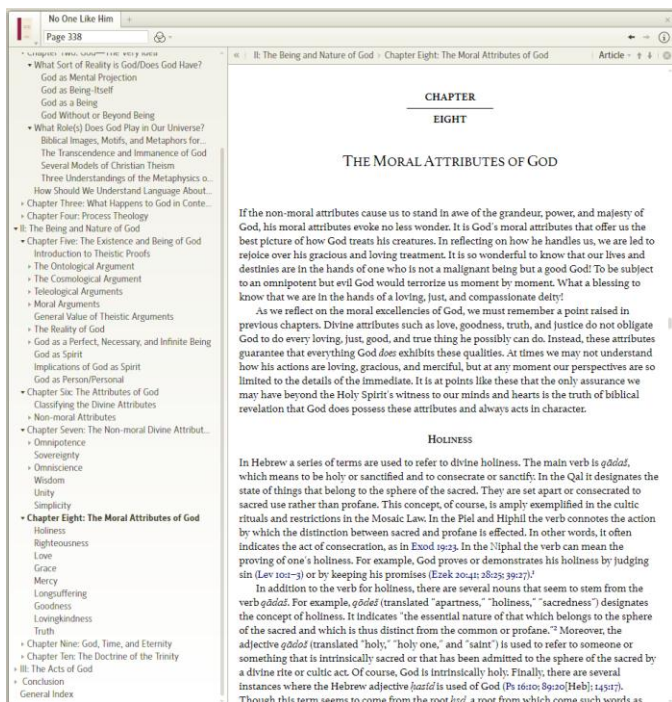
[No One Like Him](#)

Title Page
Contents
Foreword
Introduction
Preface
List of Abbreviations
Chapter One: Introduction
I: Concepts Of God
II: The Being and Nature of God
III: The Acts of God
Conclusion
General Index

[The Cross and Salvation](#)

Title Page
Contents
Introduction by General Editor
Preface
List of Abbreviations
Part I: The Plan of Salvation
Part II: The Provision of Salvation
Part III: The Application of Salvation—Subjective Aspects
Part IV: The Application of Salvation—Objective Aspects
Part V: The Progress of Salvation
Part VI: The Perfecting of Salvation
General Index

SAMPLE PAGES



PRICE:

[No One Like Him: The Doctrine of God](#) \$20

[The Cross and Salvation: The Doctrine of Salvation](#) \$15

Finding Bible Cross References

If you can think of the scriptures as a giant chain, where each verse is connected like one chain link to another then you can appreciate the importance of finding the appropriate Bible cross reference.

So how do you find the best cross reference? I am so glad you asked!

Primer (Brief Introduction): There are three basic types of cross references you can make from any particular passage.

#1) Cross Reference by Word: “Propitiation”

Note: Here we searched on the word “Propitiation” and found a total of 4 places where this word is used and explained.

The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update 4 results in 4 verses

Ro 3:25 whom God displayed publicly as a **propitiation** in His blood through faith. This was to demonstrate His righteousness, because in the forbearance of God He passed over the sins previously committed;

Heb 2:17 Therefore, He had to be made like His brethren in all things, so that He might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make **propitiation** for the sins of the people.

1 Jn 2:2 and He Himself is the **propitiation** for our sins; and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world.

4:10 In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the **propitiation** for our sins.

#2) Cross Reference by Phrase: “Once for all”

Note: Here we searched on the phrase “once for all” in reference to Jesus’ death and found 7 results, but only the first five speak of Jesus; “once for all” sacrifice, whereas Jude 3 & 5 are in reference to a completely different topic.

The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update 7 results in 7 verses

Ro 6:10 For the death that He died, He died to sin **once for all**; but the life that He lives, He lives to God.

Heb 7:27 who does not need daily, like those high priests, to offer up sacrifices, first for His own sins and then for the sins of the people, because this He did **once for all** when He offered up Himself.

9:12 and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place **once for all**, having obtained eternal redemption.

10:10 By this will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ **once for all**.

1 Pe 3:18 For Christ also died for sins **once for all**, the just for the unjust, so that He might bring us to God, having been put to death in the flesh, but made alive in the spirit;

Jud 3 Beloved, while I was making every effort to write you about our common salvation, I felt the necessity to write to you appealing that you contend earnestly for the faith which was **once for all** handed down to the saints.

5 Now I desire to remind you, though you know all things **once for all**, that the Lord, after saving a people out of the land of Egypt, subsequently destroyed those who did not believe.

#3) Cross Reference by Topic: “Martyrdom”

Hebrews 11:37 **They were stoned**, they were sawn in two, they were tempted, they were put to death with the sword; they went about in sheepskins, in goatskins, being destitute, afflicted, ill-treated

Key cross Reference: [1 Kings 21:10](#), [Luke 13:34](#), [Jn 10:31-33](#), [Acts 7:58](#)

Note: These are the hardest to find because they are related topically. Use [Treasury of Scripture Knowledge](#) for to discover these relationships.

Conclusion: When you want to introduce a Bible cross reference, always ask yourself which type of cross reference you want to make: word, phrase, or topic.

Warning: Never introduce a new idea with a cross reference, always repeat the idea, or expand the idea to be clearer.

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, Part 3

Two weeks ago we introduced the prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **Remember** the Glories of God and then explored **Examine** Your Motives and Manner. This week we will look at “F” for **Face** Life through Scriptures

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

One of the most important disciplines in the Christian life is to study the word of God and to apply it in any and every circumstance. This is what I mean by “Facing Life through the Scriptures”. Truly there are no circumstances in your life that the Word of God cannot bear itself upon. As Paul tells us in **2 Timothy 3:16**, All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness **17** so that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work.

Now you may be wondering, “John, how do I apply the scriptures to my life?” I have found help by studying the circumstances of the people of the Bible. I look at their obedient and disobedient behavior and learn from their life experience. Listed below are some amazing people with amazing circumstances as well as key passage to meditate upon during your prayer time this week as you:

#3 Face Life through Scriptures

- A. Hannah ([1 Samuel 1:4-2:10](#))
- B. Daniel ([Daniel 2:12-23](#))
- C. Hezekiah ([2 Kings 22:8-23:4](#))
- D. Right Thinking ([Philippians 4:8](#))
- E. Right Actions ([Philippians 4:9-12](#))
- F. Trusting ([1 John 5:14](#))
- G. Understanding ([Hebrews 4:15](#))
- H. Help ([1 Corinthians 10:13](#))

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!



DISC 1: Overview of Logos 4



DISC 2: Best Practices How to Study, Teach & Preach

Two Training Products to get "More out of 4"!

Interactive and **traditional non-interactive training videos** Included on every training CD

Videos play on Mac too!

Note: For more on prayer, purchase my training CDs. See the ad at the right, or CTRL+Click to learn more, or visit www.LearnLogos.com.

how to Preach

The Best Outline is the memorable outline!

This is a true statement, but it must also be an accurate outline. In general, there are only two major types of Preaching/Teaching outlines: Explanation and Application. Others outlines combines these two basic forms.

First is the “Explanation Outline”. These outlines explain the text and depending on the detail, could very well stand alone and need no further explanation. These are the outlines you will find in most commentaries. Here is an example of the outline for Jude from the *Bible Knowledge Commentary*:

- I. Salutation (vv. 1-2)
- II. Warnings concerning Apostates (vv. 3-4)
- III. Warnings concerning the Peril of Apostasy (vv. 5-16)
 - A. Examples of apostates in the past (vv. 5-7)
 - 1. Egypt (v. 5)
 - 2. Angels (v. 6)
 - 3. Sodom and Gomorrah (v. 7)
 - B. Actions of apostates in the present (vv. 8-16)
 - 1. Rejecting authority (vv. 8-10)
 - 2. Walking in error (v. 11)
 - 3. Leading falsely (vv. 12-13)
 - 4. Pleasing self (vv. 14-16)
- IV. Guidelines for Avoiding Apostasy (vv. 17-23)
 - A. Remembering the teaching of the apostles (vv. 17-19)
 - B. Nurturing themselves (vv. 20-21)
 - C. Being merciful to others (vv. 22-23)
- V. Victory over Apostasy (vv. 24-25)¹

The second type of outline is an “Application/Exhortation Outline”. These outlines call you to respond to the text and require the preacher/teacher to connect the Biblical text to the application. Here is an “Application” example modified from the *Life Application Bible Commentary*.

- 1. Beware of False Teachers (1–16)
- 2. Fight for God’s truth (17–25)²

Now how do you choose between these two styles? First, always create the “Explanation” outline first. This is the easiest to create, and should you later decide to create an “Application” outline, you have a clearer understanding of the text and can properly connect the application to the text.

¹ John F. Walvoord, Roy B. Zuck and Dallas Theological Seminary, vol. 2, *The Bible Knowledge Commentary : An Exposition of the Scriptures* (Wheaton, IL: Victor Books, 1983-), 918-19.

² Bruce B. Barton, *1 Peter, 2 Peter, Jude*, Life application Bible commentary (Wheaton, Ill.: Tyndale House Pub., 1995), 233.

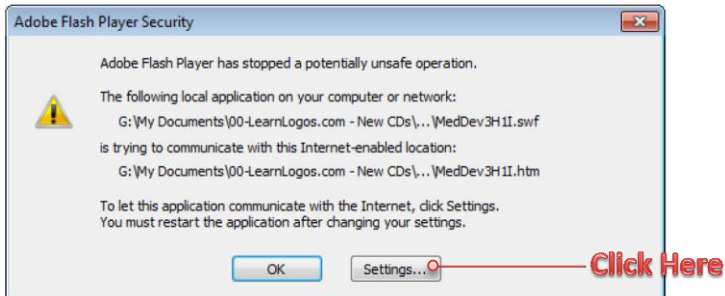
Q & A

Adobe flash Player Security

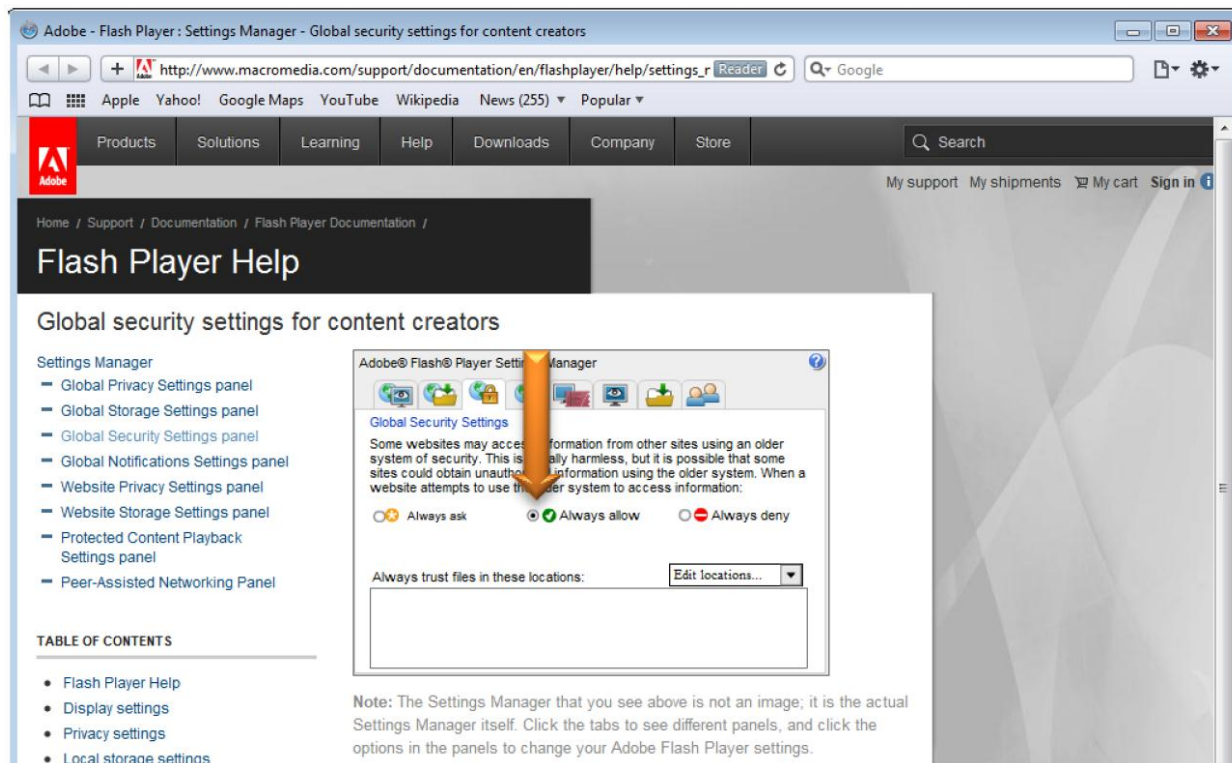
Question: John, how do I remove Adobe's Security Warning when I play your videos

Answer: Change Adobe's security setting

❶ Click the button labeled "Settings" (You must be connected to the internet)



❷ A web page will open with this image, click the circle labeled "Always Allow"



Note: You may need to reboot your computer.

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter!

tips@learnlogos.com

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

Welcome to 2011!

With a New Year comes new trials and triumphs! May you apprehend the grace and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ!

On the home front, our family has adopted 3 cats from the local shelter. You can imagine the excitement of our 3 kids!



Note: You can click on the colored links below and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about these training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks! And Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO LearnLogos.com

#1 Just Released...Session 2 & 3 Webinars for Download

Session 2 Webinars (Only \$ 4.99)

[How to Study the Bible with Logos 4, Session 2](#)
[Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 2](#)
[Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 2](#)

Session 3 Webinars (Only \$ 4.99)

[How to Study the Bible with Logos 4, Session 3](#)
[Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 3](#) (Jan 24)
[Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 3](#)

#2 Session 1 Webinars for Download:

- [Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99
- [Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, Session 1](#) Only \$ 4.99

#3 Training CDs – *You can now download this training immediately!*

[50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) Only \$39.99

#4 Upcoming Live Webinars – **NOTE: SCHEDULE CHANGE – [See New Schedule](#)**

- Mon, Jan. 24, 9-10 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, **Session 3**
 - [Click to Signup](#): *Theology for Teaching/Preaching, Build Theological Library, Q&A*
- Mon, Feb. 7, 9-10 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, **Session 4**
 - [Click to Signup](#): *Marking up the text, Part 1, Using theology rightly, Q & A*
- Mon, Feb. 24, 9-10 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4, **Session 4**
 - [Click to Signup](#): *Performing Theological Analysis/Build theological Library, Q&A*

Alert: FREE BOOK

3 Free Books for Logos 4 from www.Logos.com

The Scripture Alphabet of Animals

<http://www.logos.com/product/365/the-scripture-alphabet-of-animals>

The Love Affairs of a Bibliomaniac

<http://www.logos.com/product/583/the-love-affairs-of-a-bibliomaniac>

Memoir and Remains of the Rev. Robert Murray McCheyne

<http://www.logos.com/mccheyne>

The graphic consists of two vertical rectangular boxes. The left box is orange and titled 'Interactive Training' with a CD icon. It lists '100+ Videos', '10+ Hours of Training', and 'Free Updates', with a 'Learn More' link and a 'BUY NOW' button. The right box is green and titled 'Distant Education Class' with a rolled-up scroll icon. It lists 'Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.' and '8 to 32 Week Modules', with a 'Learn More' link and a 'BUY NOW' button. A blue starburst with '50% Off' is positioned above the orange box, and another blue starburst with 'Learn at Your Pace' is positioned to the right of the green box.

50% Off

Interactive Training

100+ Videos
10+ Hours of Training
Free Updates
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

Distant Education Class

Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)

Learn at Your Pace

BUY NOW

Click One, Click Both!

Optimizing LOGOS 4

Along those lines...

You may have noticed lines to the right of your books. These lines inform you where you have searched, where you have marked your favorite locations, and places you have visited. I have marked them below in Figure 1. Additionally, if you float your mouse over these lines, you can get a snapshot of the content at the bookmark, see Figure 2.

Figure 1

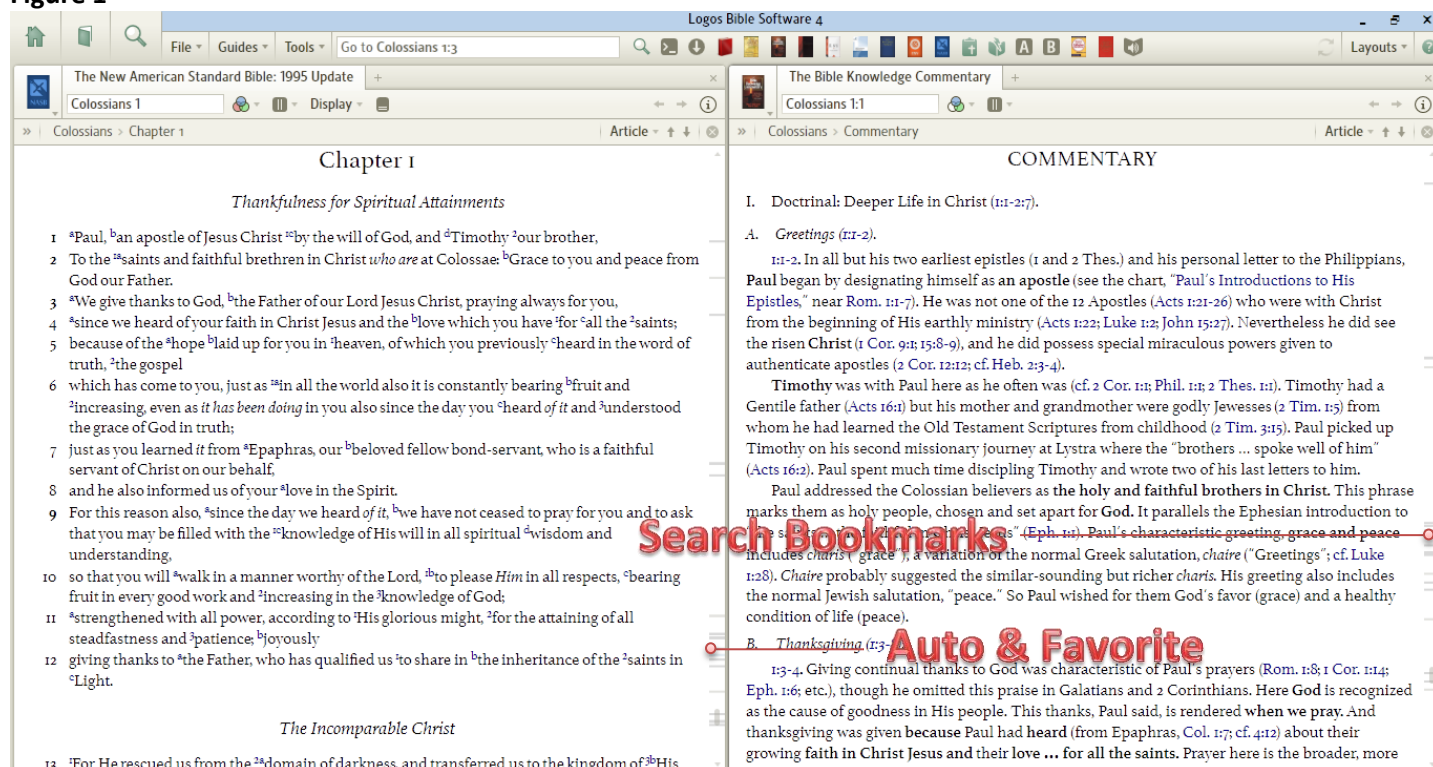
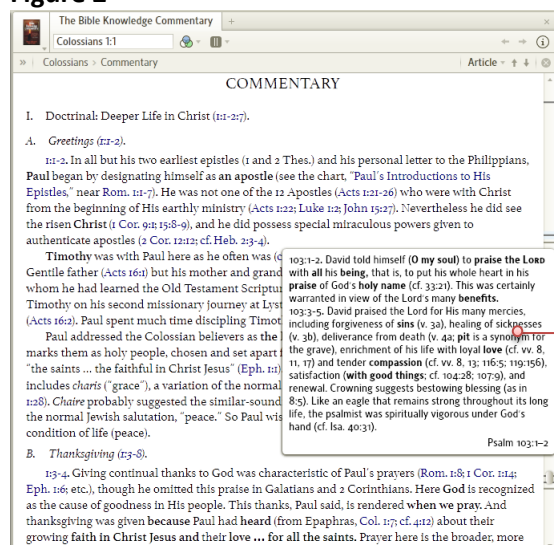


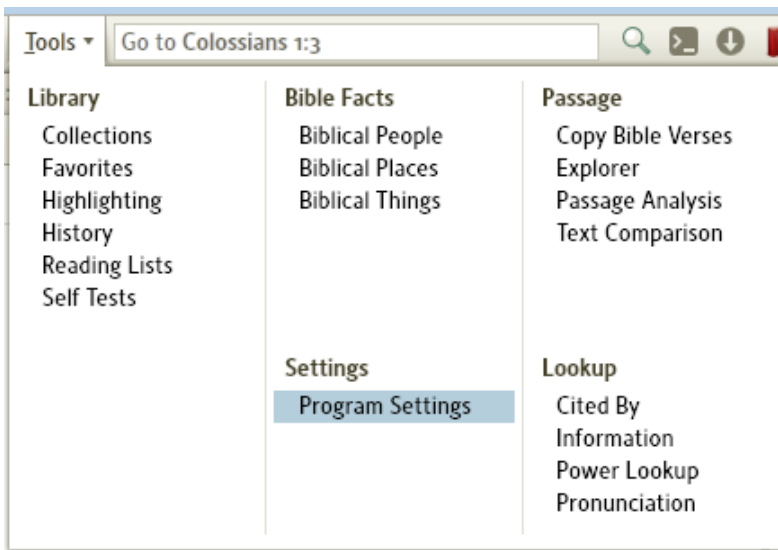
Figure 2



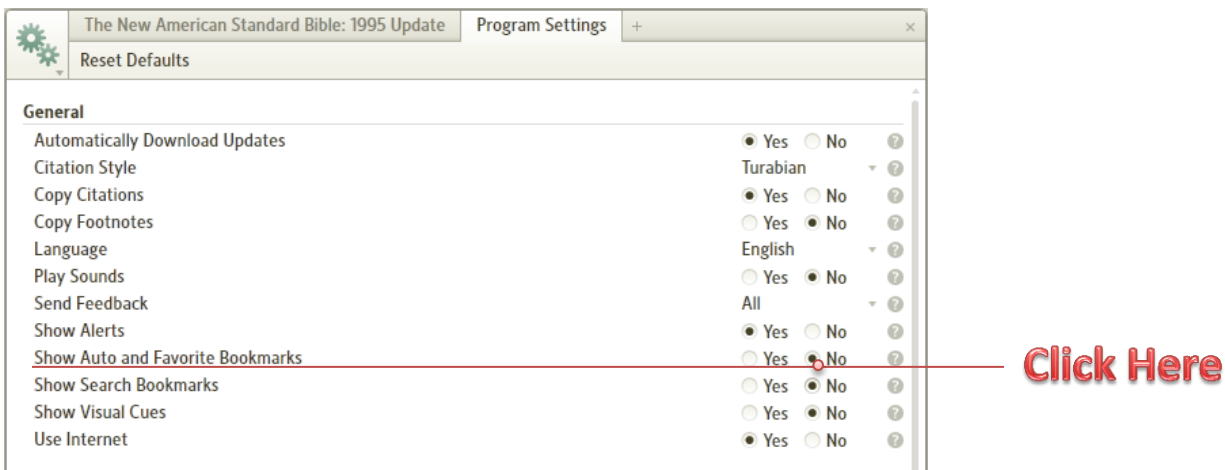
These lines can be a little distracting. So how do you turn them off?

HOW TO:

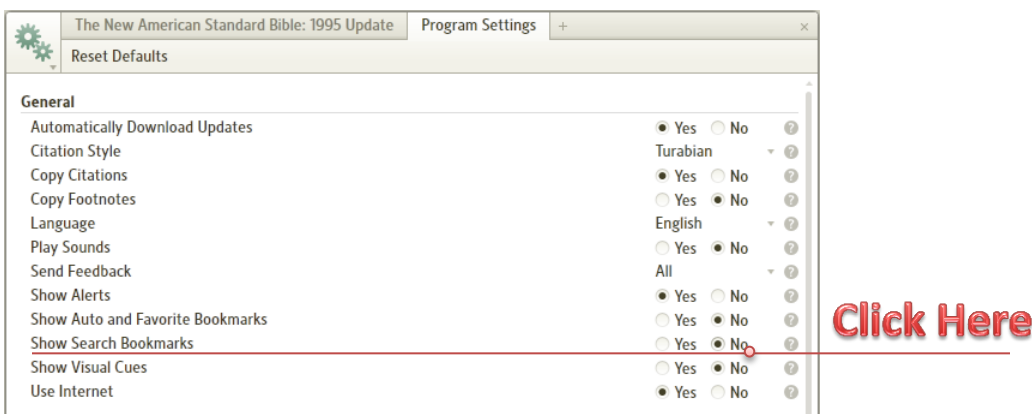
- 1 Go to the main menu, and choose **Tools > Program Settings**



- 2 Locate **Show Auto and Favorite Bookmarks** and click the circle labeled **No**



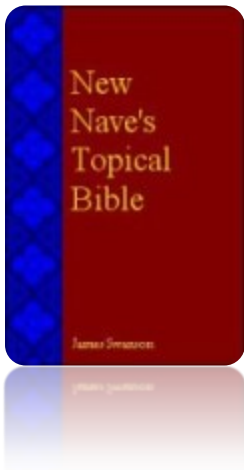
- 3 Locate **Show Search Bookmarks** and click the circle labeled **No**



Prayer in LOGOS 4

Biblical Cross References for Prayer Topic

As a new believer I used this book all the time, but as the years of study passed I used it less and less. However, I was reminded this week how helpful of a resource [New Nave's Topical Bible](#) still is for Bible study.



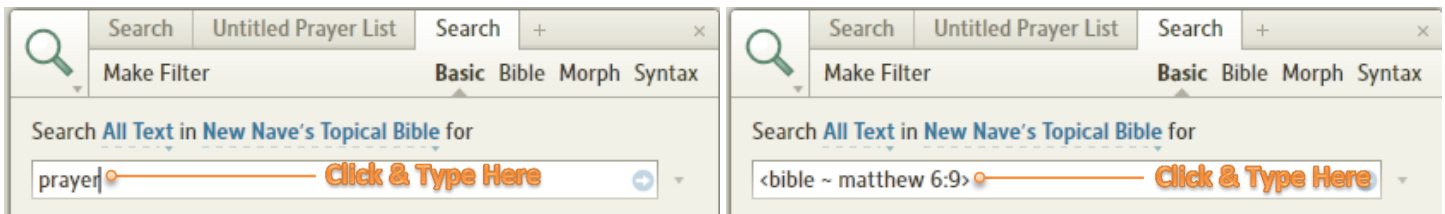
See the sample page below from the book. Notice the table of contents at the left. But more importantly, look at all the Biblical cross references! Look at all the individuals listed as well.

There are two quick ways to check this book and see if it is useful for your study.

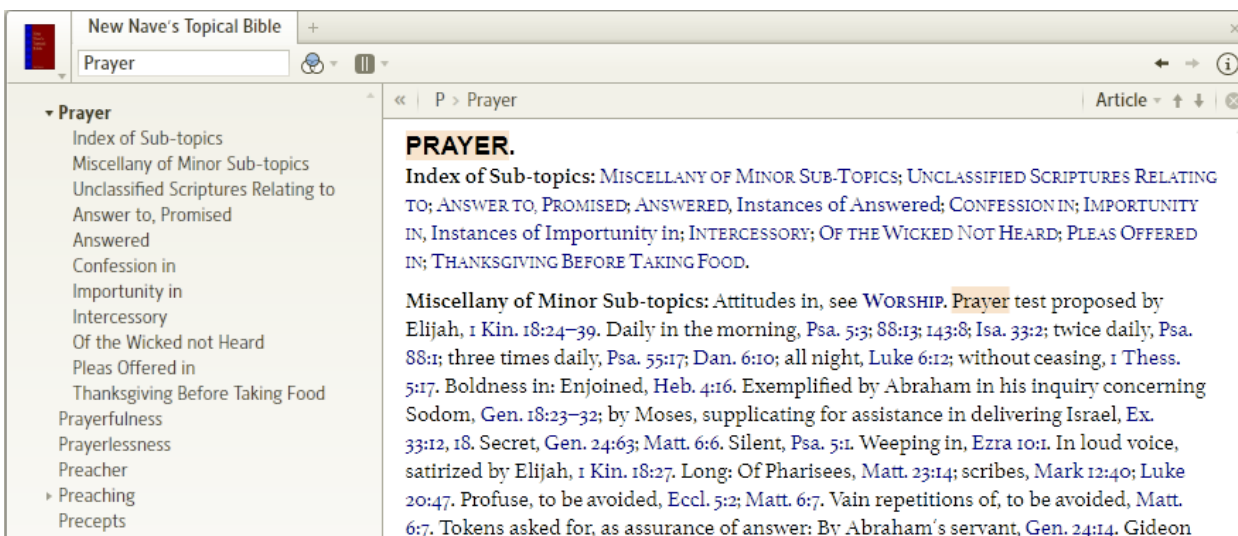
#1) Enter your topic in the topic box on the home page. If this book is part of the search results, click and read.



#2 Use the **Basic Search Engine** and type in a bible verse or a keyword and search specifically [New Nave's Topical Bible](#).



Note: <bible ~ matthew 6:9> is a special way to search for Bible verses. It will look to see if Matthew 6:9 is mentioned by itself and if Matthew 6:9 is mentioned within a verse range, i.e. Matthew 6:8-13



Historical/Theological Background

Where in the world? GPS for Bible Study!

If you are like me, you have come to rely more and more on your GPS to find your way around a strange town. When we moved to Chattanooga, TN our GPS made the transition so easy to find my work, a place of worship, and where to eat.

With the map feature in Logos, it's like having a GPS to help you find those unfamiliar Biblical locations.

HOW TO:

1 Tools > Biblical Places

Click to resize

Click for more information

Right click on the map to access this menu

Measure Distance

Location Name

Biblical Cross References & Other Names

Google link with modern map coordinates

Other Related maps

Map

Other Important map features & shortcuts:

- **Measuring Distance:** Hold the **Ctrl** key down (Win) or **Cmd** key down (Mac), then click on any location in the map, then drag your mouse to another location to **display the distance** between the two places.
- **Zoom In:** Ctl + **Zoom Out:** Ctrl – (note: scroll button works to zoom in/out)
- Guides > Passage Guide > Enter Passage > Press enter to find maps related to a passage

Outlining

Alliteration: al•lit•er•a•tion \ə-ˌli-tə-ˈrā-shən\ noun (Phonetics, Part 1)

The repetition of consonant sounds in two or more neighboring words or syllables

After you have created your outline, it may be necessary to refine it further. One popular change to an outline is to alliterate. Let me give you an example according to the definition above from [James Rosscup's Exposition on Prayer](#) (click to open if you have Logos 4 and this book). I exaggerated the size and colored the alliterated letter "S" in red so you can more easily see the alliteration.

- I. Principles of Prayer
 - a. Showcasing that is out of place ([Matthew 6:5](#))
 - b. Secrecy ([Matthew 6:6](#))
 - c. Simplicity ([Matthew 6:7](#))
 - d. Separateness ([Matthew 6:8a](#))
 - e. Sureness ([Matthew 6:8b](#))

This can be a tremendous aid to help your readers and listeners remember, recall and write down your outline :)

HOW TO:

❶ So how can you easily do this in Logos 4? First, select books that can help you find words.

There are two main books I use:

- [Webster's Dictionary](#) (Click this link if you have Logos 4 and this book)
- [Webster's Thesaurus](#) (Click this link if you have Logos 4 and this book)

❷ Determine which word and consonant you will be alliterating. Let's use a preliminary outline from Matthew 28:19 – the "Great Commission"

- I. Matthew 28:19-20
 - Make Disciples
 - Go
 - Baptize
 - Teach

Let's take the word "go" and change the word to Evangelize and let's alliterate with the letter "E". **Note:** We could have kept "Go" and alliterated on "G".

❸ The next step is the hardest, because we have to now find words that capture the idea behind "baptize" and "teach". Let's go to Webster's Thesaurus and look for other word ideas.

- ④ I opened the thesaurus to “baptize” and read all the entries. I see an entry for “call”.

EPB:IFFOCG Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Thesaurus

baptize

A Thesaurus of the English Language > B > baptize

baptize *verb*
1 to administer the rite of baptism <a child *baptized* in the Catholic Church>
synonyms asperse, christen, immerse, sprinkle
related words cleanse, purify, regenerate
2 [Look Here](#)
synonyms NAME 1, call, christen, denominate, designate, dub, entitle, style, term, title

- ⑤ So then I look up “call” in the thesaurus and look through all those entries.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary (Eleventh Edition) Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Thesaurus NASB95

call

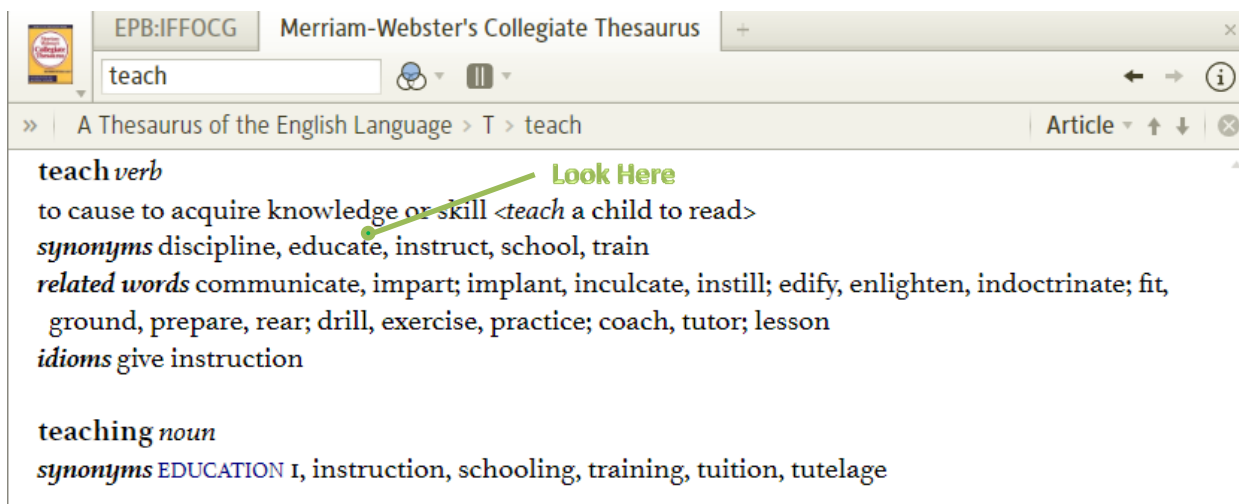
A Thesaurus of the English Language > C > call

call *verb*
1 to speak or utter in a loud distinct carrying voice <*call* for help>
synonyms cry, hallo, holler, hollo, shout, vociferate, yell; *compare* SHOUT 1
related words bawl, bellow, hoot, howl, roar, scream, screech, shriek, shrill, whoop, yowl
contrasted words murmur, whisper
2
synonyms DEMAND 1, challenge, claim, exact, postulate, require, requisition, solicit
3
synonyms SUMMON 2, call in, convene, summons
related words assemble, collect, gather, round up; bid, invite [Look Here](#)
4
synonyms CONVOKE, assemble, convene, summon
5
synonyms TELEPHONE, ||buzz, phone, ||ring (up)
6
synonyms NAME 1, baptize, christen, denominate, designate, dub, entitle, style, term, title
7
synonyms PREDICT 2, guess
8
synonyms ESTIMATE 3, approximate, judge, place, put, reckon
9
synonyms FORETELL, adumbrate, augur, forecast, portend, predict, presage, prognosticate, prophesy, vaticinate
10
synonyms VISIT 2, come by, come over, drop (in or by), look in, look up, pop (in), run in, see, stop (in or by)
call (for) *verb*
synonyms DEMAND 2, ask, crave, necessitate, require, take
call (to) *verb*
synonyms ADDRESS 7, accost, greet, hail, salute
call *noun*
1 the natural vocal sound of an animal and especially a bird <the clear *call* of a bellbird>
synonyms cry, note, song
related words cheep, chirp, peep, twitter, warble
2
synonyms ATTRACTION 1, allurement, appeal, attractiveness, draw, drawing power, lure, pull, seduction
3
synonyms OCCASION 3, cause, necessity, obligation
4
synonyms VISIT 1, visitation

⑥ Now with a little inspiratiion and meditation you will think of a word, in this case let's go with the Word "Enroll"

How did I come up with that word? Well, the words "assemble, collect, gather, round-up, bid, invite" caught my attention. In this exercise, we are not only looking for words in the thesaurus but I am also thinking of words I know. I told you this at times can be difficult. But let's do an easy one. (**Note:** See the "search section" below for an extra tip)

⑦ Next, we will repeat this process for "teach". So let's look at the entry in Webster's Thesaurus:



⑧ This one is a lot easier, because the word is given to us, "educate".

So our outline is refined:

II. Matthew 28:19-20

- Make Disciples
 - ~~Go~~ **E**vangelize
 - ~~Baptize~~ **E**nroll
 - ~~Teach~~ **E**ducate

Remember, use this in moderation and try to avoid wasting time in making this work. Let me encourage you that if you practice this, it does get a whole lot easier!

Word Study

Who will you obey? Finding all of God's Commands easily in the Bible

The mark of a disciple of Christ is seen in their fruit, in their allegiance to Christ and His Word. To follow Christ is to simply follow His commands. So finding, studying, and obeying His commands is key! In Logos 4, this can easily be done in a few steps. Let's learn to follow Christ!

HOW TO:

- ❶ Go to [Matthew 28:19](#) in your Bible and right click on the word **disciples**. I chose this word because it is a command.
- ❷ Next, choose from the menu at the right **Morph** and then choose from the menu at the left **morph search**.

Search this resource	Selection	disciples
Search all open resources	Reference	Matthew 28:19
Search entire library	Manuscript	μαθητεύσατε
Morph Search: VAAM2P	Lemma	μαθητεύω
Morph Search: μαθητεύω@VAAM2P	Morph	VAAM2P
	Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #3100
	Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 36.37
	Add a note to "Seeing is Believing - Mark 8:1-26"	
	Add a clipping to "Matthew 28:16-20 Passage G"	
	Show Information	

Click Here

③ Now the search engine opens, and automatically selects **Morph** and performs our search.

The screenshot shows the Logos Morph search interface. At the top, there's a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a plus sign. Below it, there are tabs for 'Graph results' and 'Make Filter'. The main search area has a dropdown menu set to 'Basic Bible Morph Syntax'. The search query is 'lemma:μᾱθητεύω@VAAM2P'. Below the search bar, it says '1 result in 1 verse (0.39 sec)'. There are tabs for 'Verses', 'Aligned', and 'Analysis'. The results show 'The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update' with 1 result. The verse is Mt 28:19, and the text is 'Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you.' The word 'make' is highlighted in orange.

④ To find all the commands of Jesus, we need to modify this search string as follows:

1. Remove the Greek word
2. Change the code following the @ to V??M (you can type this or only select **Verb** and **Imperative** from the list that may appear below).

Part of Speech	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number	Case	Gender
Adverb	Aorist	Active	Indicative	First Person	Dual	Accusative	Feminine
Conjunction	Future	Middle	Imperative	Second Person	Plural	Dative	Masculine
Article	Imperfect	Passive	Infinitive	Third Person	Singular	Genitive	Neuter
Interjection	Pluperfect	Either Middle or Passive	Optative			Nominative	
Adjective	Present		Participle			Vocative	
Noun	Perfect		Subjunctive				
Preposition	Future Perfect						
Pronoun							
Particle							
Verb							
Indeclinable							

3. Let's change which Bible books we will search. Let's search the Gospels (Matthew – John)

The screenshot shows the Logos Morph search interface. At the top, there's a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a plus sign. Below it, there are tabs for 'Graph results' and 'Make Filter'. The main search area has a dropdown menu set to 'Basic Bible Morph Syntax'. The search query is '@V??M'. An orange arrow points to the search bar with the text 'Click Here'. Below the search bar, it says '1 result in 1 verse (0.39 sec)'. There are tabs for 'Verses', 'Aligned', and 'Analysis'. The results show 'The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update' with 1 result. The verse is Mt 28:19, and the text is 'Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you.'

⑤ So above we can see our search string. Press enter or click the white arrow in the blue circle to begin the search.

[Click here](#) to run this search automatically in your Logos 4 program.

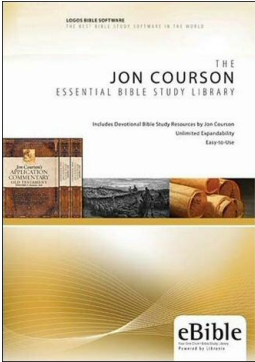
Note: Now we have a list of all commands in the text. Go ahead and read each context carefully.

Note: By the way, now that you know this technique, you can simply go directly to Morph Search and type the code.

Illustrations/ Applications

What are some resources focused primarily on Application?

There are two primary resources that organize application verse by verse. They are as follows.



<http://www.logos.com/product/8649/the-jon-courson-essential-bible-study-library>



<http://www.logos.com/product/5762/the-life-application-bible-commentary>

Note: You can learn more about these books and 130+ others on The Best Practices Training Videos.

ORDER TODAY!

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!



DISC 1: Overview of Logos 4



DISC 2: Best Practices How to Study, Teach & Preach

Two Training Products to get "More out of 4!"

Interactive and **traditional non-interactive training videos** Included on every training CD

Videos play on Mac too!

So why choose these two resources?

Let's take a closer look (see next page)

1 Jon Courson

The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update Search CACOTV2PM

Psalm 1:2

Psalms > Psalm 1 > Psalm 1:2 (b)

Psalm 1:2 (b)
...and in his law doth he meditate day and night.

The Hebrew word translated “meditate” speaks of what a cow does after grazing all day. As she chews the cud over and over again, she extracts every nutrient. In other words, to meditate means to ponder a section of the Word day and night, extracting more from its inexhaustible supply each time.

Psalm 1:3
And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.

If you choose to be one who delights in the Word, one who meditates on the Lord, there will be times in your life when you’ll be especially prolific and productive. But even in the seasons when you’re not bearing bushels of fruit, your leaf won’t wither.

This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success. [Joshua 1:8](#)

This promise was originally given to Joshua just as he was poised to assume command of the people of Israel. But its application continues today in the lives of any who take the time to sink the roots of their soul deeply into the rich soil of God’s Word.

Application

2 Life Application Commentary

Search Life Application Bible Commentary, Hebrews

Hebrews 6:16

Hebrews 5:11–6:20 > God’s Certain Promise Gives Hope / 6:13–20

PATIENTLY WAITING

Abraham’s twenty-five years of patience is stunning! God promised, and then delivered twenty-five years later. Yet God did eventually deliver. We, by contrast, have such a hard time waiting.

Sometimes patience requires an *hour*—waiting for an important phone call, a doctor’s report after surgery, a late plane to arrive.

Sometimes patience requires a *day*—tomorrow’s mail brings the letter, tomorrow’s recital determines the future, tomorrow’s interview changes your plans.

Sometimes patience requires a *year*—for a spouse in the military to complete overseas duty, for graduation, for retirement.

Sometimes patience looks toward *eternity*.

Patience means that time doesn’t dim our hope, because time has no bearing on the promise’s delivery. Waiting is OK. It’s easy time. Soon the promise comes.

3 Of course there are a multitude of resources that have application such as sermon based resources like [John Piper](#).

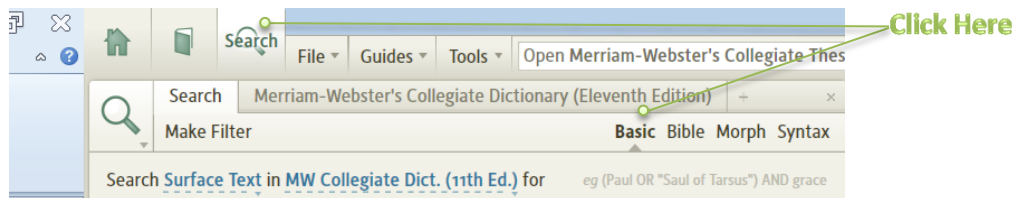
Searching

Searching by the Sounds of the Words, for beginners (Phonetics, Part 2)

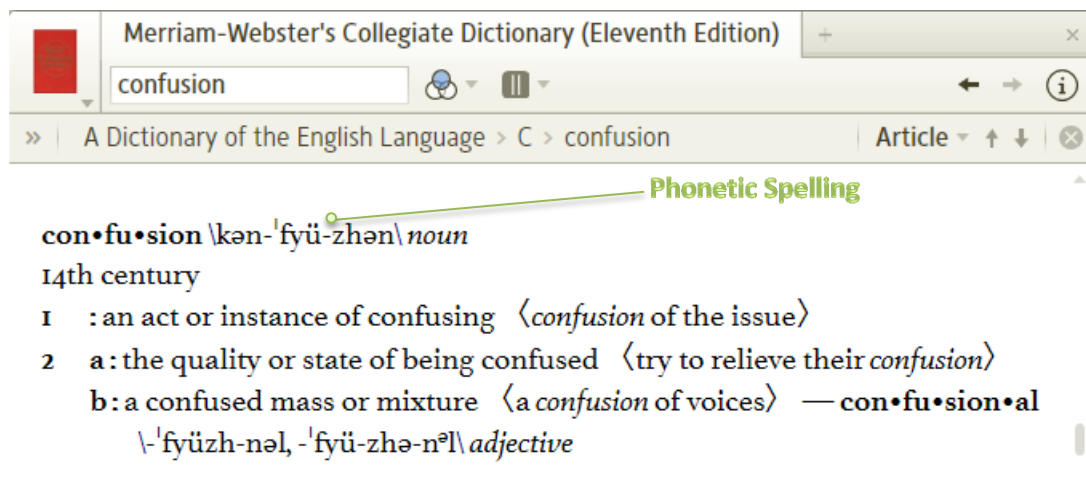
Picking up from the “Outlining Section” there is another strategy to find words for alliterating. Let’s use the **Basic Search Engine** with Webster’s phonetic spelling.

HOW TO:

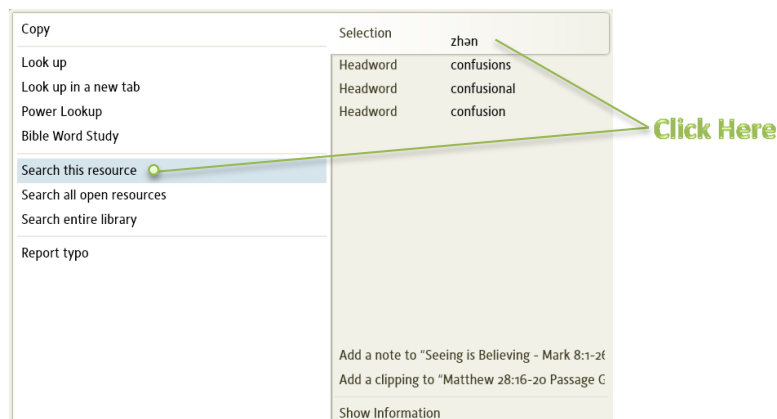
- 1 Choose from the main menu **Search > Basic Search**



- 2 Next, let’s open Webster’s Dictionary to the word “confusion”.



- 3 Next, right click on “zhən” and choose “selection”, then choose “Search this resource”



④ Examine the search results and notice you have found every word in the dictionary that uses “tion” sound

Note: looking at the results you may have noticed the different spellings: “sian”, “tion”, “cion”, “sion”, “ine”, etc... That is the power of searching “phonetically”!



Search Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.) for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

▼ LIBRARY RESULTS 175 results in 174 articles (0.06 sec)

Ranked | **By Title** | By Count

- Caucasian** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
ca•sian \kō-ˈkā-zhən, kā- also -ˈka-zhən\ *adjective* 1658 1 : of or relating to the Caucasus or its inhabitants 2 : of, constituting, or characteristic of a race of humankind native to Europe...
- plosion** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
sion \ˈplō-zhən\ *noun* 1899 : EXPLOSION 3
- Friesian** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
sian \ˈfrē-zhən\ *noun* [variant of *Frisian*] 1923 chiefly British : HOLSTEIN
- reclusion** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
clu•sion \ri-ˈklü-zhən\ *noun* 15th century : the state of being recluse
- disillusion** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
dis•il•lu•sion \dis-ə-ˈlū-zhən\ *noun* 1591 : the condition of being disenchanted
- prelusion** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
lu•sion \pri-ˈlū-zhən\ *noun* [Latin *praelusion-*, *praelusio*, from *praeludere*] 1597 : PRELUDE, INTRODUCTION
- Prigogine** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
go•gine \prə-ˈgō-zhən, - (,)gō-ˈzhēn\ Ilya 1917- Belgian (Russian-born) chemist
- coercion** *MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.)*
er•cion \-ˈər-zhən, -shən\ *noun* 15th century : the act, process, or power of coercing

“tion” Sound

Now you might be asking, hey John, how do I find all the words that start with a particular sound and end with a particular sound or some other combination? I am so glad you asked! But you will need to go to the Q & A Section for the answer.

If you have Logos 4, [click to see the Pronunciation guide](#) in Webster for other spellings.

Book Overview and Review

Study Bibles – What are they, which do you use and recommend?

I did a search at www.Logos.com and here are some of the most notable Study Bibles.

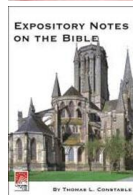
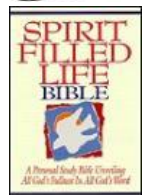
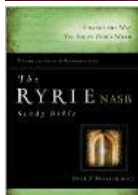
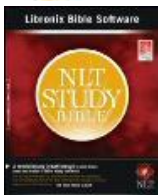
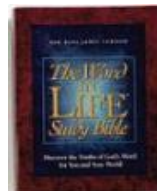
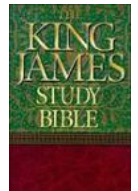
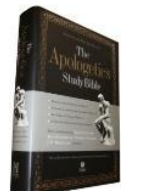
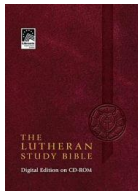
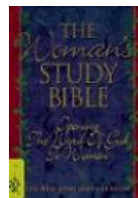
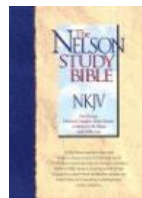
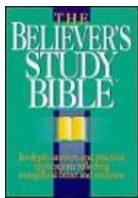
Note: you can click on each book image to learn more about each book at www.Logos.com.

❶ What is a Study Bible? **Answer:** Many of these resources have the following in common:

1. Concise Commentary of the whole Bible or majority of passages in scripture
2. Background information for each book
3. Outlines for each book
4. Application
5. Maps

❷ Why do you use these books? **Answer:** They provide quick answers and insights to guide your Bible reading.

❸ Which do you recommend? **Answer:** (1) MacArthur Study Bible (2) ESV Study Bible (3) Net Bible (4) Tom Constable Expository Notes on the Bible (5) Apologetics Study Bible



how to Study the Bible

The Study Funnel

An important concept in studying the Bible is to begin with the Bible. Before you ever open up a commentary, study Bible, or any other resources with the comments of men, it is crucial to commence, to begin with the Bible alone.

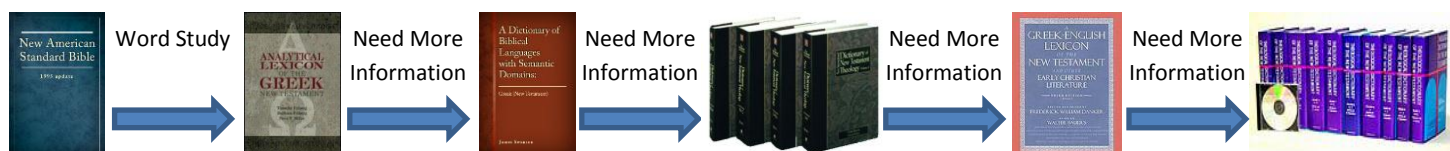
But as you study, questions will arise, and having books by men and women who have studied the scriptures and have articulated what the Holy Spirit has illuminated to them is most helpful for you and me to glean all that we can from the Bible.

Therefore, I recommend the “Study Funnel”. So what does this entail? There are two key concepts.

First, you want to study from as few key resources as possible.

Second, you want to move from books/resources that are concise to books/resources that are in-depth, detailed, thorough and academic.

Let me give you an example in the area of word studies.



Do you see that I only have a handful of key resources for doing Word Studies? Additionally, let me show you how these resources move from concise to in-depth in content. Here are some screen shots of excerpts from the dictionary entries for the word “World”:

Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New Testament DBL Greek New International Dictionary of New Testament Theology

κόςμος

Articles > E > Earth, Land, World > κόσμος Article

κόςμος G3180 (*kosmos*), order (in cl. Gk.), adornment, world; κοσμέω G3175 (*kosmeō*), arrange, put in order, adorn; κόσμιος G3177 (*kosmios*), respectable, honourable; κοσμικός G3176 (*kosmikos*), earthly, worldly.

CL 1. The noun *kosmos*, attested from Homer onwards, denoted originally building and construction (e.g. *Homer, Od.*, 8, 492; *Hdt.*, 3, 2). But more especially it denotes order, both generally (e.g. *Homer, Il.*, 2, 214 and often in the phrase *kata kosmon*, duly, in order) and in a specific sense (e.g. the seating position of the rowers, *Od.*, 13, 76 f.; battle array, *Il.*, 12, 225; later the regulation of life in human society, the constitution, *Plato, Leg.*, 8, 846d). It also often means ornament and adornment (esp. of women; e.g. *Hom. Il.*, 14, 187; *Hes., Works* 76; *Hdt.*, 5, 92).

In Gk. philosophy (see below, 2) *kosmos* is the basic term for the world-order, the world-system, the sum total of things preserved by this ordering, the world in the spatial sense, the cosmos, the universe, the earth, and also (in Koine Gk.) the inhabitants of the earth, humanity, the → οἰκουμένη.

The vb. *ōkosme*, corresponding with the basic meaning of *kosmos* as order, is used as a technical term, e.g. to marshal an army, to arrange battle formation (*Homer, Il.*, 2, 554; *Xen. Cyr.*, 2, 1, 26), and also generally to organize, put in order, and very frequently to adorn (e.g. *Hesiod, Works*, 72).

2. The cosmos-concept of Gk. philosophy may be seen against the background of the question: How is it possible that, with all the individual things conflicting with one another (heaven and earth; God, men and living beings), the world is not destroyed? The answer was given that they are held together by an all-embracing order (cf. *Anaximander, Frag.* 9). This world-order is designated by the word *kosmos* which also comes to denote the world in the spatial sense. According to Democritus, man is a microcosm (*Frag.* 34). This enables him to perceive the order of the world and praises its beauty (*Heracl., Frag.* 124) and the perfection of its spherical form and circular movement.

(a) Plato was the first to teach that the origin of the cosmos was due to a Demiurge (→ *Creation, art.* δημιουργός) who formed "the world in accordance with the idea of the perfect living being" (*TDNT* III 875; cf. *Tim.*, 28 ff.). For him the cosmos is an animated body, a rational being and thus a manifestation of God. The cosmos is not creature and not creation, but a copy.

(b) Aristotle's conception of the world, which prevailed in the West for almost 2000 years, is of a spherical earth, surrounded by various layers of heavenly spheres, which rests unmoved in the centre of a spherical

Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New Testament DBL Greek New International Dictionary of New Testament Theology BDAG

κόςμος

K > κόσμος Article

κόςμος, ου, ό (Hom.+)

1 that which serves to beautify through decoration, *adornment, adorning* (Hom.+; *Diod* S 20, 4, 5 τῶν γυναικῶν τὸν κόσμον; *OGI* 531, 13; *SIG* 850, 10; *IMaron* Isis 41; *PEleph* 1, 4; *PSI* 240, 12 γυναικείον κόσμον; *LXX*; *TestJud* 12:1; *JosAs* 2:6 al.; *Philo, Migr.* Abr. 97 γυναικῶν κ.; *Jos., Ant.* 1, 250; 15, 5; *Just., A* II, 11, 4f) of women's attire, etc. ό εξῶθεν ... κόσμος *external adorning* 1 Pt 3:3 (Vi. Hom. 4 of the inward adornment of a woman, beside σωφροσύνη; *Crates, Ep.* 9; *Pythag., Ep.* 11, 1; *Plut., Mor.* 141e; on the topic of external adornment cp. *SIG* 736, 15–26).

2 condition of orderliness, *orderly arrangement, order* (Hom. et al.; s. HDiller, Die vorphilosophische Gebrauch von κ. und κοσμεῖν; *BSnell Festschr.*, '56, 47–60) μετὰ κόσμου *in order* *Dg* 12:9 (text uncertain; s. μετακόσμιος).

3 the sum total of everything here and now, *the world, the (orderly) universe*, in philosophical usage (so, acc. to *Plut., Mor.* 886b, as early as Pythagoras; certainly *Heraclitus, Fgm.* 66; *Pla., Gorg.* 508a, *Phdr.* 246c; *Chrysipp., Fgm.* 527 v. Arnim κόσμος σύστημα ἐξ οὐρανοῦ καὶ γῆς καὶ τῶν ἐν τούτοις περιεχομένων φύσεων. Likew. *Posidonius* in *Diog. L.* 7, 138; *Ps.-Aristot., De Mundo* 2 p. 391b, 9ff; 2 and 4 *Macc*; *Wsd*; *EpArist* 254; *Philo, Aet. M.* 4; *Jos., Ant.* 1, 21; *Test12Patr*; *SibOr* 7, 123; *AssMos Fgm.* b *Denis* [=Tromp p. 272]; *Just., A* I, 20, 2 al.; *Ath.* 19, 2 al.; *Orig., C. Cels.* 4, 68, 14; *Did., Gen.* 36, 7; 137, 13.—The other philosoph. usage, in which κ. denotes the heaven in contrast to the earth, is prob. without mng. for our lit. [unless perh. *Phil* 2:15 κ.= 'sky'?]). ή άένανος τοῦ κ. σύστασις *the everlasting constitution of the universe* 1 Cl 60:1 (cp. *OGI* 56, 48 εἰς τὸν άένανον κ.). Sustained by four elements *Hv* 3, 13, 3. πρὸ τοῦ τὸν κ. εἶναι *before the world existed* *J* 17:5. ἀπὸ καταβολῆς [κόσμου] *from the beginning of the world* *Mt* 13:35; 25:34; *Lk* 11:50; *Hb* 4:3; 9:26; *Rv* 13:8; 17:8. Also ἀπ' ἀρχῆς κ. *Mt* 24:21 or ἀπὸ κτίσεως κ. *Ro* 1:20.—*B* 5:5 ἀπὸ καταβ. κ. evidently means *at the foundation of the world* (s. Windisch, *Hdb. ad loc.*). πρὸ καταβολῆς κ. *before the foundation of the world* *J* 17:24; *Eph* 1:4; 1 Pt 1:20 (on the uses w. καταβολή s. that word, 1). οὐδὲν εἶδωλον ἐν κ. *no idol has any real existence in the universe* (Twentieth Century NT) 1 Cor 8:4. Of the creation in its entirety 3:22. ό κόσμος ὅλος = πᾶσα ή κτίσις (*Sallust.* 21 p. 36, 13; *TestSol* 5:7; *TestJob* 33:4) *Hs* 9, 2, 1; 9, 14, 5. φωστῆρες ἐν κόσμῳ *stars in the universe* *Phil* 2:15 (s. above). Esp. of the universe as created by God (*Epict* 4, 7, 6 ό θεός πάντα πεποίηκεν, τὰ ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν κόσμον ὅλον; *Wsd* 9:9; 2 *Macc* 7:23 ό τοῦ κ. κτίστης; 4 *Macc* 5:25; *Just., A* I, 59, 1 al.; *Ath.* 8, 2 al.) ό ποιήσας τὸν κ. *who has made the world* *Ac* 17:24. ό κτίστης τοῦ σύμπαντος κ. 1 Cl 19:2; ό κτίσας τὸν κ. *Hv* 1, 3, 4; cp. *m* 12, 4, 2. ό τοῦ παντός κ. κυριεύων *B* 21:5. οὐδ' εἶναι τὸν κόσμον θεοῦ ἀλλὰ ἀγγέλων *AcPICor* 1:15. Christ is called παντός τοῦ κ. κύριος 5:5; and the κ. owes its origin to his agency *J* 1:10b. The world was created for the sake of the church *Hv* 2, 4, 1.—The universe, as the greatest space conceivable, is not able to

Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New Testament DBL Greek NIDNTT BDAG Theological Dictionary of the New Testament

κόσμος

κόλπος
κονιάω
κόπος, κοπιάω
κοπετός, κόπτω, ἀποκό...
κορβάν, κορβανῆς
κόσμεω, κόσμος, κός...
κόσμεω
κόσμος
A. Non-biblical Usage.
B. κόσμος in the LX...
C. κόσμος in the NT.
κόσμιος
κοσμικός
κοσμοκράτωρ
κράζω, ἀνακράζω, κραυ...
κράσπεδον
κράτος (θεοκρατία), κρ...
κραυγή, κραυγάζω
κρεμάννυμι (κρεμάω), κ...
κρίνω, κρίσις, κρίμα, κρι...
κρούω
κρύπτω, ἀποκρύπτω, κ...
κτίζω, κτίσις, κτίσμα, κτ...
κυβέρνησις
κύμβαλον
κυνάριον
κύριος, κυρία, κυριακός...
κυρώω, ἀκυρώω, προκυ...
κύων, κυνάριον
Λ
Μ

« K > κοσμέω, κόσμος, κόσμιος, κοσμικός » Article

V 3, p 867

κοσμέω, κόσμος, κόσμιος, κοσμικός

† κοσμέω.*

This verb was used in class. Gk. from the time of Hom. Its meanings derive from the basic sense of κόσμος, i.e., order or adornment. In the sense "to order" κοσμέω is a technical military term for the placing of a host or the ordering of combatants, Hom. Il., 2, 554; 3, 1; 12, 87; 14, 379; cf. Od., 9, 157 (of hunters); Xenoph. Cyrop., II, 1, 26. The related sense "to order" or "command" need not be considered in relation to biblical usage, but the general sense "to bring to order," "to regulate," is significant, e.g., τράπεζαν, Xenoph. Cyrop., VIII, 2, 6; Ditt. Syll.³, 1038, 11: δεῖπνον, Pind. Nem., 1, 22; ἔργα, Hes. Op., 306; στέφανον, Eur. Hipp., 73 f. κοσμέω is very common in the sense "to adorn," esp. of women, Hom. Hymn., 6, 11; Hes. Op., 72. Often the means of adornment is given, e.g., κοσμεῖν πανοπλίῃ, Hdt., IV, 180, in which case the sense may be weaker, namely, "to furnish with," e.g., τριπόδεσσι κοσμεῖν δόμον, Pind. Isthm., 1, 19. In the fig. sense κοσμεῖν means "to adorn" in expressions like λόγους κοσμεῖν, Eur. Med., 576; Plat. Ap., 17c. This sense may pass over into that of "to honour," e.g., when it is said of certain people that they adorn their country, e.g., Theogn., 947.

In the LXX κοσμεῖν occurs in the sense "to order" at Sir. 29:26:

As you can see, each dictionary progressively gives you more and more in-depth information. By moving from concise to in-depth, it becomes easier for you to work through new and unfamiliar material. The concise resources give you an introductory and elemental understanding, whereas the in-depth resources provide greater detail and introduce other historically related information and raise interpretative issues.

One more point, before we wrap up this section. When I first started studying the Bible, I did not know about this concept. I jumped into commentaries and other academic resources to soon. The result...I could not easily determine which commentaries were right and which were wrong. In other words, I had no anchor of truth, by which I could judge the new information. I needed a filter, I needed a funnel!

So remember, choose your resources wisely, and arrange them from concise to in-depth! Study in the Funnel!

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, Part 4

Three weeks ago we introduced the prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **Remember** the Glories of God, **Examine** Your Motives and Manner, **Face** Life through Scriptures, and this week we will explore “**L**” for **Love** God.

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

Do you love God? How do you show it? How would you prove it? Imagine if tomorrow you were placed on the witness stand for the entire world to see and you had to prove you loved God! What evidence would you call forth? What evidence would they call forth?

Look at the way you spend your thoughts, look at the issues you discuss, the way you spend your money and your time. Look at the way you pleasure or entertain yourself! This is in reality what you love.

I don't know if you have ever thought about what are the parts of a genuine loving relationship between you and God? Therefore, I have included some verses to help you love God. Keep in mind these verses are not exhaustive.

#4 Love God

A. Loving Truth

- a. Psalm 119:97
- b. Psalm 119:113
- c. Psalm 119:163

B. Loving Sacrificially

- a. Romans 5:1-8
- b. Romans 8:38-39

C. Failure to Love God

- a. Revelation 2:1-5

D. Test: Loving Others

- a. 1 John 3:17

E. Love toward the Body of Christ

- a. Galatians 5:13
- b. 2 Thessalonians 1:3
- c. Hebrews 13:1
- d. 1 Peter 1:22
- e. 1 John 3:16

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!



DISC 1: Overview of Logos 4



DISC 2: Best Practices How to Study, Teach & Preach

Two Training Products to get "More out of 4!"

Interactive and **traditional non-interactive training videos** Included on every training CD

Videos play on Mac too!

Note: For more on prayer, purchase my training CDs. See the ad above, or CTRL+Click on the image to learn more, or visit LearnLogos.com.

how to Preach

Preaching Outlines: The Expository Outline, Part 1/4

In the next few eNewsletters we will be exploring the different structures a sermon can use to communicate the text. If you are preaching through an epistle with a doctrinal emphasis then I recommend the Expository Outline.

Standard Expository Structure

- I. Introduction (Illustration, review)
- II. Proposition
- III. Overview Outline
- IV. Body
 - a. Point 1
 - i. Illustration or i. explanation
 - ii. Explanation ii. illustration
 - iii. Application iii. Application
 - iv. Transition iv. Transition
 - b. Point 2
 - c. Point 3
- V. Conclusion
 - a. Review the Outline
 - b. Review the proposition
 - c. Final Illustration and/or Final Application

Now an expository outline can simply review and unfold the text so that the audience is informed like a commentary, filling in details as you go. Another way is to “argue” your way through the text where you are proving your points with a final conclusion at the end. There can be theological emphasis as well as application emphasis as you journey through the Biblical text.

If you are looking for examples of this structure here are some written and audio examples:

[John MacArthur](#)

[Mark Dever](#)

[John Piper](#)

Q & A

Searching by Sounds, Advanced techniques: (Phonetics, Part 3)

Q: John, How do I search for two or more sounds? For example, let's say I am looking for words that begin with the "K" sound and end with the "tion" sound? Also, how do I search on other sound combinations, like the "K" sound in the middle?

A: This is a most excellent question. To do this we will have to use the "Collins Diction" instead of Webster's Dictionary. For the life of me, I could not get this search to work for multiple sounds with Webster's Dictionary.

Here is a [link](#) for Collins Dictionary to buy from Logos. This is a "**Fallahee Recommend eBook**".

HOW TO:

❶ Open the book from "My Library". Type "Collins" in the find box and click on the book "Collins English Dictionary"

Logos Bible Software 4

File Guides Tools Open Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Thesaurus

collins 10 View

Rank	Title
6	Christian Counseling: A Comprehensive Guide
10	Clergy Couples in Crisis: The Impact of Stress on Pastoral Marriages
1	Collins Cobuild Pronunciations
3	Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition
4	Collins Latin Dictionary and Grammar
2	Collins Thesaurus of the Bible
5	Daniel: A Commentary on the Book of Daniel
9	The Dead Sea Scrolls in Their Historical Context
7	Semeia 14: Apocalypse: The Morphology of a Genre
8	Semeia 36: Early Christian Apocalypticism: Genre Social Setting

Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition | [Short title](#)

HarperCollins

☆☆☆☆☆

[add tag](#)

Collins English Dictionary. 8th ed., Complete & unabridged ed. Glasgow: HarperCollins, 2006.

❷ Let's type "confusion" in the word reference box

Word Reference Box
(float your mouse on the line)

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary (Eleventh Edition) Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition

confusion

» C > confusion Article

confusion (kən'fju:ʒən) *n* 1 the act of confusing or the state of being confused 2 disorder; jumble 3 bewilderment; perplexity 4 lack of clarity; indistinctness 5 embarrassment; abashment >

con'fusal *adj*

③ Right click on the phonetic spelling (kən'fju:ʒən) and choose “Search this resource”

Copy	Selection	kən'fju:ʒən
Look up	Headword	confusion
Look up in a new tab	Headword	confusional
Power Lookup	Headword	confusions
Bible Word Study		
Search this resource		
Search all open resources		
Search entire library		
Report typo		
	Add a note to “Seeing is Believing - Mark 8:1-26	
	Add a clipping to “Matthew 28:16-20 Passage C	
	Show Information	

④ Now your results should only be your word. However, if the word you chose is part of another word you would get more than one result. Next, we want to delete the “phonetic” spelling we won’t search on. So in this example, let’s delete everything but “ʒən”. See image below.

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

⑤ Now let’s look for any word that begins with the “k” sound and end in the “tion” sound. To do this we need add the “k” phonetic spelling. Even though our word “confusion” begins with “c”, it’s phonetic spelling is “K”.

Note: if you don’t know the phonetic spelling, just look up a word in the dictionary with that particular sound and examine the phonetic spelling.

⑥ So let’s type in the search box the following: k*ʒən and press enter or the white arrow in the blue circle. See below or “[click here](#)” to have me run the search in your Logos 4 program. (you need the Collins English Dictionary)

Note: The * is called a wild card and tell the Logos search engine to find any word with 0 or more characters between the “K” sound and the “tion” sound.

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

⑦ Let's examine the search results. Wow! We got back 14 results! This kind of search will really help you find "alliterations".

Search Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

▼ LIBRARY RESULTS 14 results in 14 articles (0.84 sec)

Ranked | By Title | By Count

concision *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kən'ʃɪʒən) *n* the quality of being concise; brevity; terseness

contusion *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kən'tju:ʒən) *n* an injury in which the skin is not broken; bruise > con'tusioned *adj*

curmudgeon *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kɜ:'mʌdʒən) *n* a surly or miserly person [c16: of unknown origin] > cur'mudgeonly *adj*

surgeon *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kɜ:'rʒ:ʒən) *n* an archaic word for surgeon [c13: from Old French *chirurgien*] > chi'rurgery *n*

carcinogen *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kɑ:'sɪnədʒən 'kɑ:sɪnə,dʒən) *n* *pathol* any substance that produces cancer [c20: from Greek *karkinos* CANCER + -GEN] > ,carcino'genic *adj* > ,carcinogen'icity *n*

corrosion *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kə'reɪʒən) *n* erosion of a rock surface by rock fragments transported over it by water, wind, or ice. Compare abrasion (sense 3), attrition (sense 4) > corrosive (kə'reɪsɪv) *adj*

confusion *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kən'fju:ʒən) *n* 1 the act of confusing or the state of being confused 2 disorder; jumble 3 bewilderment; perplexity 4 lack of clarity; indistinctness 5 embarrassment; abashment...

calyptrogen *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kə'lɪptɹədʒən) *n* a layer of rapidly dividing cells at the tip of a plant root, from which the root cap is formed. It occurs in grasses and many other plants [c19: from CALYPTRA + -GEN]

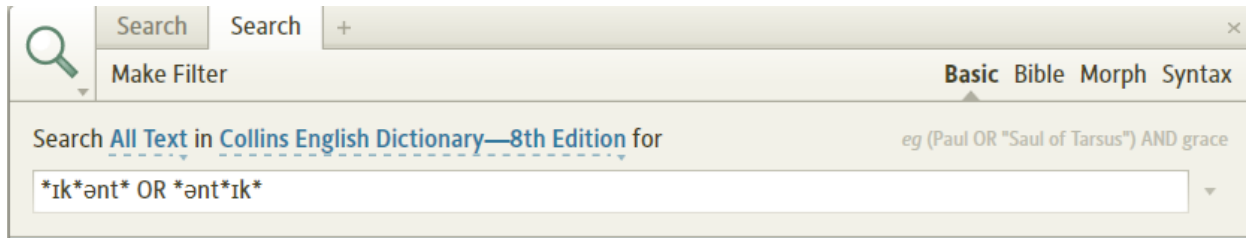
collusion *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kə'lu:ʒən) *n* 1 secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose; connivance; conspiracy 2 a secret agreement between opponents at law in order to obtain a judicial decision for some wrongful or...

corrosion *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kə'rəʊʒən) *n* 1 a process in which a solid, esp a metal, is eaten away and changed by a chemical action, as in the oxidation of iron in the presence of water by an electrolytic process 2...

collision *Collins English Dictionary—8th Edition*
 kə'lɪʒən) *n* 1 a violent impact of moving objects; crash 2 the conflict of opposed ideas, wishes, attitudes, etc a collision of interests 3 *physics* an event in which two or more bodies or

③ As you can imagine, the combinations of sounds you can search on are limited only by your imagination and the English language.

Note: This can make rhyming real easy! Here is a result of a [crazy search](#): words that rhyme with “ic” and “ent” sound from “predicament”



aliquant, anticoagulant, anticonvulsant, applicant, asphyxiant, communicant, consequent, consequently, desiccant, excipient, excitement, expectant, expectorant, expedient, expellant, experiment, exponent, extinguishant, extravagant, fabricant, inconsequential, indicant, inexpedient, insignificant, intoxicant, liquefacient, lubricant, medicament, mendicant, microenvironment, microfilament, micronutrient, micropayment, obsequent, predicant, significant, subsequence, supplicant, sycophant, toxicant, urticate, vacant, vesicant

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter!
tips@learnlogos.com

Welcome! More than a Manual...

This issue includes 3 times more content for each section than previous eNewsletters! If you were to try each item once per day, you have 36 days of content! So let's get ready to **LearnLogos**!

Note: You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about all available training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks! And Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO LearnLogos.com

RECENT NEWS

#1 More Webinars Released! ~~Only \$9.99~~ **\$4.99** for each download.

- [Click for Details](#)
 - Inductive Bible Study for Logos 4 – 6 Webinars Available
 - Studying the Bible with Logos 4 – 5 Webinars Available
 - Preparing Sermons with Logos 4 – 5 Webinars Available

Note: Most webinars are 1 ½ hours in length! Amazing value! [Click here to buy now.](#)

#2 Training CDs – You can **now download** this training **immediately!**

[50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) Only \$39.99

#3 Upcoming Live Webinars

NOTE: SCHEDULE CHANGE – [See New Schedule](#)

- Mon, April 18th, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4, **Session 6**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Performing Effective Word Studies, Part 2, Q&A
- Mon, April 25, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, **Session 6**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Performing Effective Word Studies, Part 2, Q&A
- Mon, May 2, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, **Session 7**
 - [Click to Signup](#): Find cross references/Checking with Commentaries, Q &A

➤ Get **THREE** CDs for the **BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

50% Off
Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

Alert: FREE BOOK

FREE BOOK PREVIEW

If you have Logos for your iPad, iPhone, or iPod Touch than you can get free book views. You can view the entire book for a limited time.

Check it out: <http://www.freebookpreview.com/>

The Abridged Brown-Driver-Briggs Hebrew-English Lexicon of the Old Testament

<http://www.logos.com/product/677/the-abridged-brown-driver-briggs-hebrew-english-lexicon-of-the-old-testament>

Book of Common Prayer (1979) Sunday Lectionary

<http://www.logos.com/product/8647/book-of-common-prayer-1979-sunday-lectionary>

Book of Common Prayer (1979) Daily Office Lectionary

<http://www.logos.com/product/8648/book-of-common-prayer-1979-daily-office-lectionary>

50% Off

Interactive Training

100+ Videos
10+ Hours of Training
Free Updates
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

Distant Education Class

Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)

Learn at Your Pace

BUY NOW

Click One, Click Both!

Optimizing LOGOS 4

SHORTCUTS

Shortcuts are a great way to save time and get around more quickly in the Logos program. I recommend **printing this page out** and use this as a reference sheet.

	PC	MAC
Opens Help	F1	Shift + Command + /
Cut	Ctrl + X	Command + X
Copy	Ctrl + C	Command + C
Paste	Ctrl + V	Command + V
Print	Ctrl + P	Command + P
Undo	Ctrl + Z	Command + Z
Quick Text Compare	F7	F7 or FN+F7
Quit Logos	Ctrl + Q	Command + Q
Open the Find Search Box	Ctrl + F	Command + F
Show Table of Contents	Ctrl + Shift + C	Shift + Command + C
Show Locator Bar	Ctrl + Shift + L	Shift + Command + L
Open Search Window	Ctrl + Shift + S	Shift + Command + S
Open Home Page (on/off)	Alt + Home	Shift + Command + H

Advanced Shortcuts

	PC	MAC
Add Current Location to Favorites	Ctrl + D	Command + D
Set Book Mark #1 (Change #)	Ctrl + Shift + 1	Option + Shift + Command + 1
Apply Highlight (select text first)	Ctrl + K	Command + K
Remove Highlight (select text first)	Ctrl + Shift + K	Command + Shift + K
Go to Bible Reference Box	Ctrl + G	Command + G
Open Copy Verses Window	Ctrl + Alt + B	Option + Command + B
Close all Panels	Ctrl + W	Option + Command + W
Forward & Back	Alt + Left Arrow Right Arrow	Command + [Command +]

Unique Shortcuts

	PC	MAC
Show Library	Ctrl + L	Command + L
Read Text Aloud (Start/Stop)	Ctrl + R	Command + R
Draw on Screen	F8	<i>NOT AVAILABLE</i>
Reading View (on/off)	F11	F11 or FN+F11
Show History	Ctrl + H	Command + H
Create Reading Columns	Ctrl + Shift + P	Command + Shift + P
Open Interlinear Bottom Window	Ctrl + Shift + R	Command + Shift + R

Note: Normally (PC's Alt = MAC's Option, PC's Ctrl = MAC's Command)

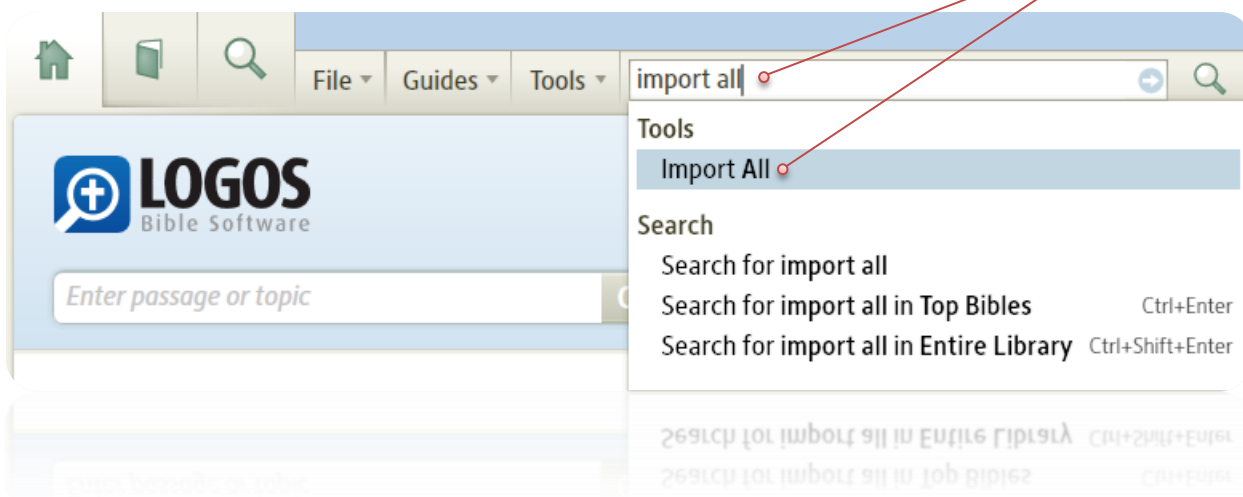
Prayer in LOGOS 4

STILL RUNNING LOGOS 3? LEARN HOW TO IMPORT YOUR PRAYERS AND MORE!

HOW TO:

- 1 Click inside the “command box”
- 2 Type the following: import all
- 3 Press the enter key or select “import all” from the drop down menu

Click Here



Note: You have to have Logos 3 on your computer. This will import prayer lists, notes, highlighting, and favorites as well.

Additional Commands: *import delete all* - deletes imported document from Logos 4

Prayer in LOGOS 4

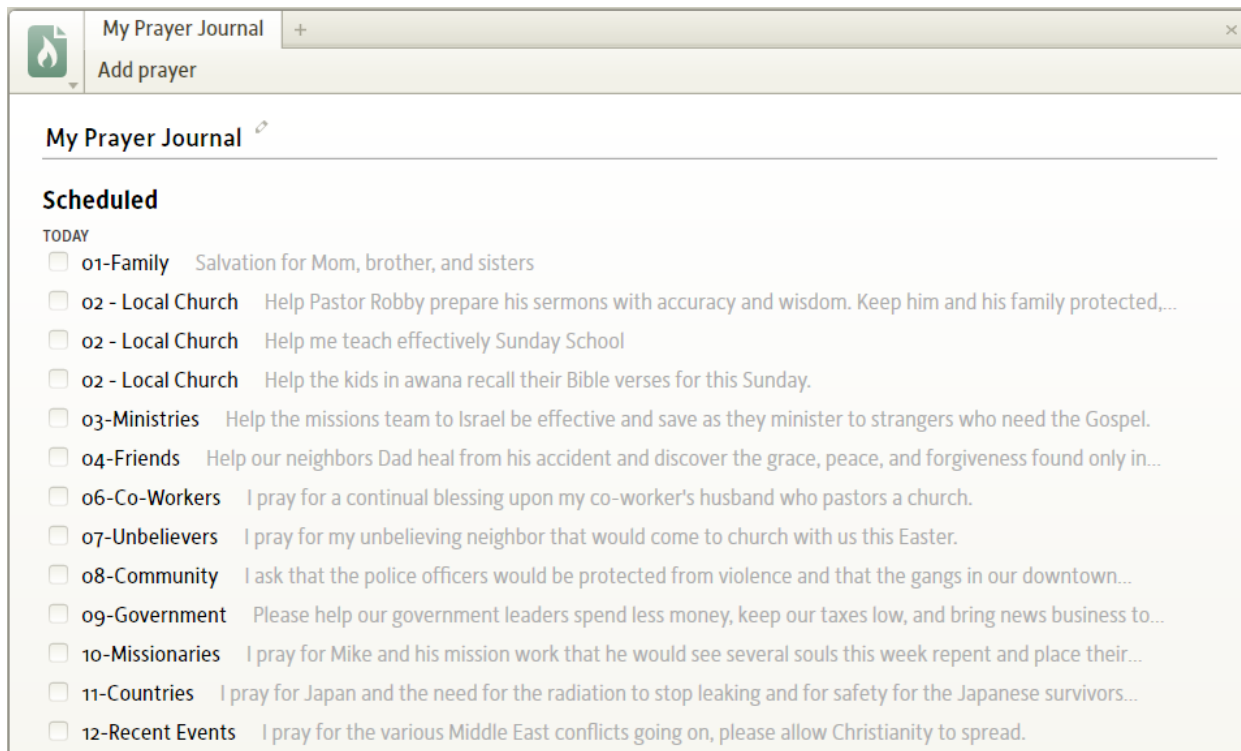
ARE YOU RESPONSIBLE FOR THE “PRAYER LIST”?
PRINT OR EMAIL TO SAVE TIME!

If you are part of a small Bible study group, Sunday school class, prayer chain, or ministry and are responsible to keep everyone up to date with prayer requests and praises, then utilizing Logos 4 prayer feature is a must. Let's learn how to keep everyone up to date, the easy way!

Let's presume you read the earlier newsletters or have watched my training videos to learn how to create a prayer list and have entered prayers.

Let's organize those prayers and get them ready to print or export. I have a sample prayer list below.

Now this particular list is my personal prayer journal. You could create one just for your small Bible study group.



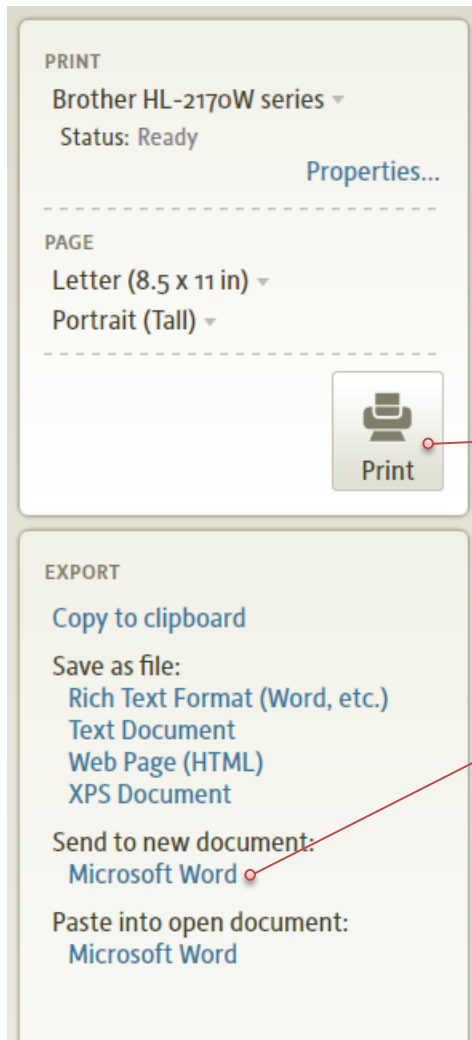
HOW TO:

- ❶ Press Ctrl + P (PC) or Command + P (Mac)

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

② At the right, choose your preferred options

Note: You can print it out or you can choose to “copy to clipboard” or even save it to a document and email that as well.



Click Here

Prayer in LOGOS 4

WHAT ARE ALL THE HEBREW /GREEK WORDS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENGLISH WORD “PRAY”?

To thoroughly study prayer, it is important to know that there are several different words in the original language that illustrate different aspects of prayer. Years ago this task would have taken a lot of time to find the information and a lot of money to purchase the right kinds of books. But with Logos 4 and the Bible Word study report you can do this quickly and easily. Let's learn how!

❶ Open your favorite Bible to a passage that mentions prayer. For this example I will use the familiar passage on the Disciple's Prayer [Matthew 6:9](#) from the ESV translation.

❷ Right mouse click on the word “pray”

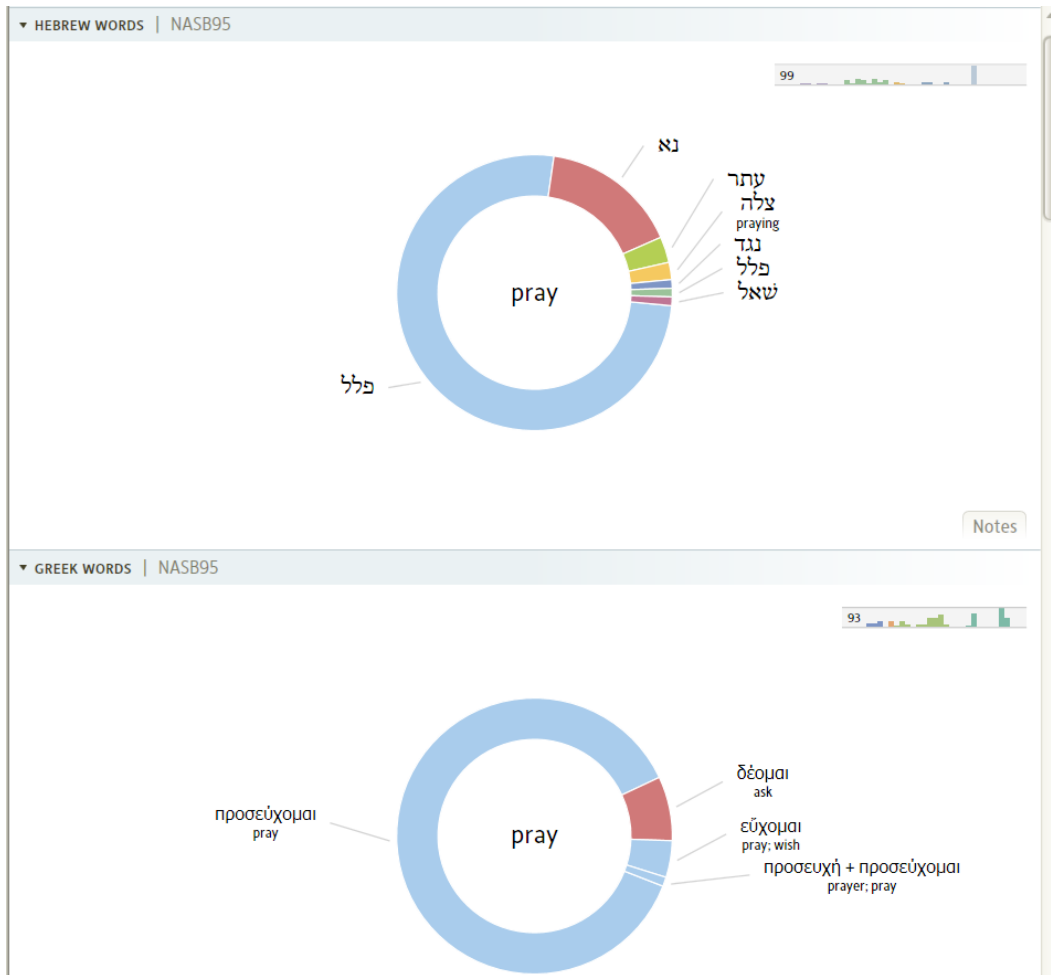
❸ Choose from the menu at the *right* “**Selection** **Pray**”

Note: By choosing the English word, Logos will discover all the related Hebrew & Greek Words associated with the English word “Prayer”

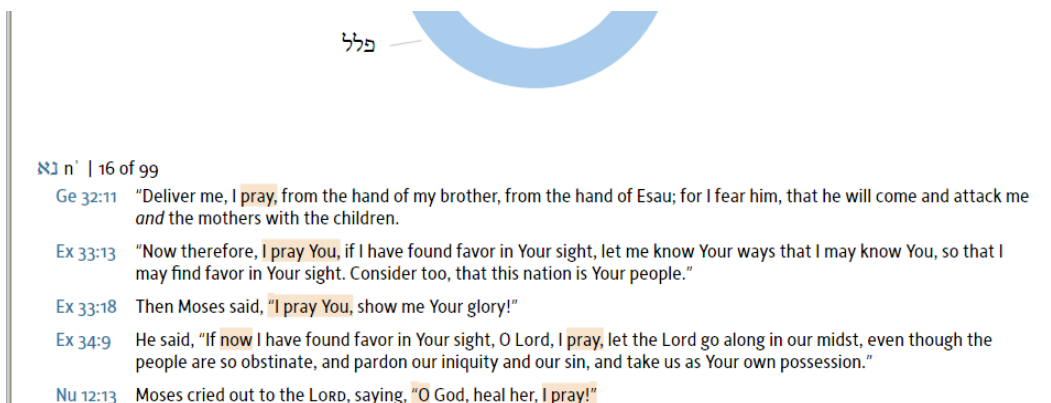
❹ Choose from the menu at the *left* “**Bible Word Study**”

Selection	Pray
Reference	Matthew 6:9
Manuscript	προσεύχεσθε
Lemma	προσεύχομαι
Morph	VPUM2P
Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #4336
Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 33.178
Add a note to "Centrality of the Gospel in the C	
Add a clipping to "Matthew 28:16-20 Passage G	
Show Information	

6 Expand the sections labeled “Hebrew Words” and “Greek Words”



7 Now you can click on the English word “pray” in the center and Logos will generate a comprehensive list of verses that mention prayer.



8 You can also click on the other Hebrew or Greek words to generate a smaller list of verses.

Note: Notice how the “piece of the pie” expands out.

▼ GREEK WORDS | NASB95
93

δέομαι deomai | 7 of 93

Lk 21:36 “But keep on the alert at all times, **praying** that you may have strength to escape all these things that are about to take place, and to stand before the Son of Man.”

Lk 22:32 but I have **prayed** for you, that your faith may not fail; and you, when once you have turned again, strengthen your brothers.”

Ac 4:31 And when they had **prayed**, the place where they had gathered together was shaken, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and *began* to speak the word of God with boldness.

Ac 8:22 “Therefore repent of this wickedness of yours, and **pray** the Lord that, if possible, the intention of your heart may be forgiven you.

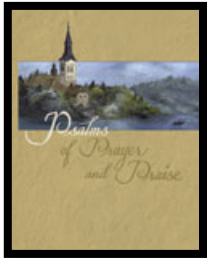
Ac 8:24 But Simon answered and said, “**Pray** to the Lord for me yourselves, so that nothing of what you have said may come upon me.”

Ac 10:2 a devout man and one who feared God with all his household, and gave many alms to the *Jewish* people and **prayed** to God continually.

1 Th 3:10 as we night and day keep **praying** most earnestly that we may see your face, and may complete what is lacking in your faith?

Prayer in LOGOS 4

BOOK REVIEW: BIBLE STUDY



Price: \$ 53.99

[Part of the
Explorer's Bible
Study: Adult
Curriculum](#)
(14 courses)
\$ 329

Explorer's Bible Study on Psalms of Prayer and Praise by [Burrus, Deborah](#) is a 30 Lesson, Comprehensive Inductive Study, guiding you through all 150 Psalms. 113 Pages, 5 Days of work per lesson.

This is a helpful resource to introduce you to the Psalms with the added benefit of helping you pray and praise.

Introduction

Lesson 1	Book 1 – The Genesis Section (Psalms 1–41)
Lesson 2	Psalms 7–12
Lesson 3	Psalms 13–18
Lesson 4	Psalms 19–22
Lesson 5	Psalms 23–27
Lesson 6	Psalms 28–33
Lesson 7	Psalms 34–37
Lesson 8	Psalms 38–41
Lesson 9	Book 2 – The Exodus Section (Psalms 42–72)
Lesson 10	Psalms 48–51
Lesson 11	Psalms 52–55
Lesson 12	Psalms 56–59
Lesson 13	Psalms 60–63
Lesson 14	Psalms 64–68
Lesson 15	Psalms 69–72
Lesson 16	Book 3 – The Leviticus Section (Psalms 73–89)
Lesson 17	Psalms 78–80
Lesson 18	Psalms 81–86
Lesson 19	Psalms 87–89
Lesson 20	Book 4 – The Numbers Section (Psalms 90–106) Psalms 90–95
Lesson 21	Psalms
Lesson 22	Psalms 102–106
Lesson 23	Book 5 – The Deuteronomy Section (Psalms 107–150) Psalms 107–110
Lesson 24	Psalms 111–118
Lesson 25	Psalms 119:1–64
Lesson 26	Psalms 119:65–176
Lesson 27	Psalms 120–134
Lesson 28	Psalms 135–139
Lesson 29	Psalms 140–150
Lesson 30	Miscellaneous

SAMPLE PAGE

Lesson 11, Day 1 Only



PSALMS OF PRAYER AND PRAISE LESSON 11

Daily Bible Study Questions

Study Procedure Read the Scripture references before answering questions. Unless otherwise instructed, use the Bible only in answering questions. Some questions may be more difficult than others but try to answer as many as you can. Pray for God's wisdom and understanding as you study and don't be discouraged if some answers are not obvious at first. Do not read study notes for this lesson until AFTER you have completed your questions.

Review: What from last week's lesson helps you ask God for forgiveness and allows you to forgive others?

FIRST DAY: Psalm 52; 1 Samuel 21:1-9 and 22:6-23

Note: Psalm 52 is believed to be connected with the historical events of 1 Samuel 21-22. David was fleeing for his life from King Saul.

1. What did you learn from 1 Samuel references:
 - (a) About Doeg?
 - (b) About Saul?
 - (c) About Ahimelech?
 - (d) About David?
2. (a) What is the mischief man devises? (verses 1-4)
 - (b) What is God's four-fold judgment? (verse 5)
3. What does a righteous person say:
 - (a) About the boastful wicked person?
 - (b) About himself?

Historical/Theological Background

THIS, THAT, AND OTHER BIBLICAL THINGS!

When performing a background study it is so crucial not to fail to observe the smallest of facts.

One way to prevent this is to utilize the *Passage Guide*, specifically the section titled, *Biblical Things*.

Let's take a look at [Mark 11:12-14](#) in the passage guide.


Note: If you click the verse link above, it will start the passage guide report.

Now, the report shows us the fig tree. Let's learn historical information about the fig tree.


❶ Click on the word **Fig Tree**

▼ BIBLICAL THINGS [Click Here](#)


fig tree • Mk 11:13, Ge 3:7, Nu 13:23, 20:5, Dt 8:8, Jdg 9:10-11, 1 Ki 4:25, 2 Ki 18:31, 20:7, Ne 13:15 ...



leaf • Mk 11:13, Ge 3:7, 8:11, Le 26:36, Ne 8:15, Job 13:25, Ps 1:3, Pr 11:28, Is 1:30, 34:4 ...



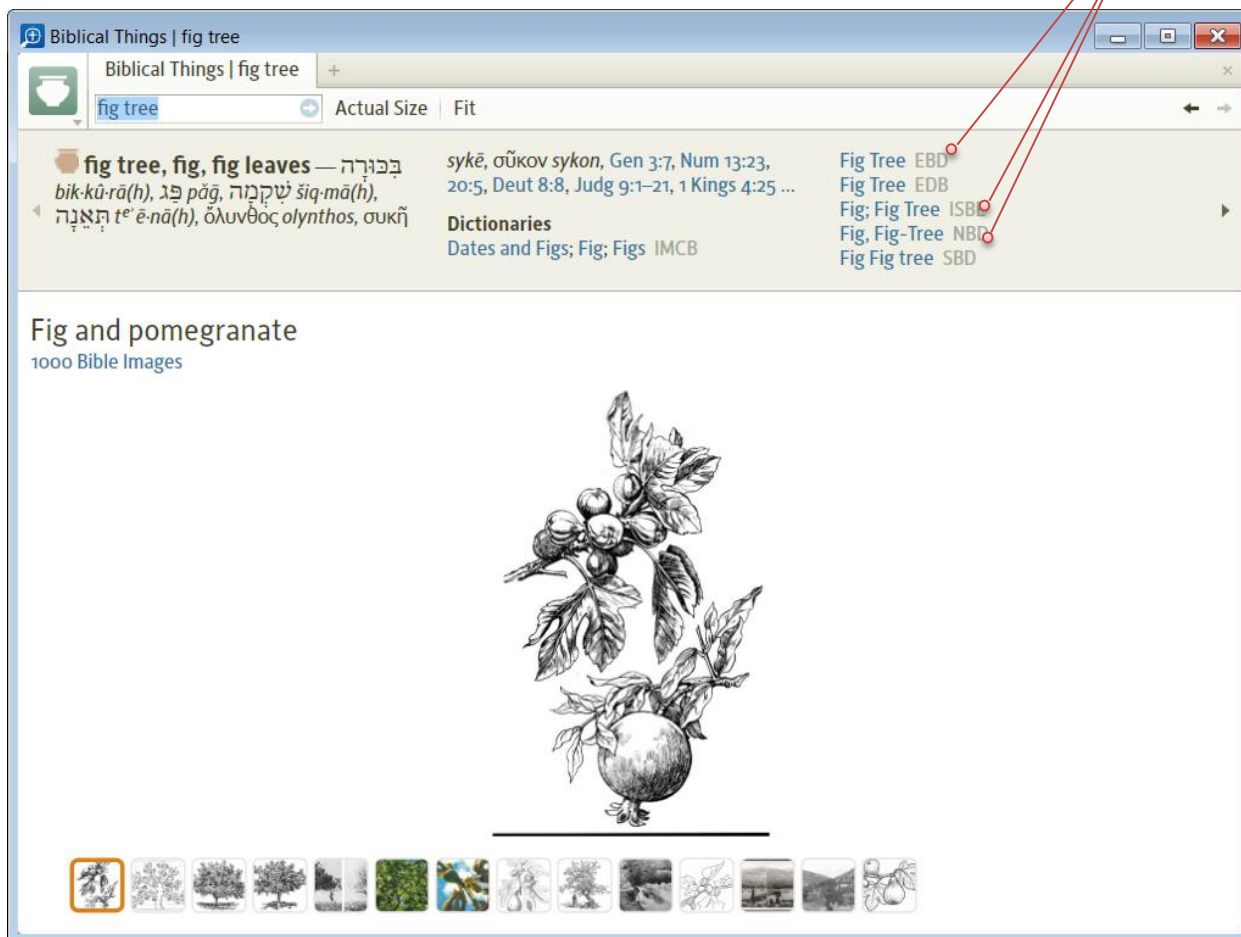
fruit • Mk 11:14, Ge 1:11-12, 29, 3:2-3, 6, 4:3, 30:2, Ex 10:15, Le 19:23-25, 23:40 ...



❷ Let's click on a dictionary link to learn about fig trees.

Note: Mark 11:12-14 took place shortly before the Passover in the month of April.

Click Here



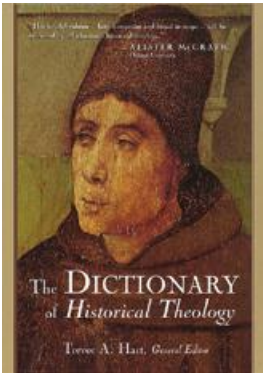
❸ Read through your dictionary and look for information about the month of March. You should observe that during this time a fig tree should be producing leaves. But if you look more closely, you will learn that “new leaf buds” or “tiny figs” are produced by the fig tree at this time. These are the size of a cherry and can be eaten. Then in April, leaves are produced. With this background information, we can understand why Jesus expected figs, because the leaves follow the fruit. What an amazing illustration for the disciples considering the previous context of the triumphant entry of the palm leaves. There were leaves but no fruit!

Historical Background Principle: Keep in mind the time of the event. Additionally, study to understand any object that may be mentioned in the text.

**Historical/Theological
Background**

**HOW DID WE GET HERE? LEARNING ABOUT THOSE WHO GOT BIBLE
DOCTRINES RIGHT AND WRONG!**

Believe it or not, it can be important to know how teachers in the past have interpreted the scriptures. Many of the theological debates we have today have happened before. Additionally, and in many cases, the older arguments are more thorough and articulate than those being used presently. This can help you understand the foundations, implications and frankly, the arguments better by reviewing resources like these.



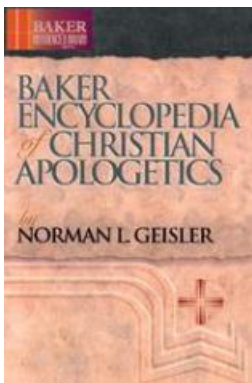
Title: The Dictionary of Historical Theology
Editor: Trevor Hart
Publisher: Paternoster
Publication Date: 2000
Pages: 599

Here is what Logos says about this book:

The Dictionary of Historical Theology is a major reference work designed for anyone interested in the history and development of Christian theology. Featuring 314 articles on the key figures, theological movements, and significant texts that have shaped Christian thought, Dictionary of Historical Theology traces the doctrinal development of Christianity from the early church to the present. Varying in length from 500 to 15,000 words, these entries treat the intellectual antecedents and descendants of the figures or schools of thought covered as well as their influence on the wider development of the Christian tradition.

The 173 contributors to this dictionary are, without exception, proven experts on the subjects they address. Drawn from international and interdenominational circles, they tell the story of Christianity from a wide variety of perspectives, successfully capturing the great diversity of traditions that make up the Christian community today.

Comprehensive in scope yet concisely written, Dictionary of Historical Theology is one of the most accessible and reliable single-volume compendium of Christian thought available.



Baker Encyclopedia of Christian Apologetics
Note: Not available as a stand-alone book. [Click here to learn more.](#)
Author: Norman L. Geisler
Publisher: Baker
Publication Date: 1999
Pages: 820

The opus magnum of a popular Christian apologist and based on a lifetime of study, this comprehensive reference covers everything in apologetics from Anselm to Zen.

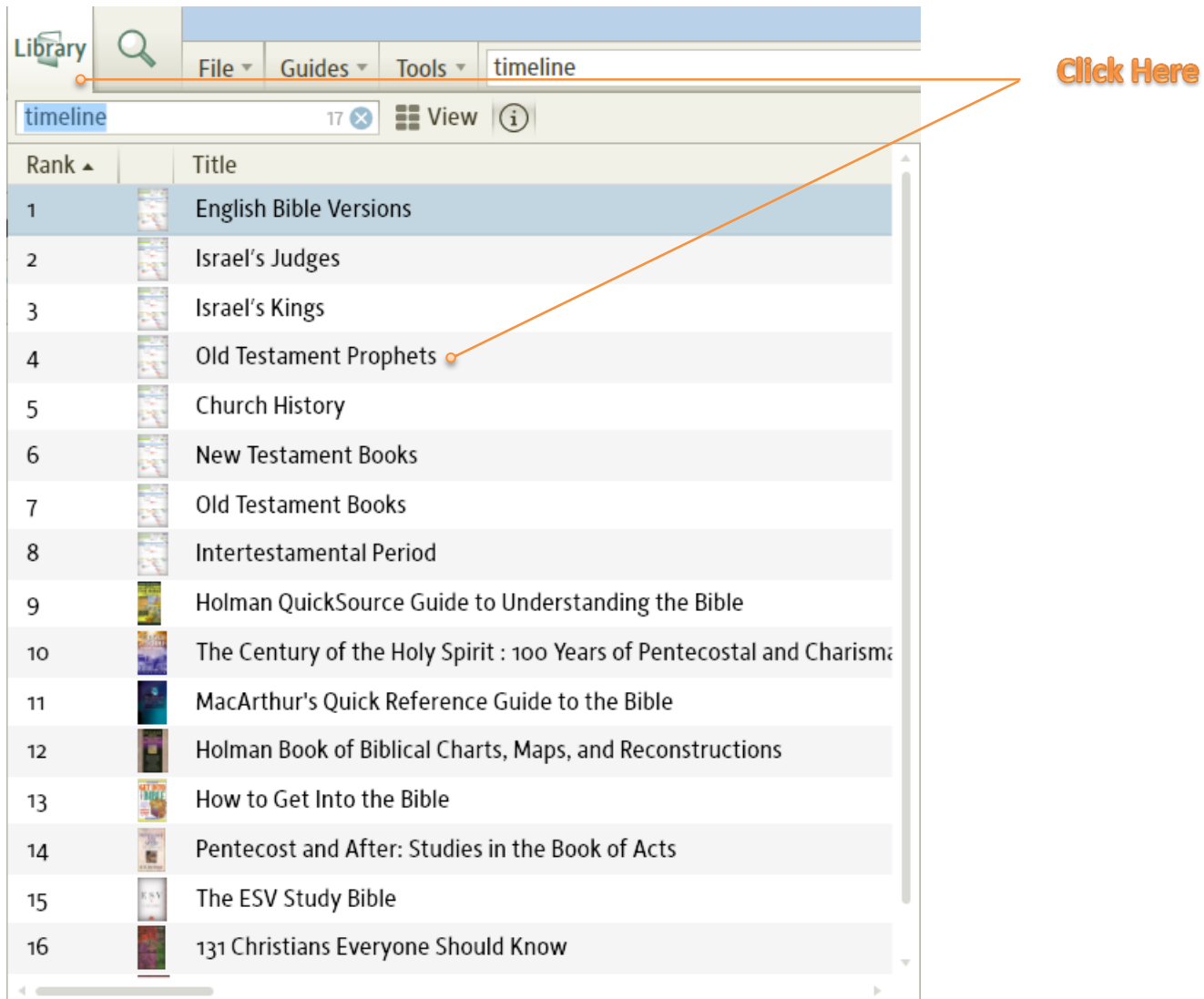
Historical/Theological Background

TIMELINES – ANOTHER RESOURCE OFTEN OVERLOOKED.

When you study any book of the Bible, it is real handy having a timeline to coincide with the events you are studying; especially when time and events and individuals are being mentioned rapidly or out of order. Logos 4 has several timelines you can access. Where are they? Let me show you!

HOW TO:

- ❶ Click on the **library** icon at the top of Logos 4
- ❷ Type **Timeline** in the find box
- ❸ Click on the timeline you are interested in viewing (I chose **Old Testament Prophets**)



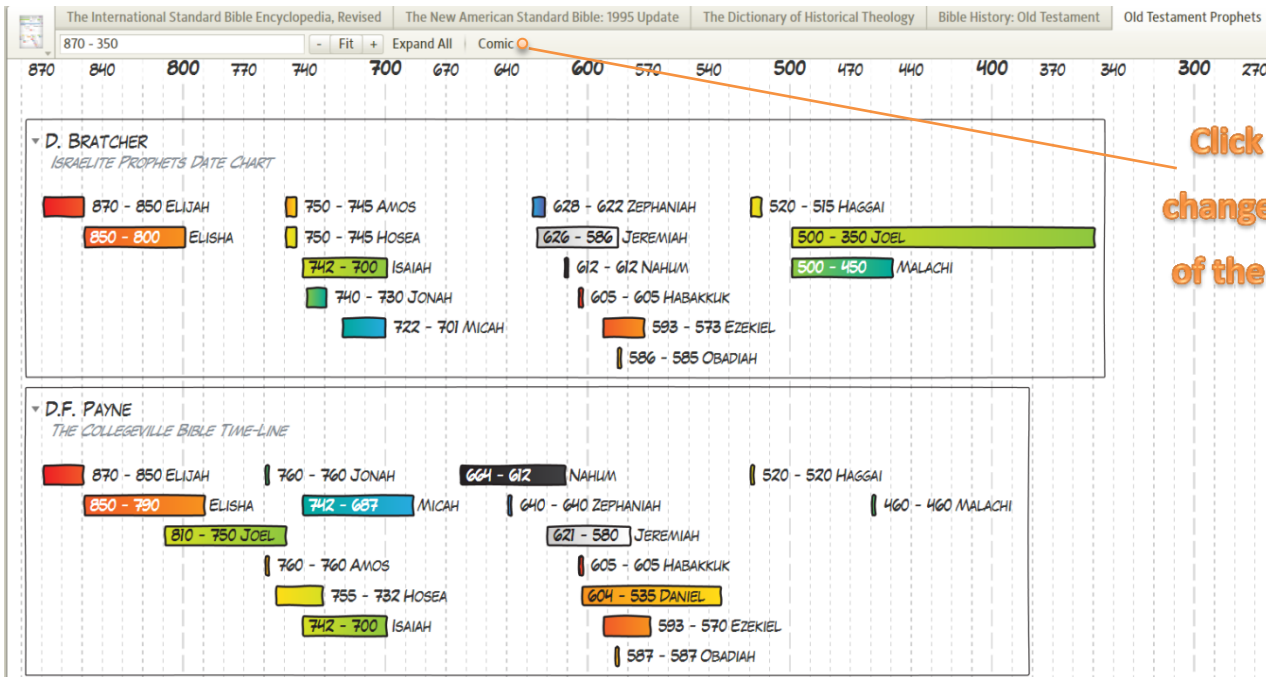
The screenshot shows the Logos 4 Library interface. At the top, there is a search bar with the word 'timeline' entered. Below the search bar, a list of 17 results is displayed. The results are organized into two columns: 'Rank' and 'Title'. The 'Old Testament Prophets' entry is highlighted in blue, and an orange arrow points from the text 'Click Here' to this entry.

Rank	Title
1	English Bible Versions
2	Israel's Judges
3	Israel's Kings
4	Old Testament Prophets
5	Church History
6	New Testament Books
7	Old Testament Books
8	Intertestamental Period
9	Holman QuickSource Guide to Understanding the Bible
10	The Century of the Holy Spirit : 100 Years of Pentecostal and Charisma
11	MacArthur's Quick Reference Guide to the Bible
12	Holman Book of Biblical Charts, Maps, and Reconstructions
13	How to Get Into the Bible
14	Pentecost and After: Studies in the Book of Acts
15	The ESV Study Bible
16	131 Christians Everyone Should Know

- ❹ If you click on the **menu choice below**, you can change the look/style of the timeline.

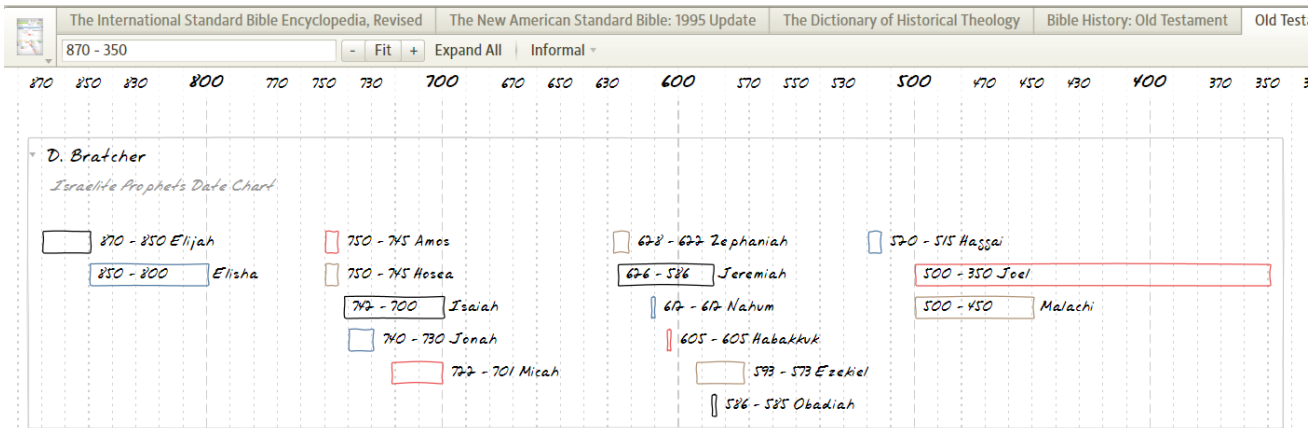
The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

COMIC STYLE

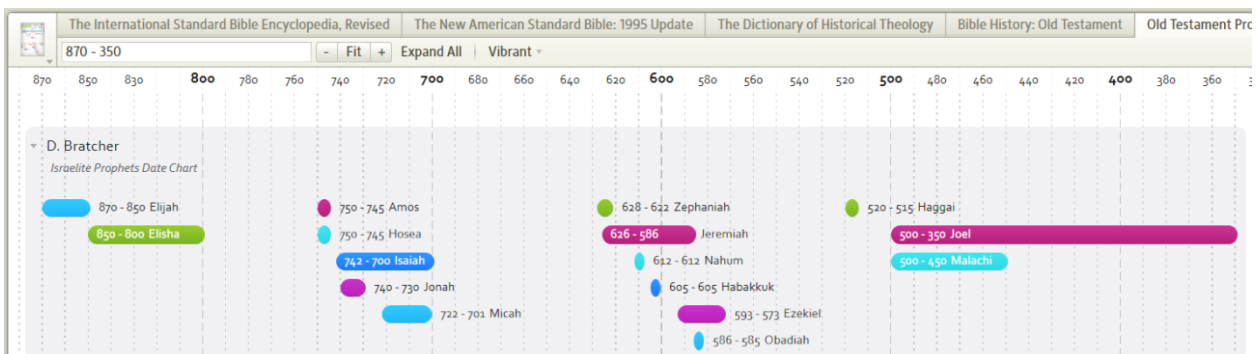


Click here to
change the look
of the timeline

INFORMAL STYLE



VIBRANT STYLE

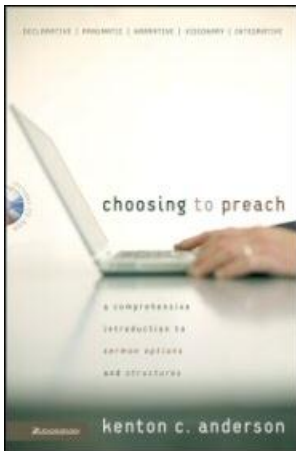


Outlining

STRUCTURING YOUR OUTLINE AFTER YOU HAVE STUDIED YOUR PASSAGE

I am committed to expository preaching and firmly believe that the clearest outline is an outline derived from the Biblical text. In my previous eNewsletters and in my CD training, I demonstrated how to determine the Biblical outline from the Biblical text. With that foundation, on occasion it may be appropriate to outline and organize the Biblical material to achieve a particular goal.

The following book, I highly recommend for understanding your outlining options:



Title: [Choosing to Preach: A Comprehensive Introduction to Sermon Options and Structures](#)

Editor: Kenton C. Anderson

Publisher: Zondervan

Publication Date: 2006

Pages: 288

The author analyzes five sermon outline structures:

- * Declarative—make an argument
- * Pragmatic—solve a mystery
- * Narrative—tell a story
- * Visionary—paint a picture
- * Integrative—sing a song

Template for the Pragmatic Sermon

Preacher:

Date:

Text:

Good titles are creative and compelling, offering listeners a reason to listen, without giving too much away.

The Listener's Question:

State the theme of the sermon in the form of a question from the listener's perspective.

Proposed Solutions:

List the various ways people could respond to the question (problem).

The Wisdom of Scripture:

Describe the scriptural evidence (propositional and testimonial) that leads to an answer to the question.

Answer to the Question:

Write the answer to the question in a succinct declarative sentence. This is the sermon theme (the big idea).

Application:

Suggest concrete action steps the listener could take to respond obediently to God.

Kenton C. Anderson, *Choosing to Preach: A Comprehensive Introduction to Sermon Options and Structures* (Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan Publishing House, 2006).

Exported from Logos Bible Software 4, 5:55 PM March 27, 2011.

Outlining

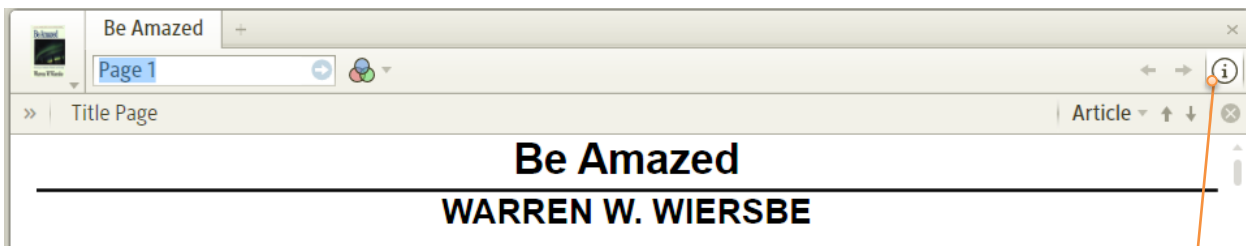
HOW NOT TO STEAL ANOTHER'S OUTLINE

For some reason in the Christian pulpit, Sunday school, or even small group Bible studies many, but not all use the work of others without giving credit publically as to the source of such information. There are diverse reasons arguing for and against such citations. Regardless where you stand on the issue, you can avoid the whole issue by being original in all that you do. However, this can be impractical at times, so how do you proceed?

I recommend the following strategy:

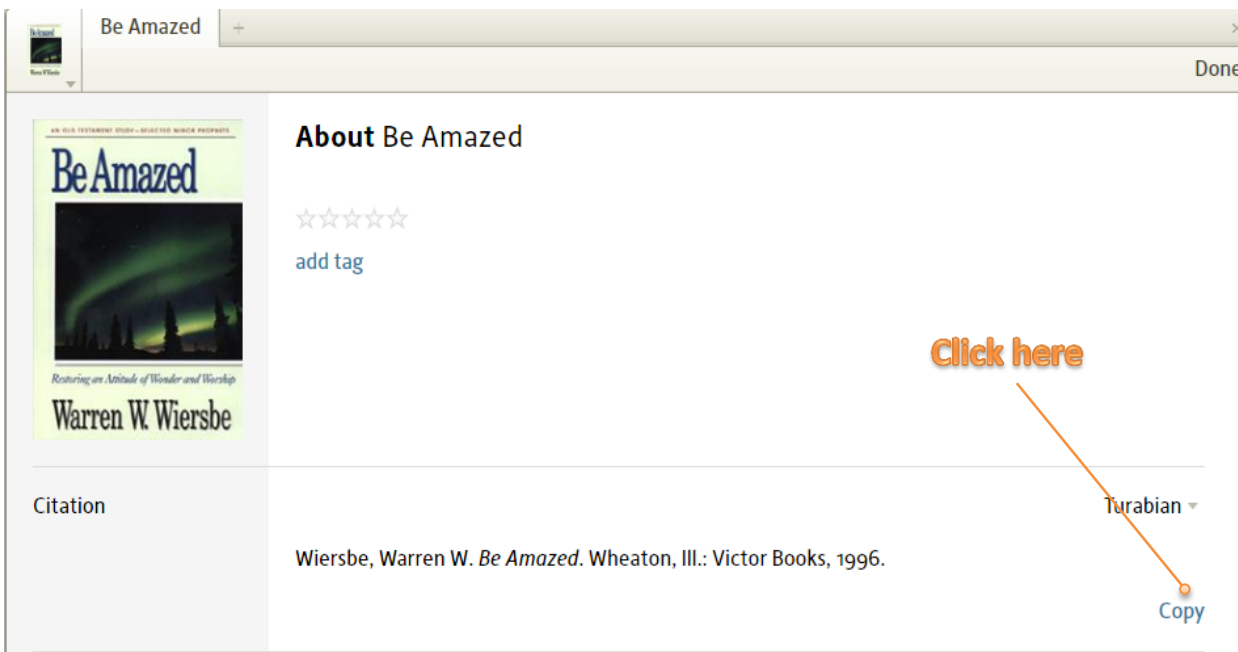
#1) First, give credit where credit is due. With Logos 4, it is real easy to compile with copying and pasting a list of citations. Additionally every book in Logos has the bibliographic information available within a few clicks.

❶ Locate the **information** button at the right of any book



Click here

❷ Click the copy button to capture the bibliographic information and paste into your document



Note: I recommend creating a document of all your citations and posting on the web so others can see your sources.

Outlining

HOW DO YOU CHECK YOUR OUTLINE WHEN IT IS FINISHED?

After you have constructed your Bible outline for teaching and preaching, it is always a good idea to check multiple sources. Here is a list of resources from the Home Library through Platinum that have outlines you can check and refine against:

Note: If you own the resources below, click the links to open the book.

Let's examine various outlines for [Romans 4](#)

Note: The books below were selected because they had in-depth outlines compared to other resources

[Bible Knowledge Commentary](#)

[Bible Reader's Companion](#)

[The Bible Exposition Commentary](#)

[Holman New Testament Commentary: Romans](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Romans](#)

[Pillar Commentary: Romans](#)

[Baker Exegetical Commentary on the NT: Romans](#)

[Gingrich Bible Outlines on Romans](#)

[Preaching the Word: R. Kent Hughes](#)

[Word Biblical Commentary: Romans](#)

Word Study

GRAMMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS: WHAT DID GOD CREATE?

After reading [Genesis Chapter 1](#), are you not awestruck by the amazing power and creative genius of our loving heavenly Father? During my reading I started to wonder what else God created and is mentioned in the scripture?

Now you may be wondering, “How can I *create* a way to do this in Logos 4”! Well, this will not require a miracle nor 6 days to accomplish, and yet you too will say “It is very good!”

HOW TO:

- ➊ Go to [Genesis 1:1](#) in your favorite translation. I will use the NASB95.
- ➋ **Right click** on the word **created** and choose **lemma** from the menu and then choose **Bible Word Study**

Click here

God created the heavens and the earth.

Look up	Selection	created
Look up in a new tab	Reference	Genesis 1:1
Power Lookup	Manuscript	בָּרָא
Search this resource	Lemma	1 בָּרָא
Search all open resources	Morph	VqAsSM3
Search entire library	Hebrew Strong's	Strong's Hebrew #1254
Morph Search: 1: בָּרָא		
Morph Search: 1: בָּרָא@VqAsSM3		
Copy		
Bible Word Study		
A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old...		
Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic...		
Enhanced Brown-Driver-Briggs Hebrew and English...		
The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the Old...		
Gesenius' Hebrew-Chaldee Lexicon to the Old...		
	Add a note to "Centrality of the Gospel in the C...	
	Add a clipping to "Matthew 28:16-20 Passage G...	
	Show Information	

③ Expand the section **Grammatical Relationships** by clicking on the black triangle at the left

The screenshot shows the Bible Word Study interface for the word 'ברא' (b'ra). The sidebar on the left contains a menu with options like 'LEMMA', 'TRANSLATION', 'EXAMPLE USES', and 'GRAMMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS'. The main content area displays the 'GRAMMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS' section, which is expanded to show a list of subjects and objects. An orange arrow points to the 'Click here' text in the 'GRAMMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS' section.

With Subject ...			
אלהים	'lhym	God	6
יהוה	yhwh	Yahweh	3
אתה	'th	thee(m)	2
המה	hmh	them(m)	2
אתה	'th	thou(m)	1

[more »](#)

With Object ...			
אדם	'dm	men; man	3
כל	kl	all	3
שמים	\$mym	heaven	3

④ The first section is titled **With Subject...** this list shows you every subject that is paired or connected to the word **created**. In the second section titled **With Object** we can see every object created. (Click **more** to see more of the list)

⑤ Let's expand the sub-section labeled **God** by clicking on **God**. Here we can see the Hebrew and the English and see what God created!

The screenshot shows the 'With Subject ...' section for the word 'ברא' (b'ra). The 'God' entry is expanded, showing a list of verses and their translations. An orange arrow points to the 'Click here' text in the 'With Subject ...' section.

With Subject ...		
אלהים	'lhym	God

[Click here](#)

Verse	Hebrew	English
Ge 1:1	בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ:	In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.
Ge 1:21	וַיִּבְרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הַתַּנִּינִם הַגְּדֹלִים וְאֶת כָּל־נֶפֶשׁ הַחַיָּה הַרֹמֶשֶׁת אֲשֶׁר שָׂרְצוּ הַמַּיִם לְמִינֵהֶם וְאֶת כָּל־עוֹף כָּנָף לְמִינֵהוּ וַיֵּרָא אֱלֹהִים בְּיָטוֹב:	God created the great sea monsters and every living creature that moves, with which the waters swarmed after their kind, and every winged bird after its kind; and God saw that it was good.
Ge 1:27	וַיִּבְרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם בְּצַלְמוֹ בְּצֶלֶם אֱלֹהִים בָּרָא אֹתוֹ זָכָר וּנְקֵבָה בָּרָא אֹתָם:	God created man in His own image, in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.
Ge 2:3	וַיְבָרֶךְ אֱלֹהִים אֶת־יּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי וַיְקַדֵּשׁ אֹתוֹ כִּי בּוֹ שָׁבַת מְכֹל־מְלָאכְתּוֹ אֲשֶׁר־בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת:	Then God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He rested from all His work which God had created and made.

Note: If you explore the list under **With Object...** you can learn about what was created!

Word Study

WHEN GOD TALKS, PEOPLE LISTEN!

You might recall, if you are old enough, the late 70's and early 80's advertising campaign "When E.F. Hutton speaks, people listen". This campaign was memorable, but it was not their last word. Later in their history there were scandals and fraud and this brokerage firm was eventually sold off.

Well, thankfully we have a more sure word than E.F. Hutton, and with Logos we can hear again and again the Words of God spoken throughout the generations to guide us and encourage us today and in the days to come.

To easily find the conversations of God, please follow along.

HOW TO:

- ➊ Go to [Genesis 1:6](#) in your favorite translation. I will use the NASB95.
- ➋ **Right click** on the word **said** and choose **lemma** from the menu and then choose **Bible Word Study**

Then God said, "Let there be ¹an ^aexpanse in the midst of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters."

Look up

Look up in a new tab

Power Lookup

Search this resource

Search all open resources

Search entire library

Morph Search: 1: אָמַר

Morph Search: 1: אָמַר@VqAmSM3

Copy

Bible Word Study

A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament

Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domains

Enhanced Brown-Driver-Briggs Hebrew and English Lexicon

Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament

The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament

Selection	Strong's
Reference	Genesis 1:6
Manuscript	אָמַר
Lemma	1 אָמַר
Morph	VqAmSM3
Hebrew Strong's	Strong's Hebrew #559

Add a note to "Centrality of the Gospel in the Church"

Add a clipping to "Matthew 28:16-20 Passage Guide"

Show Information

③ Expand the section **Grammatical Relationships** by clicking on the black triangle at the left

That's a big number!

GRAMMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS

With Subject ... [Click here](#)

▼ יהוה yhwh Yahweh 612

Ge 2:18	וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לֹא-טוֹב הָיִית הָאָדָם לְבַדּוֹ אֶעֱשֶׂה-לּוֹ עֹזֵר כְּנֶגְדּוֹ:	Then the Lord God said, "It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make him a helper suitable for him."
Ge 3:13	וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאִשָּׁה מַה-זֹּאת עָשִׂית וַתֹּאמֶר הָאִשָּׁה הִנָּחֵשׁ הִשִּׂיאֲנִי וְאָכַל:	Then the Lord God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."
Ge 3:14-15	וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶל-הַנָּחָשׁ כִּי עָשִׂיתָ זֹאת אֲרוּר אַתָּה מִכָּל-הַבְּהֵמָה וּמִכָּל חַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה עַל-גִּחְזֹנְךָ תֵּלֵךְ וְעָפָר תֹּאכַל כָּל-יְמֵי חַיֶּיךָ: וְאֵיבָה אִשִּׁית בֵּינְךָ וּבֵין הָאִשָּׁה וּבֵין זֶרְעֶךָ וּבֵין זֶרְעָהּ הוּא יִשׁוּפָךְ רֹאשׁ וְאַתָּה תִּשׁוּפְנָהּ עָקֵב:	The Lord God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, Cursed are you more than all cattle, And more than every beast of the field; On your belly you will go, And dust you will eat All the days of your life; And I will put enmity Between you and the woman, And between your seed and her seed; He shall bruise you on the head, And you shall bruise him on the heel."
Ge 3:22	וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים הֵן הָאָדָם הָיָה כְּאֶחָד מִמֶּנּוּ לִדְעוֹת טוֹב וָרָע וְעַתָּה פֶּן-יִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ וְלָקַח גַּם מִעֵץ חַיִּים וְאָכַל וַחַי לְעֹלָם:	Then the Lord God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of Us, knowing good and evil; and now, he might stretch out his hand, and take also from the tree of life, and eat, and live forever"—

④ In the first section titled **With Subject...** we see there are 612 places where God spoke and if we click **more**, we can explore further!

Note: You will need to explore the other words in the **With Subject** section in case another pronoun or other term is used as a substitute for Yahweh.

Word Study

I SEARCH AND SEARCH, BUT I CAN'T FIND THE PASSAGE! HELP ME PLEASE!

If you are like me, you have been exposed to multiple Bible translations over the years. And with the passage of time, memorized verses begin to fade and it becomes difficult to recall these truths precisely.

So let me show you a great way to find that troublesome passage:

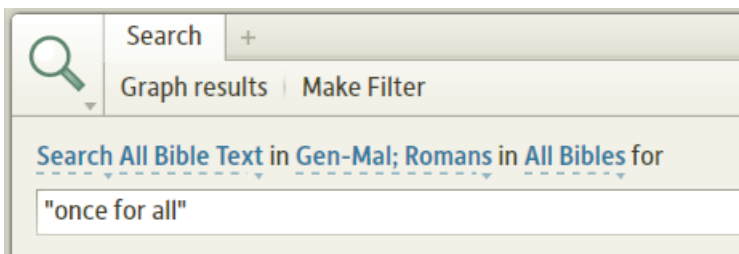
HOW TO:

- Go to the top of Logos, and click the magnifying glass (search button)



Click here

- Choose your search criteria as pictured below and type **"once for all"** in the search box and press **enter**



- Examine your search results.

Legend: (1) Empty colored square = not found (2) Filled colored square = found (3) do not symbol = no passage

Note: WUESTNT is colored for multiple passages because the translation is not versified (the phrase is found RO 6:10)

▼ BIBLE RESULTS 60 results in 40 verses in 28 resources (18.57 sec)

		MAS95	ESV	NKJV	DARBY	AMP	URS4 Int.	HC38	NI	LGNT	LGNT-SBL	HDNT (ESV)	LB	MA27 Int.	MA27GRMCCORDI	NET	NETBEN	NAB	NASB	NIV	NIV84	NJB	NRSV	WUESTINT	RSV	RSVCE	SVOTTE	TWV	WNT
Josh 10:42																													Joshua captured all these kings and their lands at one time, because the LORD, the God of Israel, f
1 Sam 26: 8																													Then Abishai said to David, "Today God has delivered your enemy into your hand; now therefore,
Job 14:20																													"You forever overpower him and he departs; <i>You</i> change his appearance and send him away.
20: 7																													He perishes forever like his refuse; Those who have seen him will say, 'Where is he?'
Ps 89:35																													"Once I have sworn by My holiness; I will not lie to David.
Ezek 20:15																													"Also I swore to them in the wilderness that I would not bring them into the land which I had give
Dan 2:35																													"Then the iron, the clay, the bronze, the silver and the gold were crushed all at the same time and
Rom 3:27																													Where then is boasting? It is excluded. By what kind of law? Of works? No, but by a law of faith.
28																													For we maintain that a man is justified by faith apart from works of the Law.
6: 1																													What shall we say then? Are we to continue in sin so that grace may increase?
2																													May it never be! How shall we who died to sin still live in it?
3																													Or do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus have been baptized in
4																													Therefore we have been buried with Him through baptism into death, so that as Christ was raised
5																													For if we have become united with <i>Him</i> in the likeness of His death, certainly we shall also be <i>in ti</i>
6																													knowing this, that our old self was crucified with <i>Him</i> , in order that our body of sin might be done
7																													for he who has died is freed from sin.
8																													Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him,
9																													knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead, is never to die again; death no longer is m
10																													For the death that He died, He died to sin once for all ; but the life that He lives, He lives to God.
11																													Even so consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

Illustrations/ Applications

BIBLICAL COUNSELING RESOURCES CAN BE A GREAT RESOURCE FOR PERSONAL GROWTH!

There are several very practical resources in Logos Bible Software library that can guide you to a holier life, resulting in a more intimate relationship with God.

One example is the [*Quick Scripture Reference for Counseling*](#) by John G. Kruis ([\\$12.95 @ the Logos store](#))

Quick Scripture Reference for Counseling

Table of Contents:

- Title Page
- Dedication
- Salvation
- Introduction
- ▼ A
 - Adultery
 - Affliction, Discipline, Cha...
 - Alcohol, Drug Abuse
 - Anger, Hot Temper
 - Assurance
- ▼ B
 - Bitterness, Resentmen...**
 - Blame Shifting
- ▼ C
 - Change
 - Children
 - Church, Communion of S...
 - Church Discipline
 - Comfort
 - Communication, Gossip,...
 - Conscience
 - Contentment, Coveting,...
- ▼ D
 - Death, Eternal Life
 - Decision Making
 - Depression
 - Divorce
- ▼ E
 - Example
- ▼ F
 - False Prophets, Teachers
 - Fear
 - Forgiveness of Sins
 - Forgiving Others
 - Friendships
- ▼ G
 - Giving
- ▼ H
 - Homosexuality

Bitterness, Resentment, Hate

- Put away bitterness.**
Eph. 4:31. Let all bitterness, wrath, anger, clamor, and evil speaking be put away from you, with all malice.
- Quit biting and devouring each other.**
Gal. 5:15. But if you bite and devour one another, beware lest you be consumed by one another!
- Bitterness belongs to the sinful nature.**
Gal. 5:19. Now the works of the flesh are evident, which are: adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lewdness.
- Let no bitter root grow.**
Heb. 12:15. Looking carefully lest anyone fall short of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up cause trouble, and by this many become defiled;
- Joseph's brothers allowed bitterness to grow into hatred and murder in the heart.**
Gen. 37.
- Cain's anger turned to bitterness, hatred, and murder.**
Gen. 4:3-8.
- Hatred is forbidden.**
Lev. 19:17. 'You shall not hate your brother in your heart. You shall surely rebuke your neighbor, and not bear sin because of him.'
- One who hates lives in darkness.**
1 John 2:9-11. He who says he is in the light, and hates his brother, is in darkness until now. He who loves his brother abides in the light, and there is no cause for stumbling in him. But he who hates his brother is in darkness and walks in darkness, and does not know where he is going, because the darkness has blinded his eyes.
- The way of a malicious man is deceitful.**
Prov. 26:24-26. He who hates, disguises it with his lips, And lays up deceit within himself; When he speaks kindly, do not believe him, For there are seven abominations in his heart; Though his hatred is covered by deceit, His wickedness will be revealed before the assembly.
- Hatred is murder.**
1 John 3:11-20.
1 John 3:15. Whoever hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding in him.

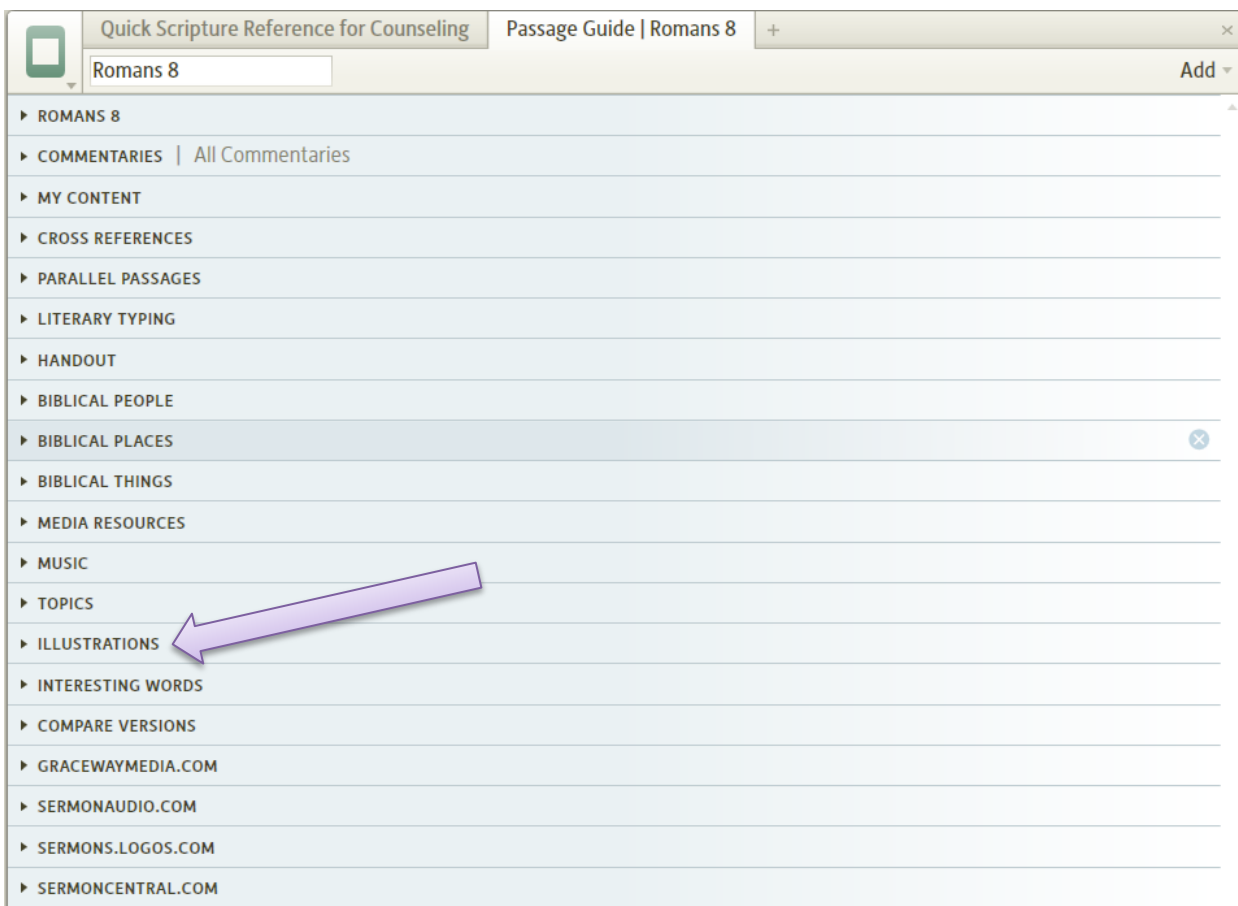
Illustrations/ Applications

SEARCHING FOR ILLUSTRATIONS IS NOW WHOLE LOT EASIER! YEAH!

Logos updated the passage guide to include a section titled “Illustrations”.

HOW TO:

❶ Go to the main menu > choose **Guides > Passage Guide > Type Romans 8** in the Bible reference box > **Press Enter** and then locate the section below titled “**Illustrations**”



Note: Be careful your Bible search range is not too narrow. Additionally, make sure you have a sufficient number of books with illustrations.

- ❸ Let's look at the top right of this window. There will see the default choice **Tags**. This is pictured below.



- ④ Let's click on **Cloud** and view the image below

Note: You can right click on this image to copy, save, or send to PowerPoint



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

5 Let's now click on **List** and view the results below

ILLUSTRATIONS

Tags | Cloud | **List**

- ▶ Christ
- ▶ Cross
- ▶ Death
- ▶ Faith
- ▶ Fear
- ▶ Giving
- ▶ God
- ▶ Heart
- ▶ Heaven
- ▶ Home
- ▶ Hope
- ▶ Life
- ▶ Love
- ▶ Man
- ▶ Peace
- ▶ Power
- ▼ **Prayer**

Click here

- Prayer as Hope 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching
- Student Prayer 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching
- Prayer 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching
- Controversial Prayer 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching
- Leave Your Prayer List 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching
- A Soldier's Prayer 1000 Illustrations for Preaching & Teaching

Note: Click on prayer to expand this section and see the links to your books

Illustrations/ Applications

SEARCHING FOR APPLICATIONS IN SERMONS

If you own the [John Piper Sermon Collection](#), [Charles Spurgeon Collection](#), [Mark Driscoll 10 Year Sermon Collection](#) or others sermons then you have an untapped wealth of examples of preachers providing applications for the church. However, you might be thinking now, “Sure John, but I don’t have time to read every sermon! How can I find an application that is buried deep in a sermon quickly?”

HOW TO:

❶ Create a collection of all your sermons (Tools > Collections)

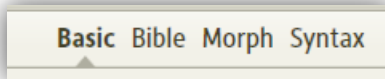
***Note:** We covered this in a previous eNewsletter.

* You can also learn how with the LearnLogos.com Training CDs

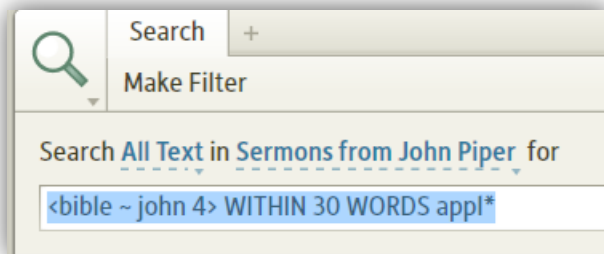
❷ Click on the **Search Button** at the top



❸ Click the **Basic** search option



❹ Choose your **collection** in the search criteria



❺ Enter the following in the search box: **<bible ~ john 4> WITHIN 30 WORDS appl***

Let's break down the search formula:

<bible ~ john 4> This is the passage that you are studying and looking for an application

WITHIN 30 WORDS This is your proximity criteria (try to keep this between 10 and 50)

appl* This will tell Logos to find words that begin with appl, like apply, applying, application, etc.

Conclusion: This search strategy helps us find an **application** in a sermon in the context of the passage you are studying.

Get **THREE** CDs for the **BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

50% Off
Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

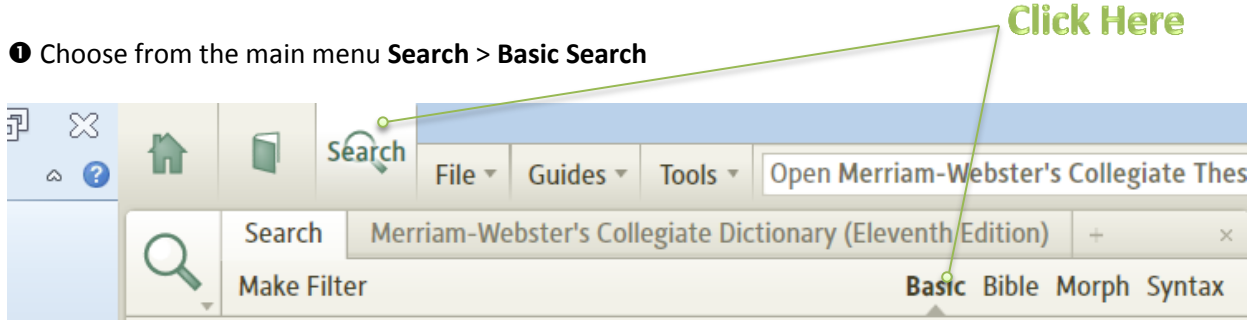
Searching

JUST SHOW ME! PAINT ME A PICTURE! WHAT DOES IT LOOK LIKE?

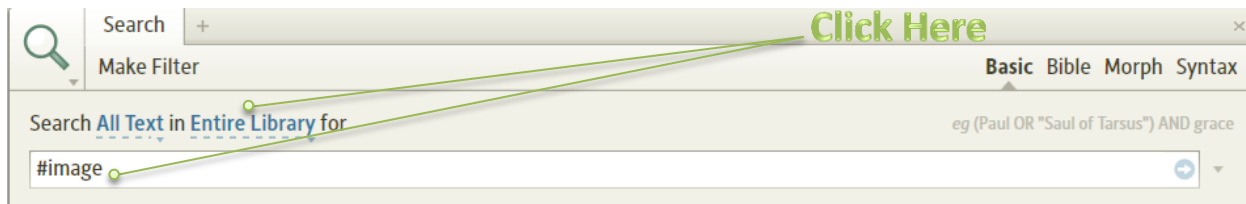
In this day and age we have grown accustomed to seeing everything visually. But seeing through the eyes of the Biblical text is limited to the text, historical information, an artist, our imagination, and even the archeologist. But new to Logos 4 is the capability to search for images. Let's learn together how easy this can be!

HOW TO:

- 1 Choose from the main menu **Search > Basic Search**



- 2 Next, please type **#image** in the find box and be sure to choose **Entire Library** as your collection to search



⑤ Let's examine the search results.

[Make Filter](#)

[Basic](#) [Bible](#) [Morph](#) [Syntax](#)

Search [All Text](#) in [Entire Library](#) for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

► **MY CONTENT** 0 results in 0 documents (0.01 sec)

▼ **LIBRARY RESULTS** 111,904 results in 68,574 articles in 2,548 resources (0.83 sec)

[Ranked](#) | [By Title](#) | [By Count](#)

1 and 2 Thessalonians: The MacArthur New Testament Commentary 1 hit in 1 article

[Title Page](#) (1 Th)

1 & 2 Thessalonians MOODY PRESS/CHICAGO

1 Chronicles: A Commentary 70 hits in 59 articles

[Title Page](#) (1 Ch)

Chronicles A Commentary on 1 Chronicles by Ralph W. Klein Edited by Thomas Krüger Fortress Press Minneapolis 1
Chronicles A Commentary on 1 Chronicles © 2006 Augsburg Fortress...

[Detailed Commentary](#) (1 Ch 1:1)

Enosh found spouses, although *Jubilees* reports that both married their sisters (*Jub.* 4:11, 13). ■ 2* *Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared*: Cf. Gen 5:12–18*. ■ 3* *Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech*: Cf. Gen 5...

[Detailed Commentary](#) (1 Ch 1:5–23)

coupled with the order of the cosmos. 1:5–23*. Segmented Genealogy of Japheth, Ham, and Shem

[Detailed Commentary](#) (1 Ch 1:8)

known neighbor. Egypt and related words are frequently mentioned also in Chronicles (27 times).


Just a simple title page graphic

A family tree

Note: As you can see, there are too many results. Let's narrow the search results.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

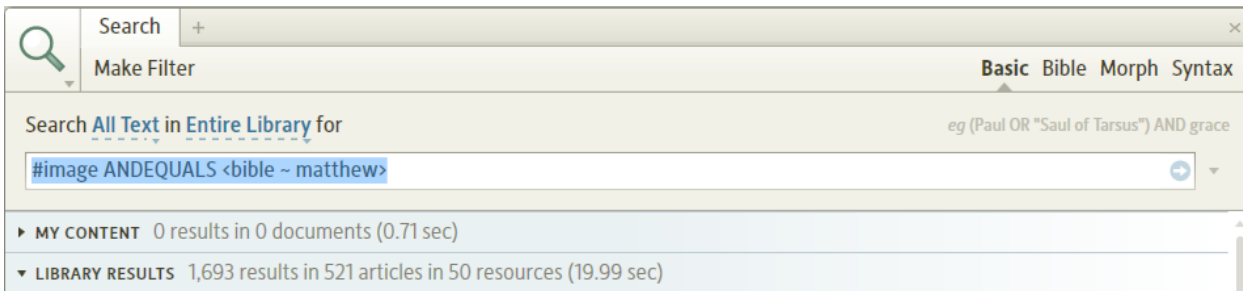
④ Next, please type **#image ANDEQUALS genealogy** in the find box and be sure to choose **Entire Library** as your collection to search



The screenshot shows the Logos search interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a plus sign. Below the search bar, there is a dropdown menu labeled 'Make Filter'. To the right of the search bar, there are tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax'. The 'Basic' tab is selected. Below the search bar, there is a text input field containing the search query '#image ANDEQUALS genealogy'. To the right of the input field, there is a dropdown menu with the text 'eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace'. Below the input field, there are two sections: 'MY CONTENT' and 'LIBRARY RESULTS'. The 'MY CONTENT' section shows '0 results in 0 documents (0.01 sec)'. The 'LIBRARY RESULTS' section shows '71 results in 22 articles in 12 resources (0.71 sec)'.

Note: Your search results will be a whole lot less and vary depending on the resources in your library.

⑤ Let's try one more. Please type **#image ANDEQUALS <bible ~ matthew>** in the find box and be sure to choose **Entire Library** as your collection to search



The screenshot shows the Logos search interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a plus sign. Below the search bar, there is a dropdown menu labeled 'Make Filter'. To the right of the search bar, there are tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax'. The 'Basic' tab is selected. Below the search bar, there is a text input field containing the search query '#image ANDEQUALS <bible ~ matthew>'. To the right of the input field, there is a dropdown menu with the text 'eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace'. Below the input field, there are two sections: 'MY CONTENT' and 'LIBRARY RESULTS'. The 'MY CONTENT' section shows '0 results in 0 documents (0.71 sec)'. The 'LIBRARY RESULTS' section shows '1,693 results in 521 articles in 50 resources (19.99 sec)'.

Note: Here we find all images related to the book of Matthew.

IMPORTANT: By now, you are probably wondering what other words can be used besides 'genealogy'. Well, that's a tough question because Logos offers no such list to refer to. My suggestion is to experiment, consult a Bible dictionary, or run the passage guide and examine the "biblical things" section for ideas.

Searching

SEARCHING FOR SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

Learning to search for scripture references in your library, in specific collections, or even in specific books is a key skill you must acquire to leverage your digital library to its maximum potential. Here is a list of different “scripture” searches you can perform with the **Basic Search**.

HOW TO:

This is a search operator

Type this in the Search Box	Verse Search Results	Description
<bible = Ephesians 2:8>	Eph. 2:8	Finds that exact passage Ephesians 2:8
<bible = Ephesians 2:8-10>	Eph. 2:8-10	Finds that exact passage Ephesians 2:8-10
<bible ~ Ephesians 2:8-10>	Eph. 2:9, Eph. 2:1-8	Finds any passage that intersects with Eph. 2:8-10
<bible intersect Ep 2:8-10>	Ep 2:8-3:3, Eph 1-3	Find references that intersect, especially large ranges
<bible subset Eph 2:8-10>	Eph 2:9-10, Eph 2:8-9	All the verses found must be within the search range
<bible superset Eph 2:8-10>	Eph 2:1-10, Eph 2:1-3	All verses found must include complete search range

Note: The abbreviation <Ep 2:8-10> is shorthand for <bible ~ Eph 2:8-10> not <bible = Eph 2:8-10>.

Searching

LIST IT > SEARCH IT > FIND IT

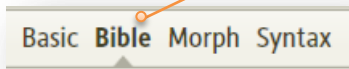
Here is a great way to search for a list of terms instead of using the Boolean operator 'OR'.

HOW TO:

- 1 Click **Search**



- 2 Click **Bible** at the top, right of the search window



- 3 In the find box, type **(Jesus, Lord, Christ)**

Note: You could have typed the following: Jesus OR Lord OR Christ



- 4 In the find box, type **(Jesus, Lord, Christ) AND believe**

Note: You could have typed the following: (Jesus AND believe) OR (Lord and believe) OR (Christ and believe)

Book Overview and Review

BIBLE HANDBOOKS: WHAT ARE THEY AND WHICH DO YOU USE AND RECOMMEND?

I did a search at www.Logos.com for Bible Handbooks. Below is a list of the most notable ones.

Note: You can click on each book image to learn more about each book at www.Logos.com.

❶ What is a Bible Handbook?

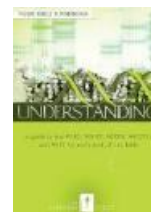
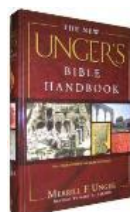
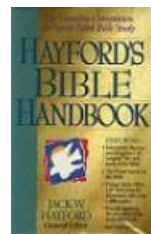
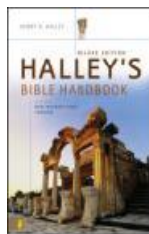
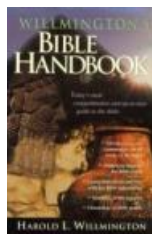
Answer: A companion resource for Bible study. They typically include the following information:

1. Book Introduction and summary
2. Outline of each book of the Bible
3. Background on people, places, and events for each book of the Bible
4. Significant teachings or doctrines found in each book of the Bible
5. Maps and occasional charts

❷ Why do you use these books? **Answer:** They provide quick summaries, overviews, and essential historical background information to grasp the very essentials of any book of the Bible.

❸ Which do you recommend? **Answer:** (1) MacArthur Bible Handbook (2) Wilmington's Bible Handbook (3) Holman Bible Handbook

❹ How do **Bible Handbooks** differ from **Study Bibles**? The most significant difference between these two types of resources is a Bible handbook typically will not provide an expositional or verse by verse commentary.



Book Overview and Review

LXX/SEPTUAGINT: 3 OPTIONS FOR YOUR HEBREW-GREEK STUDIES

In Logos 4, you have access to several LXX/Septuagint Bibles. If you are not familiar with these terms (LXX/Septuagint), the LXX and Septuagint refer to the same book which is the complete Old Testament translated from Hebrew to Greek.



Septuaginta : With Morphology. Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 1996.

Data Included: Greek Text, Greek Morphology

SAMPLE:

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν καὶ τὴν γῆν.



Septuaginta : With Morphology. electronic ed. Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 1979.

Data Included: Greek Text, Hebrew Manuscript Text, Hebrew Transliteration, Hebrew Lemma Text, Hebrew Lemma Transliteration, Morphology, Strong's #s

SAMPLE:

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς • τὸν οὐρανὸν καὶ • τὴν γῆν .
 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
 בְּרֵאשִׁית בְּרֵאשִׁית אֱלֹהִים אֵת הָאֱשֵׁמִים אֵת הָאֵרֶץ
 b rē(')-šît bā-rā(') 'ēlō-hîm 'ēt hă šā-mă-yim w 'ēt hā 'ā-rēs
 ב ראשית ברא אלהים אות ה שמים ו אות ה ארץ
 b r'syt br' 1 'lhym 'wt 1 h 1 šmym w 'wt 1 h 1 'rs
 PB NCcSFC VqAsSM3 NPDSMN PA XD NCcDMNH CC PA XD NCcSFPH
 7225 1254 430 853 8064 853 776



Tan, Randall, David A. deSilva and Logos Bible Software. *The Lexham Greek-English Interlinear Septuagint*, Logos Bible Software, 2009.

Data Included: Greek Text, Greek Transliteration, Greek Lemma Text, Greek Lemma Transliteration, Morphology, English glosses, English Translation.

SAMPLE:

Ge 1:1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν καὶ τὴν γῆν .
 En archē epoiesen ho theos ton ouranon kai tēn gēn
 ἐν ἀρχῇ ποιέω ὁ θεός ὁ οὐρανός καὶ ὁ γῆ
 en archē poieō ho theos ho ouranos kai ho gē
 P NDSF VAAI3S DNSM NNSM DASM NASM P DASF NASF
 in beginning to make, do the God the heaven and the earth, land
 In the beginning made₂ — God₁ the heaven and the earth.

Book Overview and Review

BDAG: THE ELEMENTS OF AN EXCELLENT GREEK DICTIONARY

If you own the BDAG lexicon (Greek Dictionary) then you have already experienced this amazing dictionary and have benefited immensely from its scholarship for doing Greek word studies. If you have not heard or even seen this book up close then look below for more information.

Retail in Print: [Amazon \\$ 128](#) [CBD \\$ 164](#)

Logos Stand Alone Price: [\\$ 150](#)

Logos Bundle Price with HALOT: [\\$ 274](#)

Note: Included with Platinum Collection

A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature, Third Edition

ἀγαπάω

A > ἀγαπάω

ἀγαπάω *impf.* ἡγάπων; *fut.* ἀγαπήσω; *1 aor.* ἡγάπησα; *pf.* ἡγάπηκα, *ptc.* ἡγαπηκώς; *plpf.* 3 sg. ἡγαπήκει *Je.* 2:25. *Pass.:* 1 *fut.* ἀγαπηθήσομαι; 1 *aor.* 2 sg. ἡγαπήθης *Sir* 47:16; *pf. ptc.* ἡγαπημένος (in *var. mngs. Hom.*—*STromp de Ruiter, Gebruik en beteekenis van ἀγαπᾶν in de Grieksche Literatuur* 1930; *CRichardson, Love: Gk. and Christian, JR* 23, '43, 173–85).

1 to have a warm regard for and interest in another, *cherish, have affection for, love*

② by human beings (*Pind., Pla.* et al.)

α, to a broad range of persons, apart from recipients of special devotion, for which see β; w. *obj.* given γυναίκας *Eph* 5:25, 28, 33 (on proper attitude of the husband *cp.* *Plut., Mor.* 142e); *Col* 3:19; ὡς ἀδελφὴν *Hv* 1, 1, 1, τὸν πλησίον *Mt* 5:43; 19:19; 22:39; *Mk* 12:31, 33 (on 33b s. *Aristaen., Ep.* 2, 13, and φιλῶ σε ὡς ἑμαυτήν); *Ro* 13:9; *Gal* 5:14; *Js* 2:8; *B* 19:5 (all *quots. fr.* *Lev* 19:18); s. πλησίον 2; τὸν ἕτερον *Ro* 13:8. τὸν ἀδελφόν *1J* 2:10; 3:10; 4:20f. τοὺς ἀδελφούς 3:14. τὰ τέκνα τοῦ θεοῦ 5:2. ἀλλήλους *J* 13:34; 15:12, 17; *1J* 3:11, 23; 4:7, 11f; 2 *J* 5; *Ro* 13:8; 1 *Th* 4:9. τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας *Mt* 5:46; *Lk* 6:32. τὸ ἔθνος ἡμῶν 7:5. τοὺς ἐχθρούς *Mt* 5:44; *Lk* 6:27, 35; s. *WvanUnnik, NovT* 8, '66, 284–300, and s. ἐχθρός 2bβ; α. τινα ὑπὲρ τὴν ψυχὴν *love someone more than one's own life B* 1:4; 4:6; 19:5; *D* 2:7 (*cp.* *Philo, Rer. Div. Her.* 42 ὑπερφύως α.; *Kaibel* 716, 5 φίλους ὑπὲρ αὐτὸν [=αὐτὸν] ἐτίμα). εἰ περισσοτέρως ὑμᾶς ἀγαπῶ, ἥσσον ἀγαπῶμαι; *if I love you the more, am I to be loved less? 2 Cor* 12:15; α. πολὺ, ὀλίγον *show much or little affection Lk* 7:47; *cp.* πλεῖον ἀγαπήσει αὐτόν *will love him more vs.* 42 (on the love-hate pair s. *AFridrichsen, Svensk Exegetisk Årsbok* 5, '40, 152–62.—The meaning *be grateful* is suggested for *Lk* 7:42 by *HWood, ET* 66, '55, 319, after *JJeremias*. See *Jos., Bell.* 1, 392 and *Ps* 114:1 LXX). Abs. ἡμεῖς ἀγαπῶμεν *1J* 4:19. πᾶς ὁ ἀγαπῶν vs. 7. ὁ μὴ ἀγαπῶν vs. 8. W. indication of the kind of affection: α. ἐν Ἰησοῦ Χρ. *I Mg* 6:2. Opp. μισεῖν (*Dt* 21:15–17) *Mt* 6:24; *Lk* 16:13.

β, to transcendent recipients of special devotion: to Jesus *1 Pt* 1:8. Esp. in *J*: 8:42; 14:15, 21, 23f; 21:15f (always spoken by Jesus).—On the last passage s. *AFridrichsen, SymbOsl* 14, '35, 46–49; *EMcDowell, RevExp* 32, '35, 422–41; *Goodsp., Probs.* 116–18; *JScott, CIW* 39, '45–'46, 71f; 40, '46–'47, 60f; *M-EBoismard, RB* 54, '47, 486f.—α. and φιλέω may be used interchangeably here (*cp.* the freq. interchange of synonyms elsewh. in the same chapter [βόσκειν—ποιμαίνειν, ἀρνία—προβάτια, ἐλκύειν—σύρειν]), but s. *KMcKay, NovT* 27, '85, 319–33; also φιλέω).—To God (*Dio Chrys.* 11 [12], 61; *Sextus* 442; 444; *ParJer* 6:6; LXX; *Philo, Post. Caini* 69; *Jos., Ant.* 7, 269; *TestBenj* 3:4; 4:5) *Mt* 22:37; *Mk* 12:30, 33; *Lk* 10:27 (all *Dt* 6:5); *Ro* 8:28; 1 *Cor* 2:9; 8:3. Of affection for the Creator *B* 19:2.

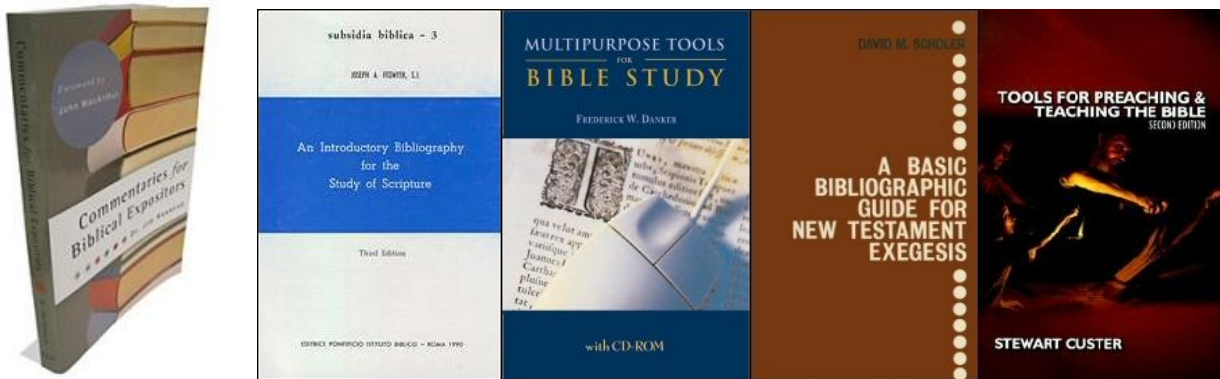
Note: If you are looking for an excellent resource for Greek Word studies, than [BDAG](#) is a must have!

how to
Study the Bible

WHAT WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

I get a lot of questions as to what are the best resources for studying. On the surface this seems like a simple question, however, when you take into account someone's theological preferences, their level of biblical training, and goal in studying you can begin to understand that this requires a thoughtful answer. Therefore, in upcoming eNewsletters we will explore each book of the Bible and list for you the various books available to you in the Logos Bible software format.

In the meantime, let me assist you in your book selection process by recommend the following resources:



These books include lists, descriptions and comments on a variety of books for Bible study and can be a great help in your book buying process.

Here is a sample:

Commentaries for Biblical Expositors by Jim Rosscup

I. GENESIS

In any case where commentaries on a book of the Pentateuch are sparse, the notes by W. H. Griffith-Thomas, *Through the Pentateuch Chapter By Chapter* (Eerdmans) will be a warm devotional help. Cf also Barnhouse, Boice, Calvin, etc. One may use the ICC work here by Skinner for a liberal treatment. Speiser's volume in the Anchor Bible series is also liberal but at times helpful in exegesis and background. Better commentaries old and recent from the conservative and other standpoints are:

Aalders, G. Charles. *Genesis (Bible Students Commentary)*. 2 volumes. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1981. 311 + 298 pp.

Zondervan has issued English translations of the top evangelical commentary in Dutch dating from the 1930's and 40's, a 62-volume set called *Korte Verklaring der Heilige Schrift*. It is designed for lay readers but is so well done in detail that it is of substantial benefit to teachers up to the seminary level too. It is Reformed, and in the English effort uses the NIV. Aalders is clear, deals with problems usually well, explains most verses quite adequately, and defends at length Mosaic authorship and the infallible truth in the Pentateuch (pp. 1-41, cf. p. 40). He sees 1:1 as an absolute statement of original creation, sees no gap in 1:2, is non-committal about the length of the days except to say these are not twenty-four-hour days. "Sons of God" in 6:2, 4 are humans, and Aalders devotes a detailed look at views. He views the flood as universal. The work is well worth the time.

Tools for Teaching and Preaching the Bible by Stewart Custer

Tools for Preaching & Teaching the Bible | An Introductory Bibliography for the Study of Scripture | Page 67

« | Part III: The Choice of Tools > Chapter 6: Reference Bibles | Article

CHAPTER 6 REFERENCE BIBLES

The serious Bible student should have more than one kind of reference Bible so that his thought will not always be channeled into the same mold by the same notes. Many times different reference Bibles will supplement one another. The cross references, notes, maps, outlines, and other helps in a good reference Bible will add a great deal to any believer's understanding of the Word of God. There are times, however, when the believer will need to turn to a text Bible—that is, a Bible with just the English text before him, with no notes or references in it at all. This almost always gives him new ideas and fresh insights into the meaning of the Word. But there is no denying that a good reference Bible is one of the most useful tools that a serious Bible student can have. The following list suggests some of the most helpful reference Bibles.

The International Inductive Study Bible (Eugene, Ore.: Harvest House, 1992, 1993, 2, 262 pp.) is perhaps the most delightful reference Bible to use that is now available. There is a detailed introduction that explains how to use the Bible, providing color examples of Bible marking (IISB-15 ff.), beautiful illustrations of the tabernacle and temples (IISB-34 ff.), and a time line chronology (IISB-42 ff.). Every biblical book begins with an introduction, and every chapter begins with a blank line on which the reader may write his theme for the chapter. The margins are wide enough for outlines and notes. Every book concludes with a blank page on which to record the theme, author, date, purpose, key words, and a chapter-by-chapter outline of the book. It is absolutely thrilling to study the Bible and to fill in the outlines and special studies from your personal study.

There are notes listing some of the gods of Egypt (p. 101) and offering insights on the tabernacle (pp. 129 ff.). Other notes describe the placement of the tabernacle furniture (pp. 189, 1984), the Jewish calendar (p. 200), the feasts of Israel (pp. 214–15), David's family tree (p. 516), Solomon's temple (p. 561), and prophetic points of history (p. 1094). The editors explain

Introductory Bibliography for Studying the of Scripture by Joseph Fitzmyer

An Introductory Bibliography for the Study of Scripture | Page 120

« | Chapter 13: Commentaries > B. Commentaries on the OT > 394. Old Testament Commentary Survey | Article

B. Commentaries on the OT

	394.	Goldingay, J., <i>Old Testament Commentary Survey</i> (2d ed.; Madison, WI: Theological Students Fellowship, 1981).
ATD	395.	"Das Alte Testament Deutsch (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht). This series began to appear in 1949, under the editorship of V. Hertrich and A. Weiser. It consists of 25 vols., of which the first is Weiser's <i>Einleitung</i> (§ 358). Several of the volumes have been revised and some even translated into English (e.g., M. Noth on Lev and Num in the OTL). The commentary is presented in running, almost essay-form, with a minimum of philology and great emphasis on theology. Some of the best German Protestant biblical scholars have contributed to it. Though not intended for specialists, this is a very useful commentary series. There is a NT counterpart, NTD (§ 413).
BKAT	396.	"Biblischer Kommentar: Altes Testament (Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener V.). This series began to appear in 1955 under the editorship of M. Noth and has been continued under the direction of S. Herrmann and H. W. Wolff. About half of the volumes have appeared, and some are presently being issued in fascicles. The editors and their collaborators are among the best in German Protestant OT scholarship. The series is intended to be a great technical commentary on the OT of critical, philological, and theological quality; form-criticism and tradition-history play a great part in the discussion of OT passages. The volumes have been highly praised. Some of the volumes have been translated in Hermeneia (§ 381).
CAT	397.	"Commentaire de l'Ancien Testament (Neuchâtel: Delachaux et Niestlé). This series, written by French-speaking Protestant interpreters (from France, Belgium, Switzerland, and Italy) and begun in 1963, is the counterpart of CNT (§ 407). The series aims at providing a commentary on various books of the OT that is at once historical-critical and theological, respective of the Christian canon, and intended for 'l'Eglise chrétienne.' The commentary is based on BHS (§ 117). The main editor of the series is R. Martin-Achard. Nine volumes or parts of volumes have appeared to date.
HAT	398.	"Handbuch zum Alten Testament (Tübingen: Mohr [Siebeck]). This series of compact commentaries was begun under the editorship of O. Eissfeldt, first appearing in 1937. The

how to
Study the Bible

GENESIS: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Note: This list is by no means exhaustive, but is intended as a guide to some of the resources available in Logos Bible Software. Some resources can be purchased separately while others can only be purchased with the full commentary set.

Exegetical Commentaries:

[Word Biblical Commentary, Vol 1](#) (chapters 1-15)

[Word Biblical Commentary, Vol 2](#) (chapters 16-50)

[New International Commentary on the OT \(chapters 1-17\)](#)

[New International Commentary on the OT \(chapters 18-50\)](#)

[ICC – Genesis](#)

Expositional Commentaries:

[New American Commentary, Vol 1](#) (chapters 1-11)

[New American Commentary, Vol 2](#) (chapter 12-50)

[Preaching the Word Series: Genesis](#)

[Pulpit Commentary: Genesis](#)

Introductory Commentaries:

Warren Weirsbe (Be Series) [Be Basic](#) (Genesis 1-11), [Be Obedient](#) (Genesis 12-25), [Be Authentic](#) (Genesis 26-50)

Create a collection of your Genesis Commentaries:

Collection Name: Genesis Resources

Collection Rule: subject:genesis

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

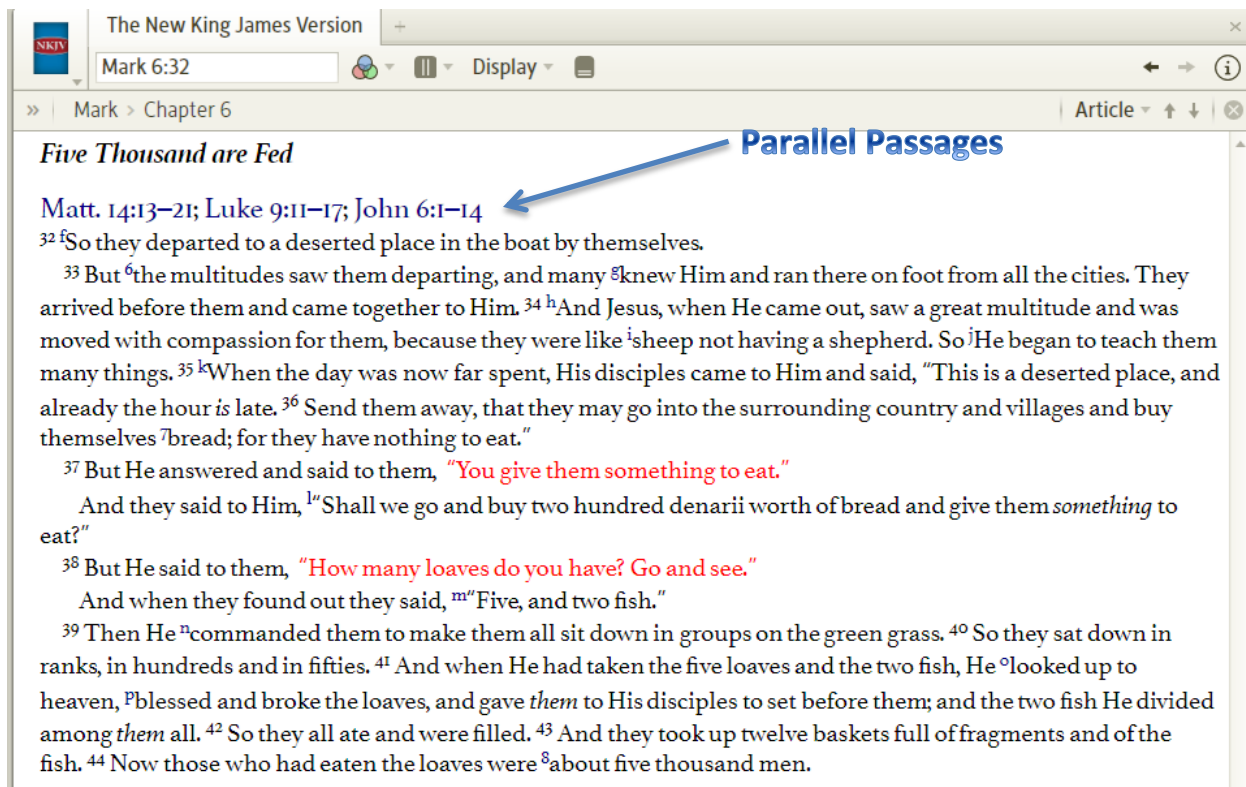
how to Study the Bible

THE GOSPELS: 4 IN 1

Whenever you study one book of the Gospels, it is vital that you check and see if that narrative is mentioned in the other Gospel narratives. There are several ways to do this.

HOW TO:

- 1 First, is to see if your Bible mentions the other passages. For example, the New King James Version does this:



The New King James Version

Mark 6:32

Mark > Chapter 6

Five Thousand are Fed

Parallel Passages

Matt. 14:13-21; Luke 9:11-17; John 6:1-14

³² So they departed to a deserted place in the boat by themselves.

³³ But ⁶the multitudes saw them departing, and many ⁸knew Him and ran there on foot from all the cities. They arrived before them and came together to Him. ³⁴ ^hAnd Jesus, when He came out, saw a great multitude and was moved with compassion for them, because they were like ⁱsheep not having a shepherd. So ^jHe began to teach them many things. ³⁵ ^kWhen the day was now far spent, His disciples came to Him and said, "This is a deserted place, and already the hour is late. ³⁶ Send them away, that they may go into the surrounding country and villages and buy themselves ⁷bread; for they have nothing to eat."

³⁷ But He answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat."

And they said to Him, ^l"Shall we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give them *something* to eat?"

³⁸ But He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see."

And when they found out they said, ^m"Five, and two fish."

³⁹ Then He ⁿcommanded them to make them all sit down in groups on the green grass. ⁴⁰ So they sat down in ranks, in hundreds and in fifties. ⁴¹ And when He had taken the five loaves and the two fish, He ^olooked up to heaven, ^pblessed and broke the loaves, and gave *them* to His disciples to set before them; and the two fish He divided among *them* all. ⁴² So they all ate and were filled. ⁴³ And they took up twelve baskets full of fragments and of the fish. ⁴⁴ Now those who had eaten the loaves were ⁸about five thousand men.

- 2 Second, check a Harmony of the Gospel or Synopsis of the Four Gospels type of books:



The New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update

Harmony of the Gospels

A Simplified Harmony of the Gospels

Mark 6:30-44

A Harmony of the Gospels > Part VIII: The Special Training of the Twelve in ... > Sec. 7: Feeding 5,000

Parallel Passages

Matthew 14:13-21

¹³ Now when Jesus heard about John, He withdrew from there in a boat to a secluded place by Himself; and when the people heard of this, they followed Him on foot from the cities. ¹⁴ When

Mark 6:30-44

³⁰ The apostles gathered together with Jesus; and they reported to Him all that they had done and taught. ³¹ And He said to them, "Come away by yourselves to a secluded

Luke 9:10-17

¹⁰ When the apostles returned, they gave an account to Him of all that they had done. Taking them with Him, He withdrew by Himself to a city called Bethsaida. ¹¹ But

John 6:1-14

¹ After these things Jesus went away to the other side of the Sea of Galilee (or Tiberias). ² A large crowd followed Him, because they saw the signs which He was performing on those who

The **NEW GOLD** STANDARD in Training!

③ Finally, check your passage guide, specifically the **Parallel Passage** section

The New King James Version
A Harmony of the Gospels
Synopsis of the Four Gospels
Passage Guide | Mark 6:30-44

+

×

Mark 6:30-44

Add

▼

▶

JESUS FEEDS THE FIVE THOUSAND (MARK 6:30-44)

▶

COMMENTARIES | All Commentaries

▶

MY CONTENT

▶

CROSS REFERENCES

▼

PARALLEL PASSAGES

A Harmony of the Synoptic Gospels for Historical and Critical Study

70. The Sending Forth of the Apostles

<i>Matthew</i>	<i>Mark</i>	<i>Luke</i>
9:36	6:34	—

78. The Feeding of the Five Thousand

<i>Matthew</i>	<i>Mark</i>	<i>Luke</i>
—	6:30-31	9:10
14:13	6:32-33	9:10-11
9:36	6:34	9:11
14:15	6:35-36	9:12
14:16-17	6:37	9:13
14:17	6:38	—
14:19	6:39-41	9:14-16
14:20	6:42-43	9:17
14:21	6:44	—

Records of the Life of Jesus

§ 56 Discourse on the Mission of the Disciples

<i>Matthew</i>	<i>Mark</i>	<i>Luke</i>
9:36	6:34	—

§ 59 Report of Associates on Their Tour

<i>Matthew</i>	<i>Mark</i>	<i>Luke</i>
—	6:30-31	9:10

§ 60 Teaching and Feeding the Multitude

<i>Matthew</i>	<i>Mark</i>	<i>Luke</i>
14:13	6:32-33	9:10-11
14:14	6:34	9:11
14:15	6:35-36	9:12
14:16-18	6:37-38	9:13
14:19	6:39-40	9:14-15
14:19	6:41	9:16

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, PART 5

We have been working through our prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help you explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **Remember the Glories of God, Examine Your Motives and Manner, Face Life through Scriptures, Love God** and in this eNewsletter we will explore “E” for **Experience the Sovereignty of God**.

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

You don't have to look far to see that the world is in trouble. Sin is wreaking havoc in the lives of those outside the church, and yes, even in the lives of individuals in the church. Besides trials that we can cause because of our own sin, there are those troubles/trials that come to each of us, those difficult seasons in life beyond our control such as disease, death, and various hardships that are not our fault. What can we personally do whether we are in the situation or someone else we love is? We persevere, we push forward, and yes we pray!

How do we **experience the sovereignty of God** in prayer? Consider those who have walked before men and with God in circumstances that may be similar or different to your own.

#5 Experience the Sovereignty of God

- A. **Martyrdom:** Stephen ([Acts 7:54-60](#))
- B. **Trials:** Paul ([2 Corinthians 11:22-33](#))
- C. **Persecution:** Loving Your Enemies ([Matthew 5:44-48](#))
- D. **War:** Hezekiah facing ([2 Chronicles 32:14-21](#))
- E. **Government:** Shadrach, Meshach & Abed-nego ([Daniel 3:12-30](#))
- F. **Laying Down Your Life:** Christ ([Matthew 26:36-44](#))
- G. **Fear:** Silent Prayer of Nehemiah ([Nehemiah 1:11-2:4](#))
- H. **Loss:** Job ([Job 1-2](#))

Other verses to consider explore: [Acts 16:25](#), [Romans 8:28-39](#), [1 Corinthians 10:13](#), [1 Corinthians 10:31](#).

Note: For more on prayer, purchase my training CDs. See the ad above, or CTRL+Click on the image to learn more, or visit [LearnLogos.com](#).

➤ **Get THREE CDs for the BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

*** 50% Off**
Limited time offer for
Bible Study Magazine
readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, PART 6

We have been working through our prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help you explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **R**emember the Glories of God, **E**xamine Your Motives and Manner, **F**ace Life through Scriptures, **L**ove God, **E**xperience the Sovereignty of God and now let's explore "**C**" for **C**oncern Yourself with the Kingdom.

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

Have you ever wondered why God has left you on earth after He saved you? There are many reasons, but the principle reason can be found in [John 17](#), during Jesus' prayer to the Father before His death. We have been "left behind" to be sent into the world to proclaim the Gospel. We can see this idea repeated in the [Matthew 28:16-20](#) and again in [Acts 1:1-8](#).

If in your prayer time, you neglect to concern yourself with the kingdom of God, then you have failed to focus on your primary mission. There are many ways to pray and participate in serving our Lord and His Kingdom, especially in prayer. May the following guide your prayers and endeavors for the greatest work of service with your time, talents, and treasures.

#6 Experience the Sovereignty of God

- A. **Kingdom's Work** - Opening Doors for the Gospel ([Colossians 4:3](#), [Ephesians 6:19](#))
- B. **Kingdom's Workers** - ([Romans 15:30-33](#), [Acts 6:6](#))
- C. **Intercessory Prayer** - Jesus' Example ([Luke 22:31-32](#), [John 17:1-26](#))
- D. **Kingdom's Enemies** - ([Acts 7:59-60](#), [Matthew 5:44-48](#), [Luke 23:34](#))



how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

R.E.F.L.E.C.T. ON THE GLORY OF PRAYER, PART 6

We have been working through are prayer acronym R.E.F.L.E.C.T. to help you explore and enhance your prayer life. We began with **R**emember the Glories of God, **E**xamine Your Motives and Manner, **F**ace Life through Scriptures, **L**ove God, **E**xperience the Sovereignty of God, **C**oncern Yourself with the Kingdom and now let's explore our last category "**T**" for **T**ake Every Opportunity.

Remember the Glories of God

Examine Your Motives and Manner

Face Life through Scriptures

Love God

Experience the Sovereignty of God

Concern Yourself with the Kingdom

Take Every Opportunity

Bad habits are hard to break and can undermine your effectiveness, but righteous habits can help you grow and augment your service in the kingdom. As the old adage goes, "if it is worth doing, it's worth doing it right!" And this seems a fitting way to end our short journey on the topic of prayer. It's not enough to pray now and then nor even pray for certain seasons of our life, but to pray without ceasing! Yes that is our goal. May this last discussion encourage you to take every opportunity to pray to the Father!

#6 Experience the Sovereignty of God

- A. **Pray without Ceasing** - ([1 Thessalonians 5:16-17](#))
- B. **Persevere in Prayer**- ([Ephesians 6:18-19](#), [1 Thessalonians 5:14](#))
- C. **Future:** Hope in Christ ([Jude 1:20-21](#))
- D. **Present:** Remembering your days are Short & Limited- ([James 4:14-15](#), [Job 14:5](#))
- E. **Past:** Remember the Cross ([2 Corinthians 2:14-17](#), [2 Corinthians 5:21](#))

In closing, these 7 principles are not exhaustive, but they can provide a helpful framework for Glorifying God through prayer! What an amazing opportunity we have! May your prayers be a sweet aroma to our Lord and Savior! May you R.E.F.L.E.C.T. often in prayer, reflecting God's Word's, Reflecting Christ thoughts, Reflecting God's Character, and Reflecting His ways!

In the days ahead, think about the significance of prayer... Consider what it would be like without prayer? What if Moses never prayed for sinning Israel for 40 years? What if Hannah had not prayed for a son and there was no Samuel? What if Stephen did not pray before Saul? What if Christ did not pray for Peter when Satan wanted to sift Peter? What if Christ did not pray for the Church? But these prayers were prayed and we can see the glory of God on display! May you be unwavering in your prayer! May you pray noble and bold great prayers that will glorify God!

Conclusion: God will use us, that much is certain, may He use our obedience rather than our disobedience...may we be found solemnly praying rather than sinfully playing.

how to Preach

HOW TO INVOLVE THE FIVE SENSES IN YOUR TEACHING AND PREACHING OUTLINES

Preaching and teaching before an audience requires giftedness, skill, and practice. In this day and age our audience has blue-ray, CD quality audio, iMax movie screens, 3D movies, computer animation and special effects that blur the lines between reality and fantasy. How can any teacher of God's truth compete against such technology and Hollywood budgets in the millions and the staff of thousands!

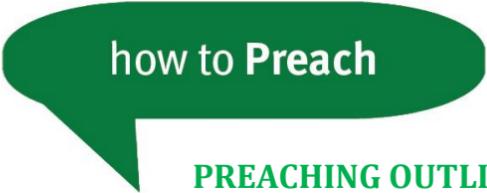
First, we must remember that God's Word is not dependent on any of these man made contrivances. Second, the Holy Spirit can reach a place where neither man nor technology can access, the spirit of the man, the very thoughts and intentions of his heart. Therefore, when building outlines for teaching and preaching don't rely on the aforementioned devices but employ the shared experience of you and your audience from the Biblical text.

Let's review the five senses: **See ★ Touch ★ Taste ★ Hear ★ Smell**

Example of a **Sensory** Outline

1. Arriving at the Praetorium (Matthew 27:27-28) [See]
2. Piercing Crown of Thorns (Matthew 27:29a) [Touch]
3. Shouting & Mocking (Matthew 27:29b) [Hear]
4. The Humiliating Spitting and Beating (Matthew 27:30) [Smell & Taste]

Finally, when using the five senses, attempt to stir and conjure up their imagination with their memories, their life experiences, their real emotions, and their thoughts using these five senses.

how to Preach**PREACHING OUTLINES: THE APPLICATION OUTLINE, PART 2/4**

We are continuing our exploration of preaching outlines and the various structures one can employ for a sermon. In this eNewsletter I would like to explore the **application outline**. The purpose of this outline is to build an outline where the goal is action.

Standard Application Outline Structure

- I. **Introduction** – Set the Stage for the Problem (Can be in the form of a question)
- II. **State the Problem:** Man-Made Solutions and how they fall short
- III. **State the Solution:** God's Solution(s) and how they work (Good Exegesis, no proof texting allowed)
- IV. **State the Principle** (Make the concept transferable and applicable to the widest audience possible)
 - a. Provide a Scriptural Example of Victory in Obedience
 - b. Provide a Scriptural Example of Defeat in Disobedience
- V. **Conclusion by Encouragement & Prayer**

It is important to note, that application must first be built on the foundation of good Bible study and exegesis. To exhort your audience without first proving that God has actually commanded such an action is **inappropriate**! So guard yourself against being too legalistic saying too much or saying too little and being too liberal.

If you are looking for examples of this structure, [Rick Warren](#) is the most notable preacher using this format.

how to Preach

PREACHING OUTLINES: THE STORY OUTLINE, PART 3/4

Most of the Bible follows a story structure. There is a plot, a good character, an evil character, trials, redemption and so much more! Most likely your favorite section in the Bible is part of a greater story. In this section, let me introduce you to the **Story Outline** preaching template. The purpose of this outline is to build an outline where the goal is communicate God's truth through a story structure.

By the way, it is very important to remember that when the Biblical text has a story structure, it is advantageous to follow that story structure in the pulpit. It is not recommended that you take every passage, for example, an epistle of Paul and turn that into a story every time. Consider this template as another tool in the tool box of preaching options.

Standard Application Outline Structure

I. Title and Subtitle

Note: Very important to make it sound like a story, consider browsing through Amazon for titling ideas. Additionally, be mindful that the title is to draw interest and not spoil the story.

II. The Scene

Note: Fill in the details, establish a background, prepare the audience by utilizing the five senses, and ready them for the introduction of the main character and the plot.

III. The Major Character(s)

Note: Provide enough information to understand who they are, how the audience can relate to them, and identify their purpose in the story.

IV. The Plot

Note: This may be 1 - [wo]man vs. nature, 2 - [wo]man vs. man, 3 - [wo]man vs. the environment, 4 - [wo]man vs. machines/technology, 5 - [wo]man vs. the supernatural, 6 - [wo]man vs. self, 7 - [wo]man vs. god/religion

V. The Climax

Note: This is a conflict where tension is created and demands a solution. Furthermore, the climax should reveal the sin of man and his foolish thinking.

VI. The Solution

Note: Here we show the reward for faithful, holy obedience to God and the punishment for sin and disobedience. It's important to show grace, forgiveness, and other important themes of the Bible.

VI. The Close

Note: Provide an opportunity to exhort or offer a life principle rooted in the scriptures so that the audience can remember the story and the life lesson. Make it memorable!

There are two preachers that really have mastered this structure: [Eugene Lowry](#) and [Calvin Miller](#).

Finally, here are some additional links to help you dig deeper into story telling.

<http://www.musik-therapie.at/PederHill/Structure&Plot.htm>

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dramatic_structure

Q & A

“ONE IS THE LONELIEST NUMBER” SAYS SONGWRITER GEORGE JONES...

Q1: John, what is a “Hapax Legomenon”

A1: This is a technical term to describe the phenomenon when a word only appears once in an author’s writing. If you are doing a word study and you come across one of these, your job just got really difficult. You will need to work even harder to determine its meaning and may even have to go outside the Bible to determine how the word has been traditionally used and understood.

Q2: Is there a way to search for “hapax legomenons” in the NT?

A2: Not directly. But I do have one suggestion. (If you know a better way, please email me at tips@learnlogos.com)

HOW TO:

❶ If you open the Greek Lexicon [BDAG](#) and use the basic search to engine to search for the word **hapax** you will find most, but not all of the NT “hapax legomenons”.

The screenshot shows the 'Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New Testament' search interface. The search bar contains the text 'hapax'. Below the search bar, it indicates '99 results in 34 articles (0.32 sec)'. The interface includes tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax', with 'Basic' currently selected.

Q3: Is there a way to search for “hapax legomenons” in the OT?

A3: Not directly. But let me offer this suggestion (If you know a better way, please email me at tips@learnlogos.com)

HOW TO:

❶ If you open the Hebrew Lexicon [HALOT](#) and use the basic search to engine to search for the word **hapax** you will find

The screenshot shows the 'Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New Testament' search interface, but it is set to search the Hebrew Lexicon (HALOT). The search bar contains the text 'hapax legomenon'. Below the search bar, it indicates '131 results in 129 articles (0.37 sec)'. The interface includes tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax', with 'Basic' currently selected.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Q3: Is there a way to back up Logos 4 and avoid the huge download?

A3: Yes, there are some limitations and some downloading will be necessary.

HOW TO:

❶ PC: http://wiki.logos.com/Quick_Installation_onto_multiple_computers

❷ MAC: http://wiki.logos.com/Quick_Installation_onto_Multiple_Macs

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter! tips@learnlogos.com

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

Welcome! More than a Manual...

If you like this eNewsletter let us know – Click

Now let's get ready to **LearnLogos!**

Note: You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about all available training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks and Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO LearnLogos.com

RECENT NEWS

#1 More Webinars Released! ~~Only \$9.99~~ **\$4.99** for each download.

- [Click for Details](#)
 - Inductive Bible Study for Logos 4 (6 Webinars Available)
 - Studying the Bible with Logos 4 (6 Webinars Available)
 - Preparing Sermons with Logos 4 (5 Webinars Available)

Note: Most webinars are 1 ½ hours in length! Amazing value! [Click here to buy now.](#)

#2 Training CDs – You can **now download** this training **immediately!**

[50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) Only \$39.99

#3 Upcoming Live Webinars

NOTE: SCHEDULE CHANGE – [See New Schedule](#)

- Mon, April 25, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4, **Session 6**
 - [Click to Signup:](#) Performing Effective Word Studies, Part 2, Q&A
- Mon, May 2, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4, **Session 7**
 - [Click to Signup:](#) Find cross references/Checking with Commentaries, Q &A
- Mon, May 16th, 9-10:30 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4, **Session 7**
 - [Click to Signup:](#) Find cross references/Checking with Commentaries, Q &A

➤ Get **THREE** CDs for the **BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

50% Off
Limited time offer for
Bible Study Magazine
readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

Alert: **FREE BOOK**

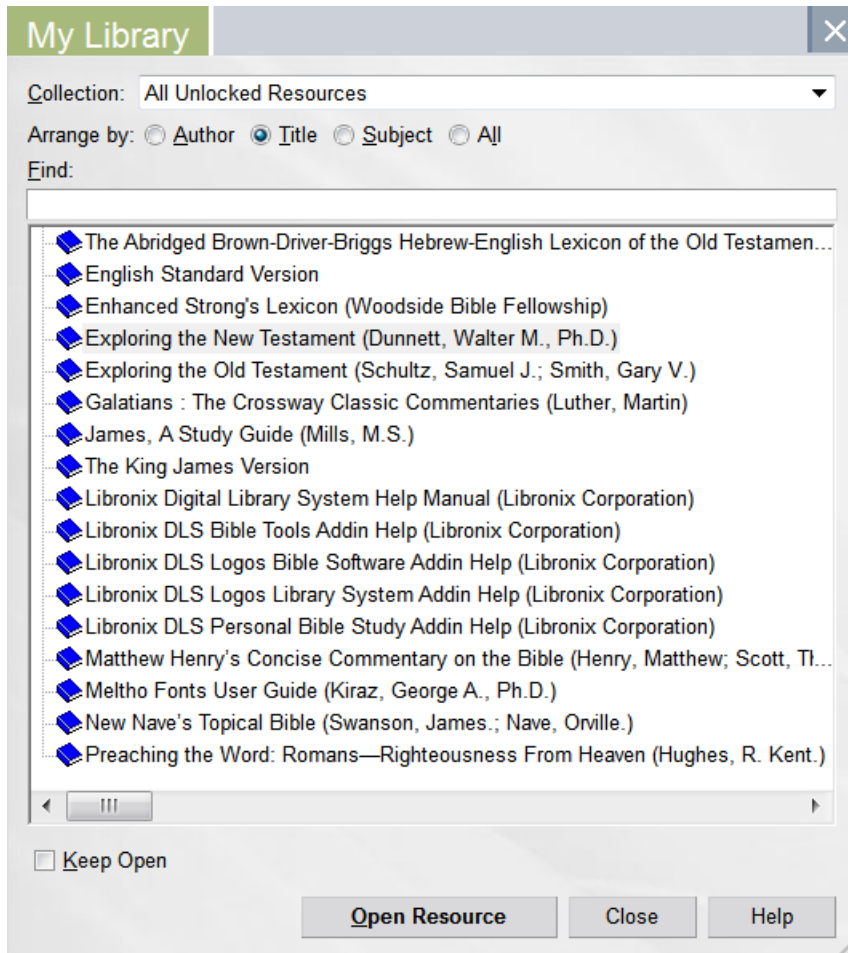
FREE BOOK PREVIEW

If you own an ESV Bible then you might enjoy some extra books. Click here to find out more from ESV:

<http://www.gnpceb.org/freecd/>

See the list below of free resources included in the install. (This will be a Logos 3 installation)

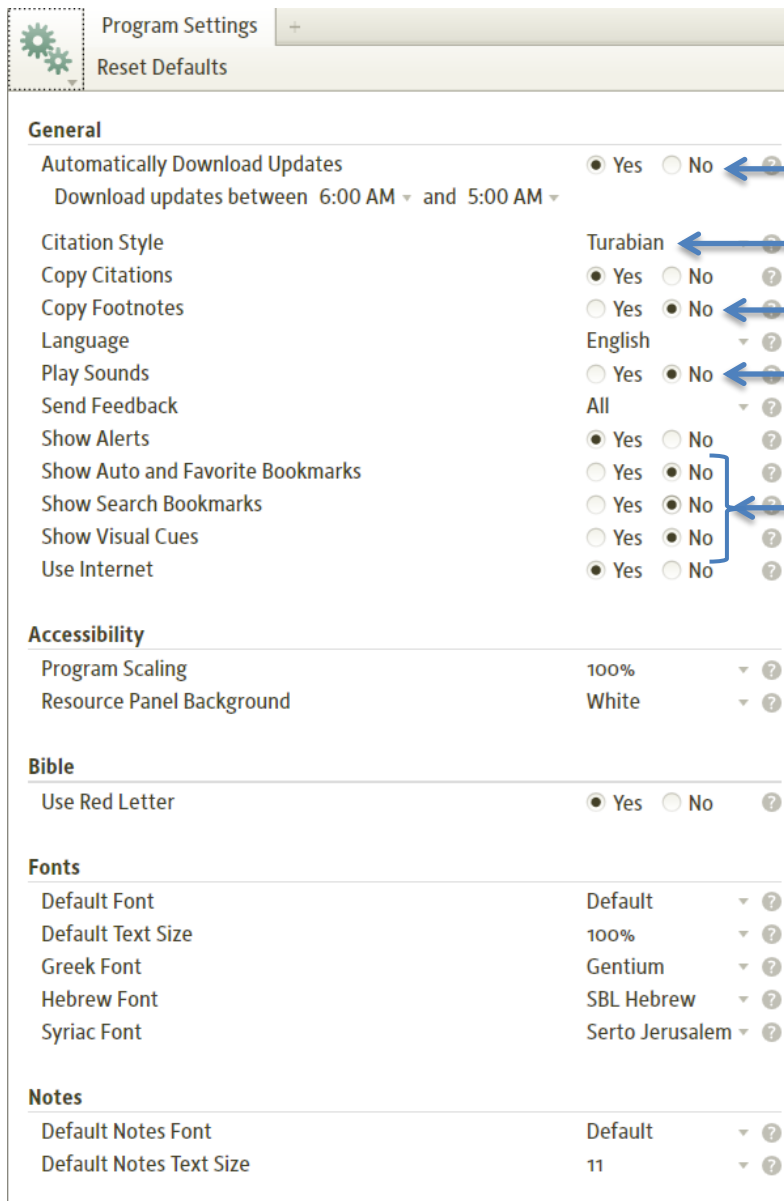
Note: To install these in Logos 4, go to the command box and type: **Scan C:\Program Files (x86)\Libronix DLS\Resources**



Optimizing LOGOS 4

PROGRAM SETTINGS

Program Settings is an often overlooked tool than can help optimize your Logos 4 experience. Here are my recommend settings:



The screenshot shows the 'Program Settings' window with the following sections and settings:

- General**
 - Automatically Download Updates: ☒ Yes ☐ No
 - Download updates between: 6:00 AM and 5:00 AM
 - Citation Style: Turabian
 - Copy Citations: ☒ Yes ☐ No
 - Copy Footnotes: ☐ Yes ☒ No
 - Language: English
 - Play Sounds: ☐ Yes ☒ No
 - Send Feedback: All
 - Show Alerts: ☒ Yes ☐ No
 - Show Auto and Favorite Bookmarks: ☐ Yes ☒ No
 - Show Search Bookmarks: ☐ Yes ☒ No
 - Show Visual Cues: ☐ Yes ☒ No
 - Use Internet: ☒ Yes ☐ No
- Accessibility**
 - Program Scaling: 100%
 - Resource Panel Background: White
- Bible**
 - Use Red Letter: ☒ Yes ☐ No
- Fonts**
 - Default Font: Default
 - Default Text Size: 100%
 - Greek Font: Gentium
 - Hebrew Font: SBL Hebrew
 - Syriac Font: Serto Jerusalem
- Notes**
 - Default Notes Font: Default
 - Default Notes Text Size: 11

❶ Pick a time after you go to bed.

Note: Be sure your computer and Logos 4 are left on.

❷ In School? Choose your citation style.

❸ Keep those footnotes from appearing at the bottom

❹ Keep Logos quiet when you start the program

❺ These are not that necessary

Prayer in LOGOS 4

WHO PRAYED IN THE OT - USING SYNTAX

HOW TO:

- 1 Let's go to Genesis 20:7
- 2 Right click on the word "pray"
- 3 Choose "copy" from the menu at the left.

Click Here

Selection pray
Reference Genesis 20:7
Manuscript יתפלל
Lemma פלל 2
Morph VtMJSM3
Hebrew Strong's Strong's Hebrew #6419

Look up
Look up in a new tab
Power Lookup
Search this resource
Search all open resources
Search entire library
Morph Search: 2:פלל
Morph Search: 2:פלל@VtMJSM3
Copy
Bible Word Study
A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old...
Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic...
Enhanced Brown-Driver-Briggs Hebrew and English...
The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the Old...
New International Dictionary of Old Testament...

- 4 Choose "Search"



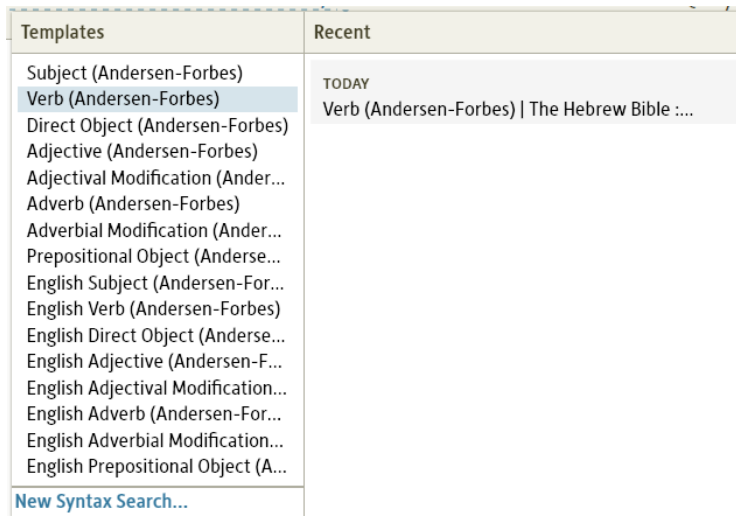
- 5 Choose "Syntax"

Basic Bible Morph **Syntax**

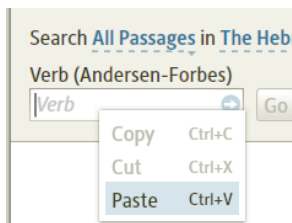
- 6 Choose the following: **Choose These Options**

Search All Passages in The Hebrew Bible : Andersen-Forbes Phrase Marker Analysis for Query ▾

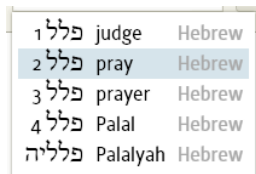
7 Choose “verb (Andersen-Forbes)”



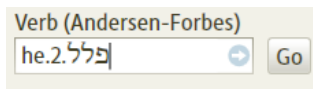
8 Right click on the box labeled **verb** and choose “Paste” from the menu



9 Choose “pray” from the menu



10 Click “Go”



Get THREE CDs for the BEST VALUE!
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)

Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)
\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99) * **50% off**

Best Practices (2-CD set)
\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY
LearnLogos.com/discount
Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

NOW YOU CAN GET THE VERY MOST FROM LOGOS BIBLE SOFTWARE 4

Customer testimonials describe LearnLogos training as...

- “thrilling”
- “effective”
- “excellent”
- “satisfied”
- “easy”
- “incredible”
- “affordable”
- “the best”
- “comprehensive”
- “fun”
- “best value”
- “high quality”

DON'T JUST TAKE HOME TRAINING. TAKE HOME THE TRAINER.

John has trained tens of thousands of people through his training videos and training workshops. As a former employee of Logos Bible Software, he developed and pioneered their first ever online training videos for Logos 3. John has trained notable people like **Kay Arthur**, **Mark Dever**, **Irwin Lutzer**, and **John Piper**!

John Fallahee, MBA, M.Div.
Your Personal Training Assistant



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Let's examine the search results. You have found every verse with a subject that has the verb "pray".

▼ SYNTAX SEARCH 79 results (1.06 sec)

ESV ✕

AFPMA

Ge 20: 7 וְעַתָּה הָשִׁב אֶשְׁת־הָאִישׁ כִּי־נָבִיא הוּא וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל בְּעֶדְךָ וַחַיָּה וְאִם־אֵינְךָ מְשִׁיב דָּע כִּי־מוֹת תָּמוּת אֵתָּה וְכָל־אֲשֶׁר־לְךָ:

17 וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל אַבְרָהָם אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִים וַיִּרְפָּא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־אֲבִימֶלֶךְ וְאֶת־אִשְׁתּוֹ וַאֲמַהֲתָיו וַיֵּלְדוּ:

Nu 11: 2 וַיִּצְעַק הָעָם אֶל־מֹשֶׁה וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל מֹשֶׁה אֶל־יְהוָה וַתִּשְׁקַע הָאֵשׁ:

21: 7 וַיָּבֹא הָעָם אֶל־מֹשֶׁה וַיֹּאמְרוּ חָטָאנוּ כִּי־דִבַּרְנוּ בַּיהוָה וּבָךְ הַתְּפִלָּה אֶל־יְהוָה וַיְסֹר מֵעֲלֵינוּ אֶת־הַנָּחָשׁ וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל מֹשֶׁה בְּעַד הָעָם:

English Standard Version

Now then, return the man's wife, for he is a prophet, so that he will pray for you, and you shall live. But if you do not return her, know that you shall surely die, you and all who are yours."

Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech, and also healed his wife and female slaves so that they bore children.

Then the people cried out to Moses, and Moses prayed to the LORD, and the fire died down.

And the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned, for we have spoken against the LORD and against you. Pray to the LORD, that he take away the serpents from us." So Moses prayed for the people.

50% Off Interactive Training



100+ Videos
10+ Hours of Training
Free Updates
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

Distant Education Class



Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

Click One, Click Both!

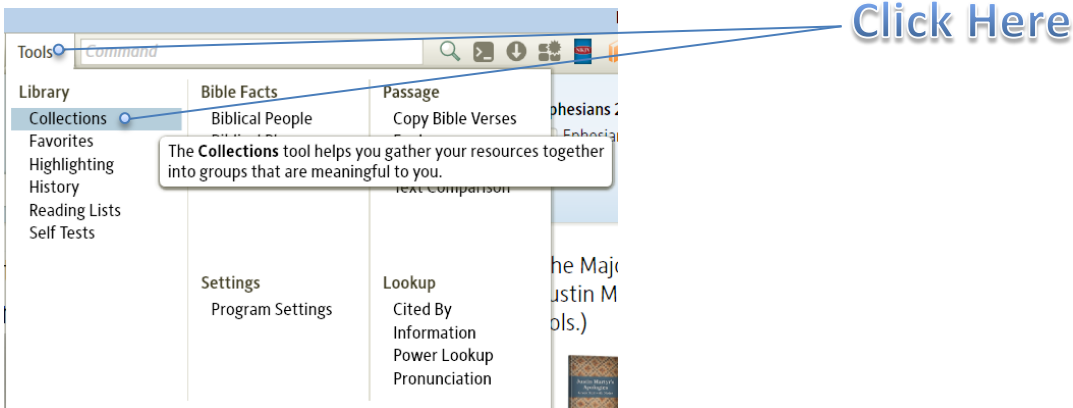
Historical/Theological Background

THE RESURRECTION: SEARCHING APOLOGETIC RESOURCES

Apologetic resources can be a great way to research historical and theological backgrounds for the passage you are studying. Let's create and search a collection and find background information on the resurrection.

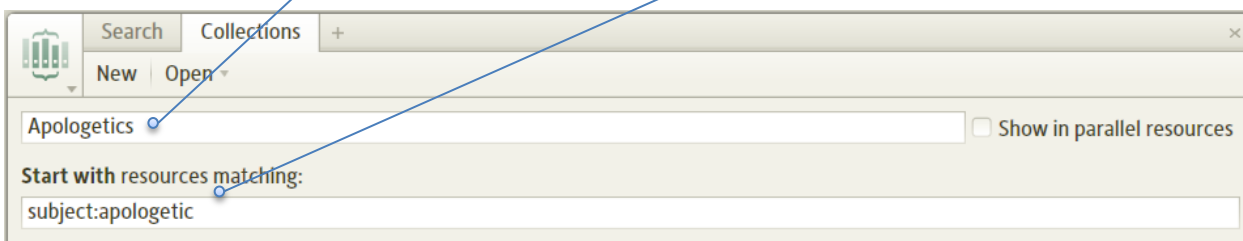
HOW TO:

- 1 Let's create a collection
- 2 Choose from the main menu **Tools** and then choose **Collections**



- 3 Let's name the collection **Apologetics** and use the following rule: **subject:apologetic**

See below for more information.



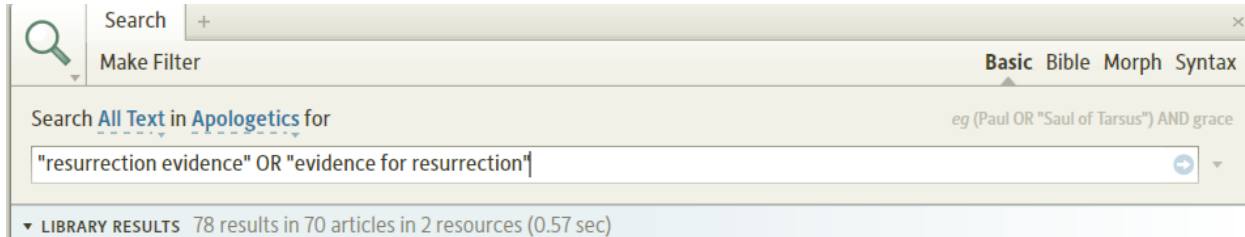
Note: See the end of this section for my list of recommended books on apologetics.

- 4 Now let's click "Search"



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- ⑤ Type the following phrase in the search box “**resurrection evidence**” OR “**evidence for resurrection**”
- ⑥ Press the **enter key** or click the white arrow in the blue circle at the right and examine your search results.



Search

Make Filter Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search All Text in Apologetics for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

LIBRARY RESULTS 78 results in 70 articles in 2 resources (0.57 sec)

Here is my bibliography of apologetic resources

Recommended Apologetic Books for Logos Bible Software 4

[Answering Islam: The Crescent in Light of the Cross](#)

Geisler, Norman L. and Abdul Saleeb. *Answering Islam : The Crescent in Light of the Cross*. 2nd ed. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 2002.

[Answers to Tough Questions](#)

McDowell, Josh and Don Douglas Stewart. *Answers to Tough Questions*. Nashville: T. Nelson Publishers, 1993.

[Apologetics](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and William Edgar. *Christian Apologetics*. 2nd ed. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 2003.

[The Apologetics Study Bible: Real Questions, Straight Answers, Stronger Faith](#)

Cabal, Ted, Chad Owen Brand, E. Ray Clendenen et al. *The Apologetics Study Bible: Real Questions, Straight Answers, Stronger Faith*. Nashville, TN: Holman Bible Publishers, 2007.

[The Articles of Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *The Articles of Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[Baker Encyclopedia of Christian Apologetics](#)

Geisler, Norman L. *Baker Encyclopedia of Christian Apologetics*. Baker reference library. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1999.

[The Bridge of History Over the Gulf of Time](#)

Cooper, Thomas. *The Bridge of History Over the Gulf of Time*. 2d ed. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1871.

[Choosing My Religion](#)

Sproul, R.C. *Choosing My Religion*. electronic ed. Grand Rapids: Baker Books, 2000.

[Christian History Magazine—Issue 75: G.K. Chesterton: Prolific Writer & Apologist](#)

Christian History Magazine-Issue 75: G.K. Chesterton: Prolific Writer & Apologist. Carol Stream, IL: Christianity Today.

[Christian History Magazine—Issue 88: C.S. Lewis: Pointing People to Reality](#)

Christian History Magazine-Issue 88: C.S. Lewis: Pointing People to Reality. Carol Stream, IL: Christianity Today, 2005.

[Christian History Magazine—Issue 96: The Gnostic Hunger for Secret Knowledge](#)

Christian History Magazine-Issue 96: The Gnostic Hunger for Secret Knowledge. Carol Stream, IL: Christianity Today, 2007.

[A Christian Theory of Knowledge](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *A Christian Theory of Knowledge*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 1969.

[Christianity on the Offense](#)

Story, Dan. *Christianity on the Offense : Responding to the Beliefs and Assumptions of Spiritual Seekers*. Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Publications, 1998.

[The Cornelius Van Til Audio Library](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *The Cornelius Van Til Audio Library*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[Defending Your Faith](#)

Story, Dan. *Defending Your Faith*. Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Publications, 1997.

[The Defense of the Faith—Abridged Edition](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *The Defense of the Faith*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Philadelphia, 1955.

[The Defense of the Faith—First Edition](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *The Defense of the Faith*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Philadelphia, 1955.

[The Dutch Articles of Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *The Dutch Articles of Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[Engaging the Closed Minded](#)

Story, Dan. *Engaging the Closed Minded : Presenting Your Faith to the Confirmed Unbeliever*. Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Publications, 1999.

[Evidence and Truth](#)

Morgan, Robert J. *Evidence and Truth : Foundations for Christian Truth*. Biblical essentials series. Wheaton, IL: Crossway Books, 2003.

[Exploring the Attributes of God](#)

Exploring the Attributes of God. Iowa Falls, IA: World Bible Publishers, Inc., 1989-.

[The Genesis Factor](#)

Helm, David R. and Jon M. Dennis. *The Genesis Factor : Probing Life's Big Questions*. Wheaton, Ill.: Crossway Books, 2001.

[The God of Hope—Sermons and Addresses](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *The Hope of God-Sermons and Addresses*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 1978.

[Handbook of Christian Apologetics](#)

Kreeft, Peter and Ronald K. Tacelli. *Handbook of Christian Apologetics : Hundreds of Answers to Crucial Questions*. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1994.

[I Don't Have Enough Faith to Be an Atheist](#)

Geisler, Norman L. and Frank Turek. *I Don't Have Enough Faith to Be an Atheist*. Wheaton, Ill.: Crossway Books, 2004.

[If There's a God, Why Are There Atheists?](#)

Sproul, R.C. (Robert Charles). *If There's a God, Why Are There Atheists? : Why Atheists Believe in Unbelief*. Revised edition of the book *The psychology of Atheism*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, 1978.

[Josh McDowell's Handbook on Apologetics](#)

McDowell, Josh. *Josh McDowell's Handbook on Apologetics*. electronic ed. Nashville: Thomas Nelson, 1997.

[Lifeviews: Make a Christian Impact on Culture and Society](#)

Sproul, R.C. *Lifeviews : Understanding the Ideas That Shape Society Today*. electronic ed. Old Tappan, NJ: F.H. Revell, 2000.

[Orthodoxy](#)

Chesterton, G. K. *Orthodoxy*. Bellingham, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc., 2010.

[The Pamphlets, Tracts, and Offprints of Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *The Pamphlets, Tracts, and Offprints of Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

[The Protestant Doctrine of Scripture](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *The Protestant Doctrine of Scripture*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 1967.

[Reasonable Faith](#)

Craig, William Lane. *Reasonable Faith : Christian Truth and Apologetics*. Rev. ed. Wheaton, Ill.: Crossway Books, 1994.

[The Reformed Pastor and the Defense of Christianity & My Credo](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *The Reformed Pastor and the Defense of Christianity and My Credo*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 1980.

[Reincarnation and Christianity](#)

Morey, Robert A. *Reincarnation and Christianity*. Minneapolis, Minn.: Bethany Fellowship, 1980.

[Reviews by Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *Reviews by Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[The School of Biblical Evangelism](#)

Cameron, Kirk and Ray Comfort. *The School of Biblical Evangelism : 101 Lessons : How to Share Your Faith Simply, Effectively, Biblically-- the Way Jesus Did*. Gainesville, Fla.: Bridge-Logos Publishers, 2004.

[Semper Reformandum: Studies in Honour of Clark H. Pinnock](#)

Porter, Stanley E. and Anthony R. Cross. *Semper Reformandum : Studies in Honour of Clark H. Pinnock*. Milton Keynes, UK: Paternoster, 2003.

[The Sermons and Addresses of Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *The Sermons and Addresses of Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[A Survey of Christian Epistemology](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *A Survey of Christian Epistemology*. The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company: Phillipsburg, NJ, 1969.

[The Truth about Worldviews](#)

Eckman, James P. *The Truth About Worldviews : A Biblical Understanding of Worldview Alternatives*. Wheaton Ill.: Crossway Books, 2004.

[Unpublished Manuscripts of Cornelius Van Til](#)

Van Til, Cornelius and Eric H. Sigward. *Unpublished Manuscripts of Cornelius Van Til*. Electronic ed. Labels Army Company: New York, 1997.

[When Cultists Ask: A Popular Handbook on Cultic Misinterpretations](#)

Geisler, Norman L. and Ron Rhodes. *When Cultists Ask : A Popular Handbook on Cultic Misinterpretations*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1997.

[When Skeptics Ask: A Handbook on Christian Evidences](#)

Geisler, Norman L. and Ronald M. Brooks. *When Skeptics Ask*. Wheaton, Ill.: Victor Books, 1990.

[Who Do You Say That I Am?](#)

Van Til, Cornelius. *Who Do You Say That I Am?*. Phillipsburg, NJ: The Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company, 1975.

[Why I Am a Christian: Leading Thinkers Explain Why They Believe](#)

Geisler, Norman L. and Paul K. Hoffman. *Why I Am a Christian : Leading Thinkers Explain Why They Believe*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 2001.

[Why One Way? Defending an Exclusive Claim in an Inclusive World](#)

MacArthur, John. *Why One Way? : Defending an Exclusive Claim in an Inclusive World*. Nashville: W Pub. Group, 2002.

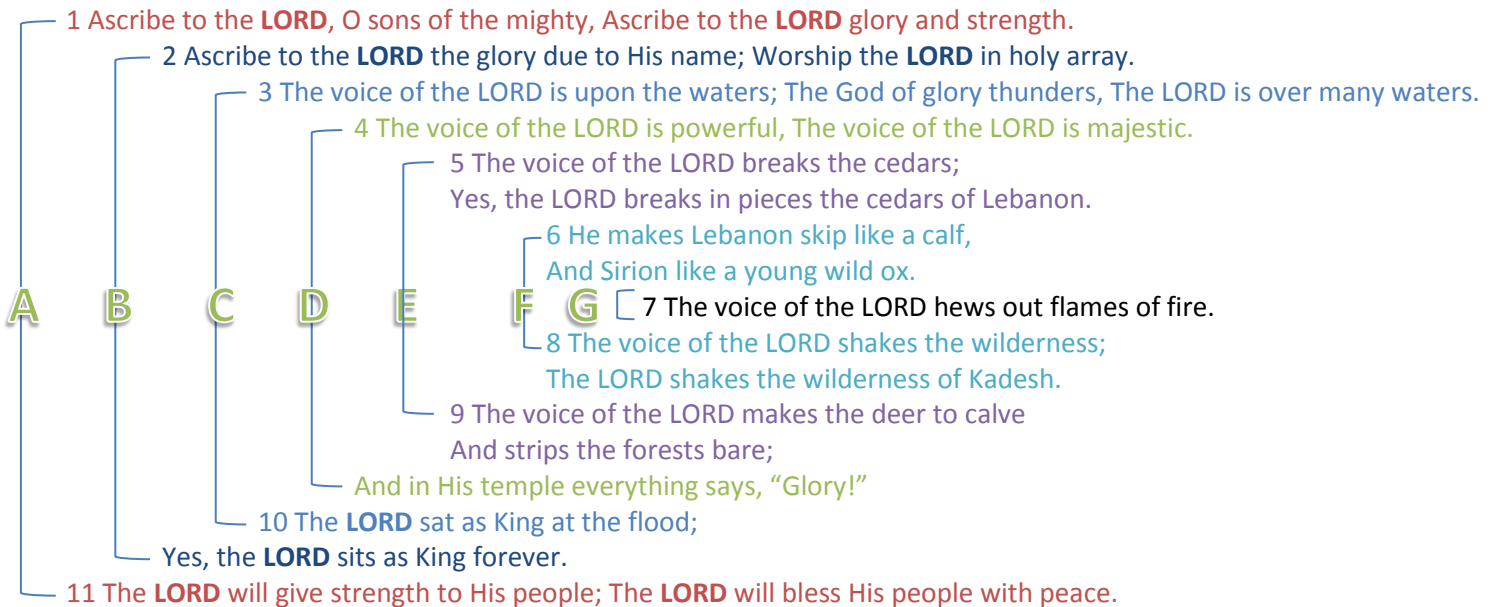
Outlining

CHIASM: “Winners never quit and quitters never win”

If you have spent any time in the Psalms, you have most likely have seen and read a Psalm with a “**Chiastic**” structure. Although, this word can be hard to pronounce, it is important to observe to determine an important interpretative point in a passage. The best definition I have seen defines chiasm as follows: An inverted parallelism between two or more (synonymously or antithetically) corresponding words, phrases, or units of thought.¹ Let’s look at the example above:

Winners (A)
Never Quit (B)
Quitters (B1)
Never Win (A1)

In this example, we have opposites contrasted or antithetical examples. Here we have contrasted winners and quitters. Chiastic structure can take place at the sentence level, paragraph level, or even chapter level! Let’s look at Psalm 29:



Note: Notice the use of Lord 4x in verses 1-2, 10-11

By discovering a chiastic structure, you can parallel ideas to help you interpret. To learn more about chiastic structures, check out the following article in the Theological Journals:

- (1) [Chiastic Psalms: A Study In The Mechanics Of Semitic Poetry In Psalms 1-50](#)
- (2) [Chiastic Psalms: A Study In The Mechanics Of Semitic Poetry In Psalms 51-100](#)
- (3) [Chiastic Psalms: A Study In The Mechanics Of Semitic Poetry In Psalms 101-150](#)

¹ *Chafer Theological Seminary Journal Volume 9, 2* (Fountain Valley, CA: Chafer Theological Seminary, 2003), 19.

Word Study

MORPHOLOGY & MOOD: DEGREES OF DOUBT

If you attended any of the Session 5 [webinars](#), we overviewed an important concept “morphological mood” and “degrees of doubt”. Here is a handy chart to refresh your memory:

NO DOUBT (ACTION DID OCCUR)	SOME DOUBT	A LOT OF DOUBT	NO DOUBT (ACTION DID NOT OCCUR)
Indicative	Subjunctive	Optative	Imperative (command)

As you can see in the chart above, as we move from the indicative mood toward the optative mood, our doubt increases whether the action occurred. In fact, when we get to the imperative, there is no doubt the action did not occur. If you have Wallace’s Grammar ([I highly recommend this book](#)), there is an excellent [discussion](#) on this topic. He add three important concepts:

*Mood is the morphological feature of a verb that a speaker uses to **portray** his or her affirmation as to the certainty of the verbal action or state (whether an actuality or potentiality).* The key elements in this definition are that mood (a) does not necessarily correspond to reality, (b) does not indicate even a speaker’s perception of reality, but (c) does indicate a speaker’s portrayal or representation.²

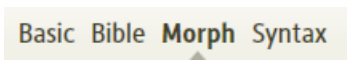
With this chart and Wallace’s thoughts handy, let’s search on these moods and see how these words are translated and examine their context.

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu at the top and click “Search”



- 2 Click **Morph** at the right



Choose These Options

- 3 Choose the following search criteria



² Daniel B. Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics - Exegetical Syntax of the New Testament* (Zondervan Publishing House and Galaxie Software, 1999; 2002), 445.

④ In the search box, type @ to open the morphological menu, then click **verb, optative**, and click the white arrow at the right.

Search Graph results | Make Filter Basic Bible **Morph** Syntax

Search All Morph Text in New Testament in NASB95 with Logos Greek Morphology for eg lemma:λόγος@nmsa

@V??O

Part of Speech	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number	Case	Gender
Adverb	Aorist	Active	Indicative	First Person	Dual	Accusative	Feminine
Conjunction	Future	Middle	Imperative	Second Person	Plural	Dative	Masculine
Article	Imperfect	Passive	Infinitive	Third Person	Singular	Genitive	Neuter
Interjection	Pluperfect	Either Middle or Passive	Optative			Nominative	
Adjective	Present		Participle			Vocative	
Noun	Perfect		Subjunctive				
Preposition	Future Perfect						
Pronoun							
Particle							
Verb							
Indeclinable							

CLICK HERE

⑤ Let's examine the search results. As you can see, Daniel Wallace's additional insights can help us make sense of these verbal moods, especially in the case of the **optative**. For example, in Mark 11:14, because Jesus cursed the vine and it withered, there is extreme doubt anyone will eat from that vine.

▼ VERSES 70 results in 65 verses (0.32 sec)

ESV

New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update

Mk 11:14 He said to it, "May no one ever eat fruit from you again!" And His disciples were listening.

Lk 1:29 But she was very perplexed at this statement, and kept pondering what kind of salutation this was.

38 And Mary said, "Behold, the bondservant of the Lord; may it be done to me according to your word." And the angel departed from her.

62 And they made signs to his father, as to what he wanted him called.

3:15 Now while the people were in a state of expectation and all were wondering in their hearts about John, as to whether he was the Christ,

6:11 But they themselves were filled with rage, and discussed together what they might do to Jesus.

8:9 His disciples began questioning Him as to what this parable meant.

9:46 An argument started among them as to which of them might be the greatest.

15:26 "And he summoned one of the servants and began inquiring what these things could be.

18:36 Now hearing a crowd going by, he began to inquire what this was.

20:16 "He will come and destroy these vine-growers and will give the vineyard to others." When they heard it, they said, "May it never be!"

Interactive Training Videos

WITHOUT THIS TRAINING YOU WILL NEVER MAXIMIZE YOUR POTENTIAL TO DISCOVER AND USE THE AMAZING FEATURES OF LOGOS 4

- 100+ Videos / 10+ hours of hands-on training
- Interactive and non-interactive training videos • Works on Mac or PC
- Beginner to advanced / Hebrew, Greek, Syntax and more!
- Learn what you are missing / Learn how to use ALL of Logos 4.
- Comprehensive, quality training with excellence is now affordable for everyone!
- FREE updates, "Get More Out of 4"

FREE Live Webinars

- How to study the Bible | How to prepare a sermon | Inductive Bible study (Precept Students)
- New topics each month • 90 minutes (avg.) of training per session • Live Q&A
 - Each session streamed live (downloadable 24x7 afterwards)
 - Live sessions are FREE / Download past sessions for \$4.99 each

FREE eNewsletter/Manual

- 2 eNewsletters per month (better than a manual)
- Tips, Tricks, Helps and Shortcuts / Not weekly, but daily!
- Blog articles, Q&A with John
- And so much more

Online Education Course

- Hermeneutics, Bible study, Sermon preparation
- 8 to 32 week modules taught by John Fallahee • Study at your own pace
 - Equivalent to a 3 hour accredited class (earn credits from Tennessee Temple University)
 - Overview & Best Practices Bundle included (\$80 value!)

Bible Studies using Logos 4 (coming soon)

- JUDE: Study for adults
- Learn how to study the book of Jude
- JESUS CHRIST: Study for kids
- Children 8-13 learn about Jesus & the Gospel and how to study the Bible

Personalized Training

- EXPOSITORY PREACHING ANALYSIS W/LOGOS TRAINING
- 5 sermons analyzed with objective 60 pt grading system
 - Customized sermon preparation with Logos 4
 - 6 months of follow-up support

Academic.LearnLogos.com (coming soon for professors and teachers in Academia)

- Effective training for classroom integration or any online education model
- SCORM compliant quizzing/testing
- Tools and helps exclusive for the academic environment
- To schedule a FREE 30 minute consultation, email > academic@learnlogos.com

Illustrations/ Applications

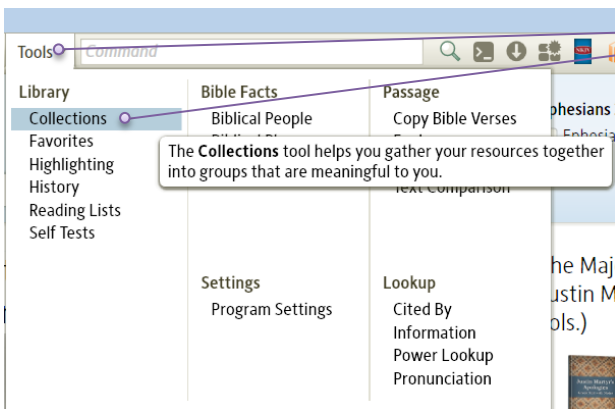
THAT'S A GREAT QUOTE! WHO SAID THAT?

One of the best ways to enhance your teaching, preaching, and evangelizing efforts is to find great quotes, sayings, or expressions. With Logos 4 and the special search technique described below, you will be finding and utilizing great quotes in no time!

Before we search we need to create a collection of great quotes, sayings, and expressions.

HOW TO:

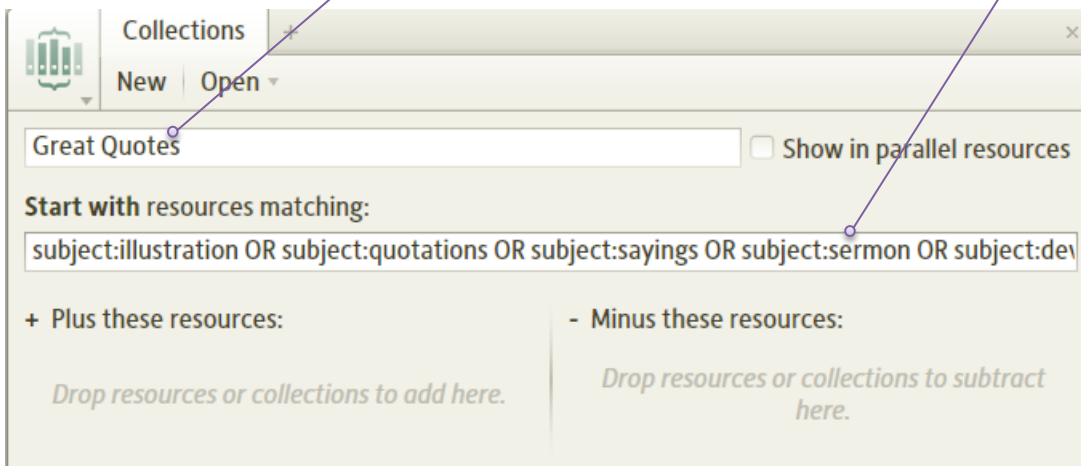
- 1 Let's create a collection
- 2 Choose from the main menu **Tools** and then choose **Collections**



CLICK HERE

- 3 Let's name the collection **Great Quotes** and use the following rule: **subject:illustration OR subject:quotations OR subject:sayings OR subject:sermon OR subject:devotional**

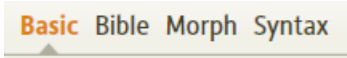
See below for more information.



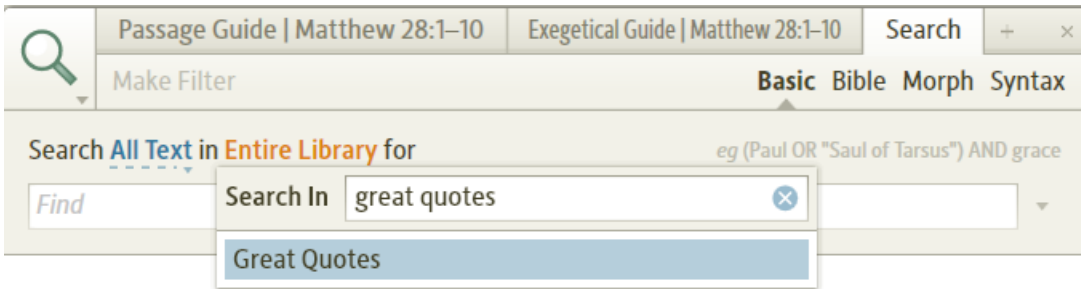
④ Now let's click "Search"



⑤ Choose **Basic** search option at the right

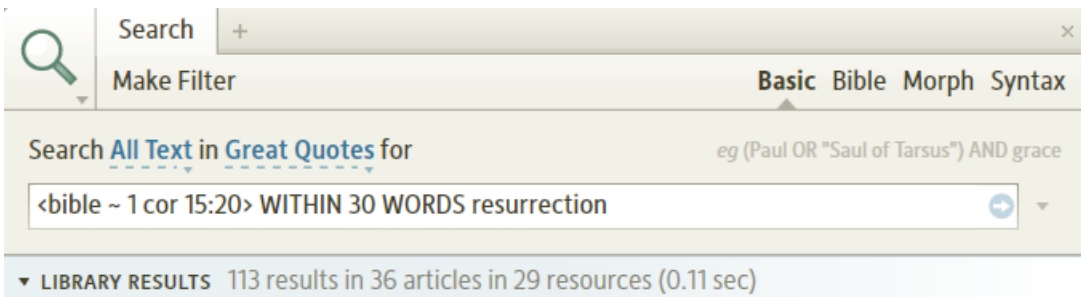


⑥ Next, let's choose our search criteria. Click on **Entire Library**, in the "Search In" box, type **great quotes** and press enter



⑦ Let's search for great quotes regarding the resurrection. Enter the following search phrase and press the enter key:

<bible ~ 1 cor 15:20> WITHIN 30 WORDS resurrection



⑧ Examine your search results and pick one that you like. I like this one from Spurgeon's Morning and Evening

"Our risen bodies shall not be capable of decay, much less of death. There are no graves in glory" - Spurgeon

Note: The ~ allows for a greater range of verses to be found, compared to using the = symbol.

Searching

WILD SEARCHING!

Actually, this won't be wild in the sense of the jungle or something that is out of control. Instead, I would like to introduce you to "wild card" searching.

"Wild Card" searching gives you precise control over the words you are searching.

For example, what if you want to find all the various forms of love in the Bible (loved, loving, loveless, lovingkindness, loves, lovely, lovesick, lovers)?

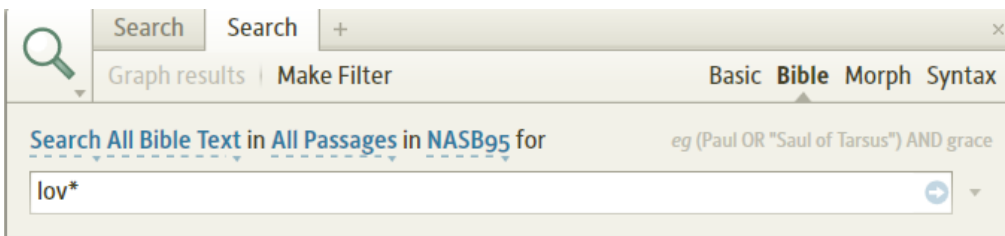
HOW TO:

❶ First, you must ask the following question, "What do the words have in common?"

In our example, they all use "**lov**".

❷ Next, you add the "Wild Card" to this phrase **lov***

Note: The **star/asterisk** is a symbol that tells the Logos 4 program to find anything that follows "lov",



Let's do another type of "wild card" search, but this time let's use a **question mark** instead of a **star/asterisk**.

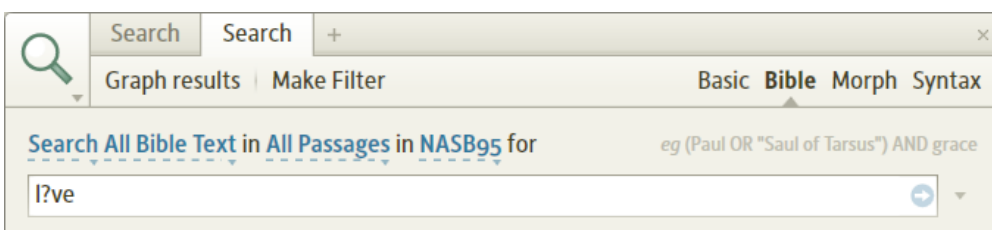
HOW TO:

The question mark only searches for one character, whereas the star/asterisk searches for unlimited number of characters. **Note:** the star/asterisk will also find words with no characters as well.

❶ First, you must ask the following question, "What letter(s) am I searching for?"

Using our previous example, let's search for all words that have have "**I ve**" in common. (live and love)

❷ Next, you add the "Wild Card" to this phrase **I?ve**.



Book Overview and Review

CATECHISMS: A THING OF THE PAST OR STILL RELEVANT FOR TODAY?

Question...Answer...Question...Answer

The very foundation of learning begins with the question and is followed by the answer. Catechisms traditionally have been accomplished through an oral examination. However, they can also be written down and in the case of the famous Westminster Catechism, we have this document not only in print but in Logos 4. This Q&A dates back to 1646! Wow that is 365 years old! There are 196 key questions and answer couplets with plenty of cross references.

Here is a sample:

Question I



What is the chief and highest end of man?



Man's chief and highest end is to glorify God, (Rom. 11:36, Cor. 10:31) and fully to enjoy him forever. (Ps. 73:24-28, John 17:21-23)

As you can see, there is no simpler way to grow your Biblical knowledge than with Bible questions followed by Bible answers with Biblical cross references. I highly recommend reviewing this to grow your knowledge of The Faith.

You can get this at www.logos.com for \$19.95



This image is for illustration only. The product is a download.

**Westminster Confession of Faith,
including the Larger and Shorter
Catechisms**

by Westminster Assembly
Logos Research Systems, Inc.

\$19.95

Works on:     Like 11  

ADD TO CART

Learn more about the Westminster Confession at wikipedia.

how to
Study the Bible

EXODUS: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Exodus](#)

[A Commentary on the Holy Scriptures: Exodus by Lange, John Peter, Philip Schaff and Charles M. Mead](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Exodus](#)

[Preaching the Word: Exodus—Saved for God's Glory](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary \(3 Volumes\)](#)

[Believers Church Bible Commentary: Exodus](#)

[A Handbook on Exodus \(UBS\) by Osborn, Noel D. and Howard Hatton](#)

[Opening Up Exodus](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Delivered: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

Outlines

[The Book of Exodus by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Exodus Commentaries

Collection Name: Exodus Resources

Collection Rule: subject:exodus

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

Collections +

New Open

Exodus Resources ☐ Show in parallel resources

Start with resources matching:

subject:exodus

+ Plus these resources: - Minus these resources:

Drop resources or collections to add here. Drop resources or collections to subtract here.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS PRAYER LIFE, Part 1/7

The next few newsletters will be devoted to studying the prayer life of Jesus. You will be encouraged and challenged to pray like our Lord and Savior. I believe these principles are absolutely essential to learn and practice daily in your walk before God! Let's get started with principle #1.

Principle #1: Prayer was the Pattern of Jesus' Life

A) Jesus' Pattern of Prayer: *Often*

Two of several passages from God's Word that illuminate our understanding of the paradigm of Jesus' prayer pattern are [Luke 5:16](#) and [Mark 1:35](#). In [Luke 5:16](#), we read that Jesus would often slip away to the wilderness and pray, saturating His life with prayer. The tenses of the verbs are both imperfect periphrastics, which emphasize that this was a customary and habitual practice of Jesus

B) Jesus' Pattern of Prayer: *All Times of a Day*

Because Jesus prayed often, we find Him praying at all times- before dawn, during daylight, and after sunset. For example, before dawn we read about Jesus praying in [Mark 1:35](#). Even though it was still dark, Jesus got up, went to a secluded place during the last watch from three to six in the morning and prayed. The verb for praying is in the imperfect form showing us that Jesus was praying even until Peter and his companions would later find Him as mentioned in [Mark 1:37](#).

In [Luke 11:1-13](#), while Jesus was praying during the day, one of the disciples asked Jesus how to pray whereby Jesus follows with instruction on how to pray giving us the "[Disciple's Prayer](#)". In [Matthew 26:36-46](#) and its parallel accounts of [Mark 14:32-42](#) and [Luke 22:39-46](#) the sun had set, the disciples have fallen asleep but Jesus petitions God the Father three times. Therefore, one must conclude that regardless of the time or the circumstances Jesus prayed at all times in the Spirit, being alert with all perseverance and petition([Ephesians 6:18](#)).

how to Preach

PREACHING OUTLINES: THE SCENIC SERMON, PART 4/4

If you have followed the emerging church of the last few years you will discover this method of preaching is very popular. However as Solomon said, there really is nothing new under the sun. In fact, if you were to go back as far as Origen (ca. 185-253) you would see a connection in his method of preaching with the preaching of the “emerging church”. The connection is for these preachers to take the Christian message and paint a picture as an artist would draw a drawing. Sometimes they employ the allegorical method where elements in the story are symbolic of great themes of the Bible.

Additionally, the emerging church (Rob Bell and others) borrow many of the elements you would find in the story telling model (a model we discussed in the last newsletter). This allegorical feature is one of the main characteristics that separate the Scenic Sermon from the Story Outline.

The scenic sermon draws upon grand themes of the Bible and universal types to generalize truths and to effect an emotion in the audience and to draw you into the big picture and provide a general direction, rather than clearly delineate the precise truths of scripture in an expositional manner. I would liken these preachers to an impressionist painter. From afar you can look at the canvas of colors and shapes, it may be a flower, bowl of fruit, or even a house or person but as you move closer and closer the distinctiveness is lost, and you begin to lose clarity and the shapes are lost in an array of color and brush strokes.

Scenic sermons are much the same way; they are not designed to articulate precise, verse by verse interpretations but instead are aiming to describe the scene at large. Another way to look at this is with the concept of a vision. Vision can provide a general direction or describe a goal to accomplish. The details of that goal will flesh themselves out over time. For example, God sends Abraham to a land he had never seen. The details to accomplish that goal were not given but were lived out daily along the way. There are elements of this methodology that can certainly help connect with the audience and that is good, but remember, regardless of the methodology you employ; only clear explanations of the Biblical text can feed and help grow a Christian. Only through teaching precise truths rooted in the scripture can we be saved, know, love and serve God and each other and evangelize the lost.

In closing, let me offer a strong word of caution against this methodology, without precision, meaning is lost, and truth is clouded. To analogize, truth no longer takes a precise shape but becomes an inkblot by which the viewer imagines what it may be! God never intended for us to be confused about who He is and What He has said in His Holy Word. However, Satan is the author of confusion, the father of lies, and the adversary to our souls. When you teach, teach the Bible, and teach what it clearly and plainly says.

Scenic Sermon Temple

Title/Subtitle

- *Like a painting, attention getting, general in nature*
- *Not giving the details but instead inviting the listener to participate*

The Main Topic

- *Using visual terms*
- *Describe the single, main idea*

Main Character/Main Idea - Focus

- *Everything is connected to and anchored to the main character/main idea*
- *In a painting, it can be a color, an object, or even an idea.*

Materials

- *To make an analogy, artists can employ various materials to convey their artwork: wood, marble, and even a canvas.*
- *Each of these materials set the stage, tone, and expression.*

The Arrangement:

- *Here the main character/main idea and materials come into focus and reveal their relationship*
- *Each is arranged with a purpose to convey the imagery to communicate the general truth. (typically using the story model)*

Mood: Using Color and Light

- *Color can create emotion and mood.*
- *Dark scenes can be foreboding, mysterious, scary, or comforting*
- *Scenes with light can be life threatening like a desert scene, renewing like a sunrise, or relaxing like a sunset*
- *Here the teacher/preacher must identify the mood and utilize the proper images to direct the emotional response of the audience.*

Sketch: Lines and Shapes

- *Here the presenter will determine what will have focus and detail.*
- *In a way, sketching with lines and shapes in drawings not only defines an object in a drawing but also, defines the relationships with the main idea, materials, and arrangement.*
- *Some ideas can be subtle (less important but related), whereas other ideas can be bold and crucial and defined so that the connection is obvious to the audience.*

Audience Reaction

- *What do you hope will happen in the mind, heart and will of the audience?*
- *How will their thinking, talking, and living be transformed by these truths?*

Here are several preachers than employ this methodology. (**Note:** This is not an endorsement of their teaching or their ministry)

[Rob Bell](#)

[Brian MacLaren](#)

[Doug Pagitt](#)

Q & A

“Pericope”? Sounds and looks like periscope...not quite!

Q1: John, what is a “Pericope”?

A1: ❶ The first question might be how do you pronounce this word? [Click this link to hear it pronounced](#) (internet connection required)

❷ Now that we know how to say this word, what does it mean? The simplest definition can be found in your [Webster’s Dictionary in Logos 4](#), which states ***that it is a specific selection from a book.***

❸ Why is this important to know? For teaching and preaching, we need to know where a section begins and ends so that we teach/preach that section of truth. By sticking to one pericope at a time, we can focus on one truth at a time and this will keep your message clear, focused, and easy to follow.

❹ Can Logos 4 help me find the pericope of a passage? Yes. [Click here](#) or go to the main menu and choose the following:

Tools > Passage Analysis > Compare Pericope (at the bottom) > Choose Your Bible translations

Passage Analysis

+

Romans 4

Pericope Sets

▾

	NASB95	ESV	NKJV	GNTMAJ	HCSB	
Ro 4:1	Justification by Faith Evidenced in Old Testament	Abraham Justified by Faith	Abraham Justified by Faith	Abraham Was Justified by Faith	Abraham Justified by Faith	
2						
3						
4						
5			David Celebrates the Same Truth			
6				David Celebrates the Same Truth	David Celebrating the Same Truth	
7						
8						
9				Abraham Justified Before Circumcision	Abraham Was Justified Long Before Circumcision	Abraham Justified before Circumcision
10						
11						
12						
13		The Promise Realized Through Faith	The Promise Granted Through Faith	The Promise Was Granted Through Faith	The Promise Granted through Faith	
14						
15						
16						
17						
18						
19						
20						
21						
22						
23						

Compare Pericopes

Word Tree

Morph River

Cluster Graph

Version River

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter! tips@learnlogos.com

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

Welcome! More than a Manual...

If you like this eNewsletter let us know and tell others on [Facebook](#)! Now let's get ready to **LearnLogos**!

Note: You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about all of the available training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks and Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO & Video Trainer

RECENT NEWS

#1 More Webinars Released! ~~Only \$9.99~~ **\$4.99** for each download.

- [Click for Details](#)
 - Inductive Bible Study for Logos 4 (7 Webinars Available)
 - Studying the Bible with Logos 4 (7 Webinars Available)
 - Preparing Sermons with Logos 4 (7 Webinars Available)

Note: Most webinars are 1 ½ hours in length! Amazing value! [Click to buy!](#)

#2 Training CDs – You can **now download** this training **immediately!**

[50% Off Logos 4 Training Bundle](#) **Only \$39.99**

#3 Upcoming Live Webinars

NOTE: SCHEDULE CHANGE – [See New Schedule](#)

- **Mon, June 6th, 9-10:00 PM (ET) Inductive Bible Study with Logos 4**
 - **Session 8:** [Click to Signup](#): Strategies to overcome a difficult passage (NT)
- **Mon, May 16th, 9-10:00 PM (ET) Studying the Bible with Logos 4**
 - **Session 8:** [Click to Signup](#): Strategies to overcome a difficult passage (OT)
- **Mon, June 25, 9-10:00 PM (ET) Preparing Sermons with Logos 4**
 - **Session 8:** [Click to Signup](#): Strategies to overcome a difficult passage (OT/NT)

➤ Get **THREE CDs** for the **BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

*** 50% Off**

Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

Alert: **FREE BOOK**

LOGOS HAS NOT RELEASED ANY NEW FREE BOOKS...WILL KEEP YOU POSTED...

- If you own an iPad, iPhone, iPod touch you can get free book previews
 - Visit: <http://www.freebookpreview.com/> to learn more
- Logos recently launched an eReader and eBook site: <http://vyrso.com/giveaway.php>

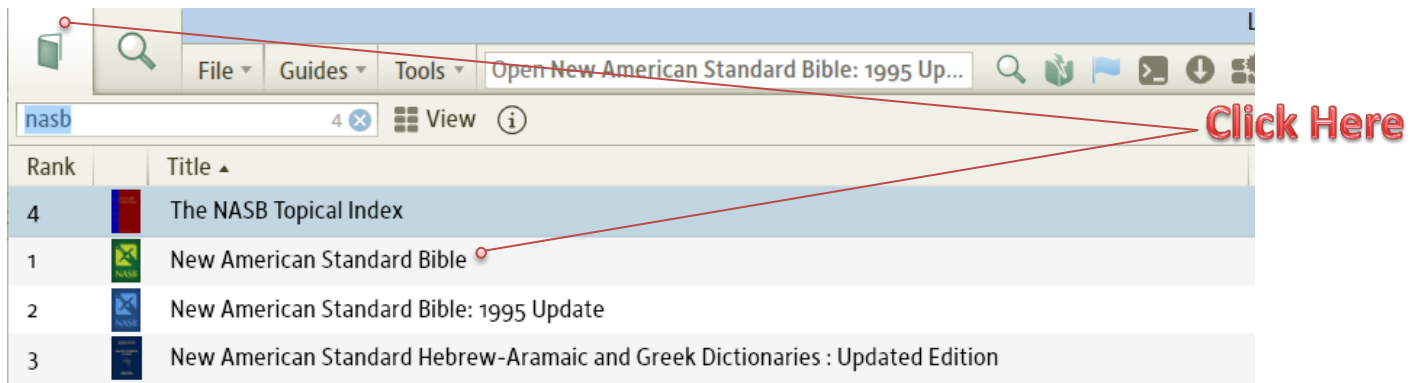
Optimizing LOGOS 4

LINKS TO OPEN PANELS

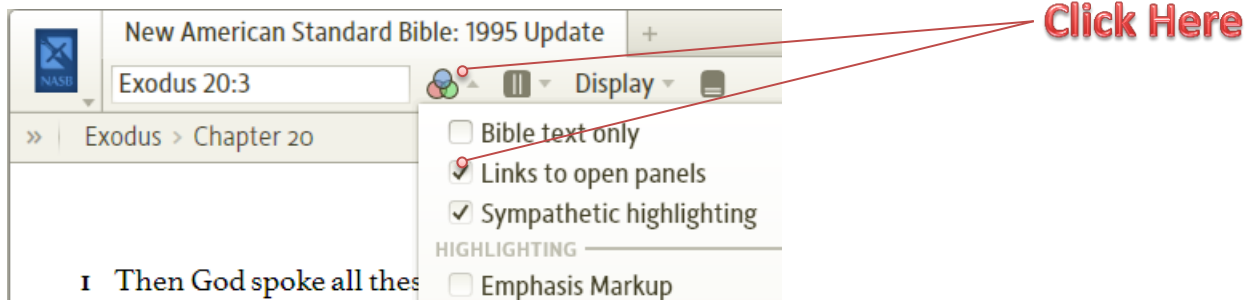
Have you ever opened up a dictionary and found it difficult to locate the passage you are studying? A special feature called “link to open panels” can assist you in this matter. I recommend turning this on for all your **dictionaries** and any **books you frequently use**.

HOW TO:

- ❶ Open your preferred Bible. (Click Library Icon, then choose NASB). Go to the passage, Exodus 20:3.



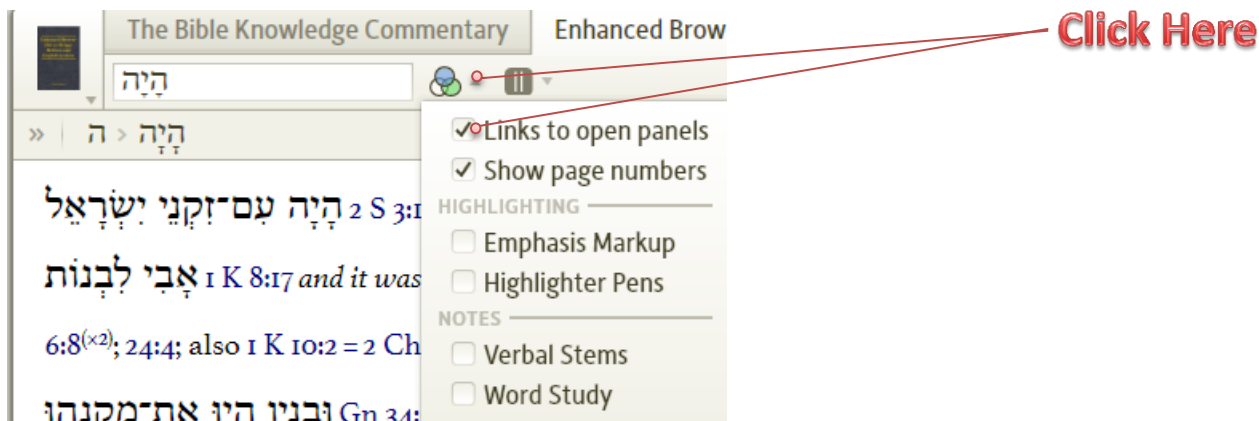
- ❷ Click the visual filters icon, then click the box labeled “Links to open panels”



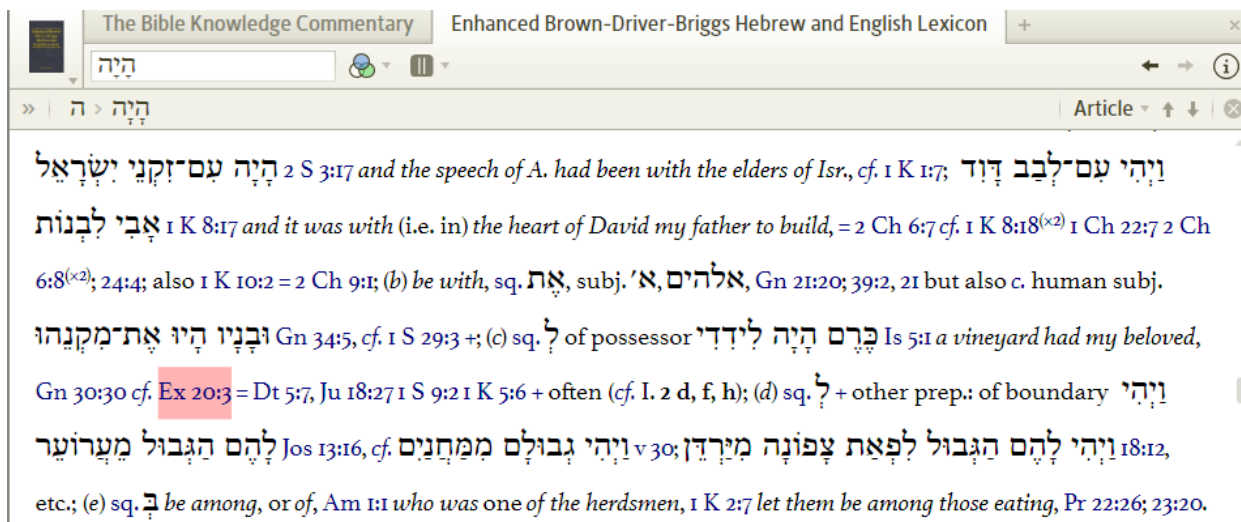
③ Now that we have our Bible set up, we need to link our dictionary. [Click Here](#) to open the BDB dictionary.

Note: You can open any book and apply this feature, so if you don't own the BDB, try opening a different dictionary.

④ Just as we did in Step 2, click the “visual filters” icon, then click in the box labeled “Links to open panels”



⑤ So what does this “link to open panels” look like? See the highlighted scripture below.



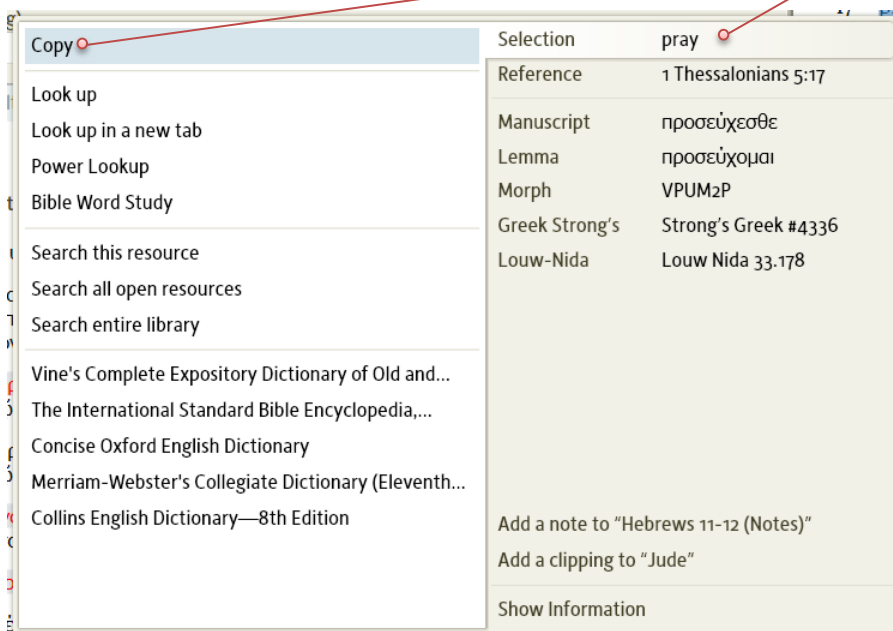
Note: As you can see, it is nicely highlighted. This is the easy way to spot your Bible passage among so many other scripture references!

Prayer in LOGOS 4

WHO PRAYED IN THE NT? ... USING SYNTAX.

HOW TO:

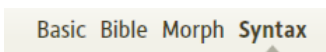
- 1 Let's go to 1 Thessalonians 5:17
- 2 Right click on the word "pray" > choose **Selection** (at the right) **Note:** choose the English word
- 3 Choose "copy" from the menu at the left. **Click Here**



- 4 Choose "Search"



- 5 Choose "Syntax"

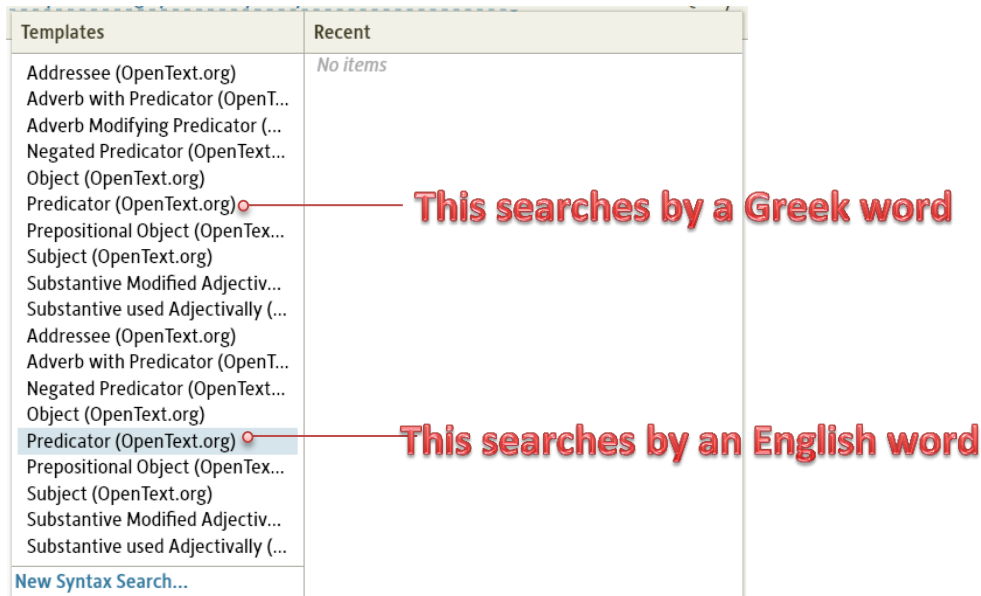


- 6 Choose **OpenText** > Choose Query

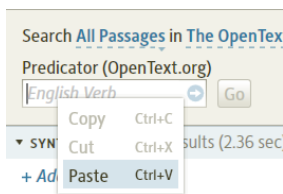
Choose These Options



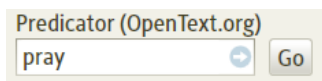
7 Choose “Predicator (OpenText.org)”



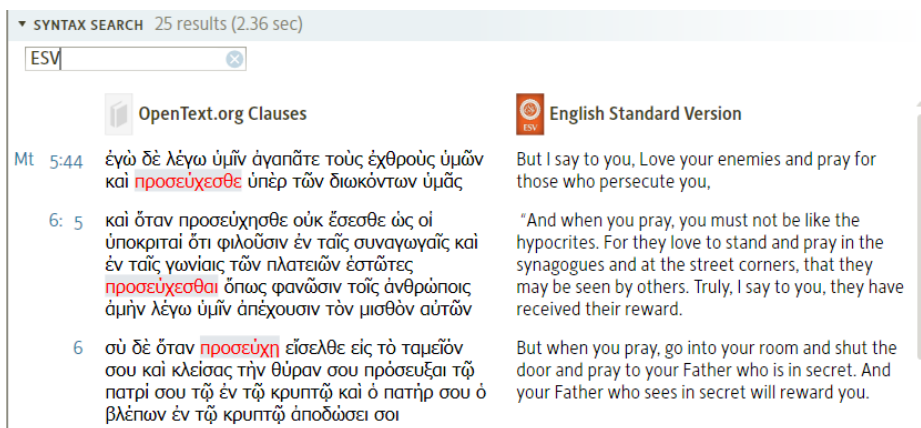
8 Right click in the box labeled **Predicator (OpenText.org)** and choose “Paste” from the menu



9 Click “Go”



10 Let’s examine the search results. **Note:** You may need to add an English version to read the Biblical text since the search results are in Greek.



Get THREE CDs for the BEST VALUE!

As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)

Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)
\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)
\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

50% Off Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY
LearnLogos.com/discount
Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

NOW YOU CAN GET THE VERY MOST FROM LOGOS BIBLE SOFTWARE 4

Customer testimonials describe LearnLogos training as...

- “thrilling”
- “effective”
- “excellent”
- “satisfied”
- “easy”
- “incredible”
- “affordable”
- “the best”
- “comprehensive”
- “fun”
- “best value”
- “high quality”

DON'T JUST TAKE HOME TRAINING. TAKE HOME THE TRAINER.

John has trained tens of thousands of people through his training videos and training workshops. As a former employee of Logos Bible Software, he developed and pioneered their first ever online training videos for Logos 3. John has trained notable people like **Kay Arthur**, **Mark Dever**, **Irwin Lutzer**, and **John Piper**!

John Fallahee, MBA, M.Div.
Your Personal Training Assistant

Twitter Facebook

The **NEW GOLD STANDARD** in Training!

50% Off Interactive Training

100+ Videos
10+ Hours of Training
Free Updates
[Learn More](#)
[BUY NOW](#)

Distant Education Class

Learn at Your Pace

Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)
[BUY NOW](#)

Click One, Click Both!

Historical/Theological
Background

TWO WAYS TO ORGANIZE YOUR NOTES FOR THEOLOGICAL ANALYSIS

If you are trying to discover the theological theme of a passage, you will need to plan ahead and determine how you will organize your research. Let's examine Ephesians 2:1-2 and identify all the possible theological themes and organize them two ways: Expositionally & Topically.

The 12 Theological themes are as follows:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) Bible (Bibliology) | 7) Man (Anthropology) |
| 2) God the Father (Theology) | 8) Sin (Hamartiology) |
| 3) God the Son (Christology) | 9) Salvation (Soteriology) |
| 4) God the Holy Spirit (Pneumatology) | 10) Israel (Israelology) |
| 5) Angels (Angelology) | 11) Church (Ecclesiology) |
| 6) Demons (Demonology) | 12) Future Things (Eschatology) |

HOW TO:

WAY #1: EXPOSITIONAL (VERSE BY VERSE)

Note: Bolding, italicizing added for emphasis

Ephesians 2:1 (VERSE)

Theological Theme	Key Phrase
<i>Man/Anthropology</i>	And you
<i>Sin/Hamartiology</i>	were dead in trespasses and sins

Ephesians 2:2 (VERSE)

Theological Theme	Key Phrase
<i>Man/Anthropology</i>	in which you
<i>Sin/Hamartiology</i>	formerly walked according to the course of this world ,
<i>Demons/Demonology</i>	according to the prince of the power of the air, of the spirit that is now working in the sons of...

WAY #2: THEOLOGICAL (TOPICAL)

Man/Anthropology (THEOLOGICAL THEME)

Verse	Key Phrase
2:1	and you
2:2	in which you

Sin/Hamartiology (THEOLOGICAL THEME)

Verse	Key Phrase
2:1	were dead in trespasses and sins
2:2	formerly walked according to the course of this world

Demons/Demonology (THEOLOGICAL THEME)

Verse	Key Phrase
2:2	according to the prince of the power of the air, of the spirit that is now working in the sons of...

Conclusion:

As you can see by these two organizational schemes, you should be able to see the theological themes and determine which one to emphasize. By the way, you can store these in one note file, multiple note files, or even create a passage list titled with your theological theme.

Outlining

THE ACTIONABLE OUTLINE

Using verbs in a teaching/preaching outline is one of the most effective ways to communicate the Biblical Text. The verbs of any Biblical text convey not only the action of the passage but they carry the main idea. However, simply throwing a lot of verbs at the audience won't necessarily improve your communication skills. You need a strategy, you need an actionable outline!

HOW TO:

❶ Let's choose a passage you are familiar with, Matthew 28:19-20. I will structure this passage and highlight the main and subordinates verbs. To get more training on this subject, purchase the **Bundle** training CD/Download where you learn about many more subjects related to Logos 4. I have colored the **main verbs in red**, the **primary supporting verbs in green**, and other **supporting verbs in orange**.

❷ Structure the text and create a preliminary outline¹

19 **Go** therefore and
 make disciples
 of all nations
 baptizing them
 in the name
 of the Father
 and of the Son
 and of the Holy Spirit
20 **teaching** them
 to **observe**
 all that I have **commanded** you

The Preliminary Outline:

- I. **Make Disciples**
 - a. **Go**
 - b. **Baptizing**
 - c. **Teaching**
- II. **I am**
 - a. **With you always**
 - b. **To the end of the age**

And behold

I **am**
with you always to the end of the age

❸ Next, we need to refine/convert our raw, preliminary outline based on the verbs of the passage to an actionable outline. (Note the verbs are italicized)

- I. Do you *know* the process of "Making Disciples"?
 - a. **Step 1:** *Evangelize* by engaging the lost
 - b. **Step 2:** *Enlist* by baptizing the repentant
 - c. **Step 3:** *Educate* by teaching the Bible
- II. Are you *relying* on the person of Christ?
 - a. Jesus *will be* with you always
 - b. Jesus *has pledged* to finish the work of the Church

¹ See Best Practices, Disc 2/2, Lesson 5 Observing the Text, Exercises 6 & 7

Word Study

THE PERFECT CROSS REFERENCE: WORD STUDIES, POWER LOOKUP, AND THE PASSAGE LIST

Anybody reading the Bible can benefit from a few good cross references. In fact, cross referencing is an important skill for interpreting the Bible. For there is no better way to interpret the Bible than with the Bible! Fortunately, you have Logos 4. It was not that long ago where the only way to find good cross references was with the [treasury of scripture knowledge](#) or some academic commentaries.

As we stated in the last newsletter, there are three types of cross-references: word, phrase and topic.

To keep our cross references relevant we are going to combine **three** tools: the Bible Word Study Report, Power Lookup, and the passage list.

HOW TO:

- 1 Click the **Library** icon at the top left



- 2 Type **ESV** in the find box

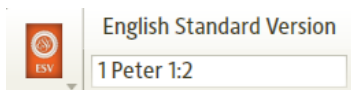
Rank	Title ▲
1	English Standard Version
3	The ESV Study Bible
2	The Lexham High Definition

English Standard Version | ESV

The English Standard Version™ is founded on the conviction that the words of the Bible are the very words of God. And because the words themselves—not just the thoughts or ideas—are inspired by God, each word must be translated with the greatest precision and accuracy. As Jesus Himself stressed, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God” (Matt. 4:4). This passion for God’s Word is the driving force behind the translation of the ESV™ Bible. The English Standard Version™ does not try to “improve” on the original in light of today’s culture or by using trendy language. Instead,...

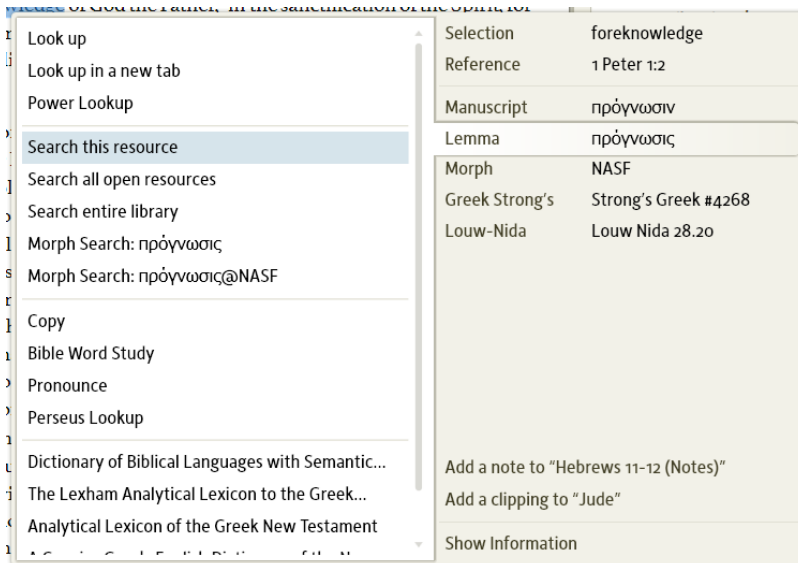
The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

③ Enter **1 Peter 1:2** in the Bible Reference Box, and press **Enter**

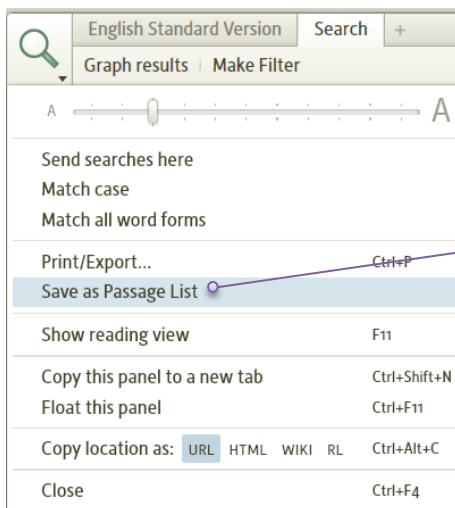


④ Right click on the word **foreknowledge** and choose **Lemma** from the menu, then choose **Search this resource**.

Note: You should get two search results (Acts 2:23, 1 Peter 1:2)



⑤ Click on the **Resource Panel** and choose **Save as Passage List**



CLICK HERE

Interactive Training Videos

WITHOUT THIS TRAINING YOU WILL NEVER MAXIMIZE YOUR POTENTIAL TO DISCOVER AND USE THE AMAZING FEATURES OF LOGOS 4

- 100+ videos / 10+ hours of hands-on training
- Interactive and non-interactive training videos • Works on Mac or PC
- Beginner to advanced / Hebrew, Greek, Syntax and more!
- Learn what you are missing / Learn how to use ALL of Logos 4.
- Comprehensive, quality training with excellence is now affordable for everyone!
- FREE updates, "Get More Out of 4"

FREE Live Webinars

- How to study the Bible | How to prepare a sermon | Inductive Bible study (Precept Students)
- New topics each month • 90 minutes (avg.) of training per session • Live Q&A
- Each session streamed live (downloadable 24x7 afterwards)
- Live sessions are FREE / Download past sessions for \$4.99 each

FREE eNewsletter/Manual

- 2 eNewsletters per month (better than a manual)
- Tips, Tricks, Helps and Shortcuts / Not weekly, but daily!
- Blog articles, Q&A with John
- And so much more

Online Education Course

- Hermeneutics, Bible study, Sermon preparation
- 8 to 32 week modules taught by John Fallahee • Study at your own pace
- Equivalent to a 3 hour accredited class (earn credits from Tennessee Temple University)
- Overview & Best Practices Bundle included (\$80 value!)

Bible Studies using Logos 4 (coming soon)

- JUDE: Study for adults
- Learn how to study the book of Jude
- JESUS CHRIST: Study for kids
- Children 8-13 learn about Jesus & the Gospel and how to study the Bible

Personalized Training

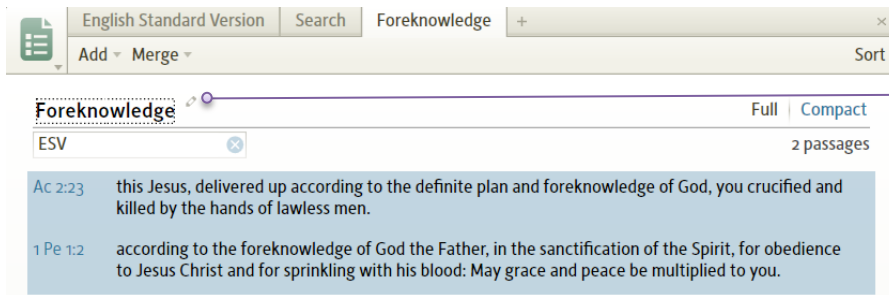
- EXPOSITORY PREACHING ANALYSIS W/LOGOS TRAINING
- 5 sermons analyzed with objective 60 pt grading system
- Customized sermon preparation with Logos 4
- 6 months of follow-up support

Academic.LearnLogos.com (coming soon for professors and teachers in Academia)

- Effective training for classroom integration or any online education model
- SCORM compliant quizzing/testing
- Tools and helps exclusive for the academic environment
- To schedule a FREE 30 minute consultation, email > academic@learnlogos.com

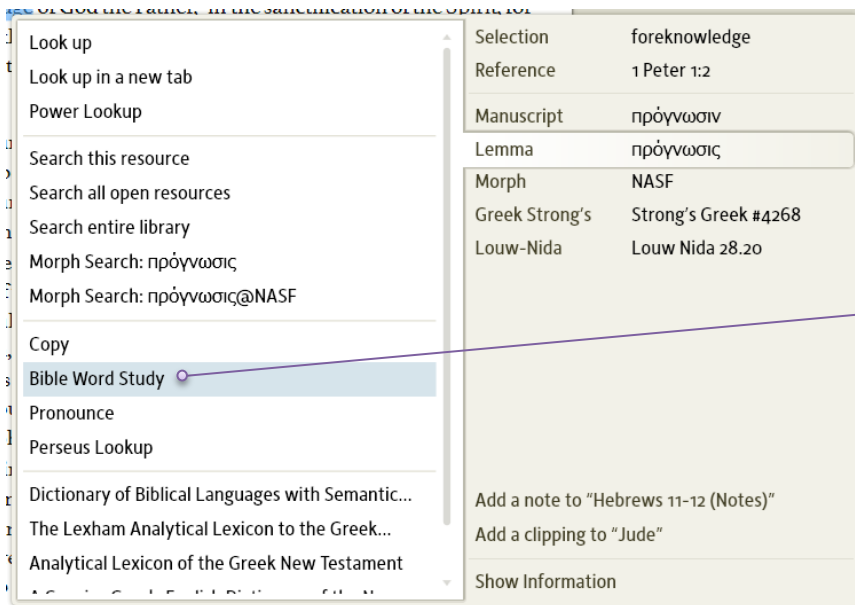
⑥ Click on the pencil icon and rename the passage list to foreknowledge

Note: You now have saved both passages to your passage list from your concordance search



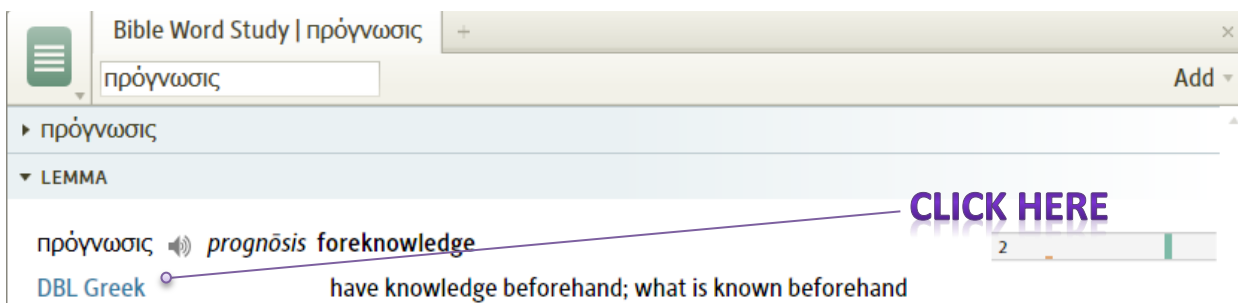
CLICK HERE

⑦ Once again, right click on the word **foreknowledge** and choose **Lemma** from the menu, then choose **Bible Word Study**



CLICK HERE

⑧ In the **Lemma Section** of the Bible Word Study Report, locate and click on **DBL Greek**



CLICK HERE

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

⑨ Now that our dictionary is open, right click on the number 1.715 located next to the abbreviation TDNT, and choose TDNT from the list.

Note: All we are trying to do is open the TDNT to the word we are studying. If TDNT is not in this list, than you may have to open the book through the Library. TDNT is available for Scholars collection and higher.

English Standard Version Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domains: Greek (New Testament)

TDNT Volume 1, Page 715

» Ππ > 4589 προγινώσκω Article ▾ ↑ ↓ ×

4589 προγινώσκω (*proginōskō*): vb.; ≡ Str 4267; TDNT 1.715—**1. LN 28.6 know beforehand**, foreknow (Ac 26:5; 2Pe 3:17+); **2. LN 30.100 select in advance**, choose beforehand (Ro 8:29; 11:2; 1Pe 1:20+), note these verses may be put in prior entry

Open

Open in a new tab

Power Lookup

Search this resource

Search all open resources

Search entire library

Cited By

Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic...

The Theological Dictionary of the New Testament

Enhanced Strong's Lexicon

Selection 1.715

Reference DBL Greek 4589

Reference Greek GK #4589

Reference Strong's Greek #4267

Reference TDNT Volume 1, Page 715

Headword προγινώσκω

Theological Dict... TDNT Volume 1, Page 715

Add a note to "Hebrews 11-12 (Notes)"

Add a clipping to "Jude"

Show Information

RIGHT CLICK HERE

CLICK HERE

10 With the TDNT open to our word, go to the main menu and choose **Tools > Power Look up**

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software interface. The main window displays the TDNT article for 'προγινώσκω' (to foreknow). The article text discusses the NT usage of the word, its meaning in Greek, and its use in the LXX. The Power Lookup tool is open on the right, showing a list of references related to 'προγινώσκω'.

TDNT Article Text:

In the NT προγινώσκειν is referred to God. His foreknowledge, however, is an election or foreordination of His people (R. 8:29; 11:2) or Christ (1 Pt. 1:20) (→ γινώσκω, 698; 706).¹ In Herm. m., 4, 3, 4 it simply means God's foreknowledge (cf. προγνώστης in 2 Cl., 9, 9). On the basis of prophecy the word προγινώσκειν can be used of believers in 2 Pt. 3:17, as also in Herm. s., 7, 5 → ἐκλέγω.

Another possible meaning in Gk. is that of knowing earlier, i.e., than the time speaking (cf. Demosth., 29, 58; Aristot. Rhet., II, 21, p. 1394b, 11; Jos. Bell., 6, 8). V 1, p 716 This is found in Ac. 26:5, where the meaning is strengthened by the addition of ἄνωθεν.

In Justin God's προγινώσκειν is His foreknowledge (Apol., I, 28, 2 etc.) and the προεγνωσμένοι are believers (Apol., I, 45, 1 etc.). The polemic against determinism, however, shows that the OT view has been abandoned (Dial., 140, 4). As One who simply knows beforehand, God is called προγνώστης in Apol., I, 44, 11 etc., as is also Christ in Dial., 35, 7; 82, 1. There is also reference to prophetic foreknowledge in Apol., I, 43, 1; 49, 6 etc. Tat. Or. Graec., 19, 3 speaks of Apollo in the same terms, so that what we have here is the Gk. understanding.

πρόγνωσις in Greek means "advance knowledge" (a technical term in medicine from the time of Hippocrates). It is found in the LXX at Jdt. 9:6 with reference to the predeterminative knowledge of God.

The reference is to prophetic foreknowledge at Jdt. 11:19; Jos. Ant.,

Power Lookup References:

References TDNT

NT New Testament.

Romans 8:29 29 For those whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, so that He would be the firstborn among many brethren;

Romans 11:2 2 God has not rejected His people whom He foreknew. Or do you not know what the Scripture says in the passage about Elijah, how he pleads with God against Israel?

1 Peter 1:20 20 For He was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but has appeared in these last times for the sake of you

TDNT Volume 1, Page 698 regarded as that which always is; He is the will which has a specific goal, demanding, blessing and judging. The reference, then, is not to...

TDNT Volume 1, Page 706 Did., 5, 2; Barn., 20, 2 (οὐ γινώσκοντες τὸν ποιήσαντα αὐτοῦς, cf. Herm. s., 4, 4). The theoretical aspect of conversion is more strongly...

1 On the underlying apocalyptic world view in 1 Pt. 1:20 (προεγνωσμένου μὲν πρὸ καταβολῆς κόσμου φανερωθέντος δὲ ἐπ' ἐσχάτου τῶν χρόνων), cf. esp. 4 Esr. 6:1ff. and the comm. of R. Knopf and H. Windisch, *ad loc.*

Herm. Pastor Hermae.

Note: The **Power Lookup** tool scans your book and displays the cross references.

If you like the cross reference, then simply type it in the reference box to add it to your list of references.

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software interface. The main window displays the Power Lookup tool. The tool has a search box at the top with the text 'Foreknowledge'. Below the search box, there is a list of references. The first reference is 'Ac 2:23' with the text 'this Jesus, delivered up according to the definite plan and foreknowledge of God, you crucified and killed by the hands of lawless men.' The second reference is '1 Pe 1:2' with the text 'according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, in the sanctification of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and for sprinkling with his blood: May grace and peace be multiplied to you.' At the bottom, there is a search box with the text 'romans 8:29' and a button labeled 'CLICK HERE'.

Power Lookup Search:

English Standard Version DBL Greek Foreknowledge

Add Merge Sort

Foreknowledge Full Compact

ESV 2 passages

Ac 2:23 this Jesus, delivered up according to the definite plan and foreknowledge of God, you crucified and killed by the hands of lawless men.

1 Pe 1:2 according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, in the sanctification of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and for sprinkling with his blood: May grace and peace be multiplied to you.

romans 8:29

Romans 8:29

CLICK HERE

Illustrations/ Applications

3 QUESTIONS EVERY APPLICATION MUST ANSWER

Many times teachers and preachers draw from their own experience for an application. This can be a good strategy now and then. A better strategy is to find Biblical examples of those who obeyed (examples to follow) as well as those who disobeyed (warnings not to follow). Not only will this help you grow in your familiarity with the Bible but it can show the consequences of obeying or disobeying. With this in mind, consider the following four questions to help you and others apply the Biblical text in your life. Every application should be run through this grid of questioning.

Let's explore a command from Jesus, Matthew 5:44, "Love your enemies" through this "grid of questioning".

Thinking: (James 3:13-18, Philippians 4:8)

- What is the right/Christ-like way to think about this matter?
- What is the wrong/Man-centered way to think about this matter?

Speaking: (James 1:1-12, Colossians 4:6, Ephesians 4:29)

- What should not be said?
- What should be said?

Doing - Put Off/Put On: (Colossians 3:8-17, Ephesians 4:17-32, 1 Peter 3:8-9, 2 Peter 2:5-11, Romans 12-15)

- Look at Colossians 3:8-9, Ephesians 4:25-31 and examine these lists and see what needs to be **Put Off/Laid Aside** to "love your enemy"
- Look to Colossians 3:10-17, Ephesians 4:32, etc. and examine these lists and see what needs to be **Put On** to "love your enemy"

Here is a great search to discover "one another" passages in the NT:

❶ Search > Morph Search > @v WITHIN 2 WORDS lemma:ἀλλήλων

[Click here to run the search](#)

Here is a great search to discover all the "commands" passages of the NT:

Note: Keep in mind, this finds all commands so remember "context is king" to determine relevancy

❷ @V??M2 -behold -lemma:ἰδοὺ

[Click here to run the search](#)

Searching

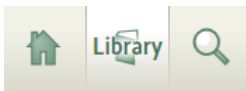
SEARCH FIELDS: A FANTASTIC TREASURE TROVE FOR SAVVY SEARCHERS!

To really supercharge your searches and find what you are looking for in your vast digital library, you need to get a handle on “Search Fields”. Search fields are specially tagged information that allow you to narrow your search and find specific information in a book. An example of a search field that you would recognize is the “Words of Christ”. As you can imagine, searching just the “Words of Christ” is easier than searching the whole Bible.

Search fields can differ from book to book. So let me walk you through the process of field searching.

HOW TO:

- Let’s begin with a Bible. Click the **Library** icon at the top left



- Type **ESV** in the find box

Rank	Title
1	English Standard Version
3	The ESV Study Bible
2	The Lexham High Definition

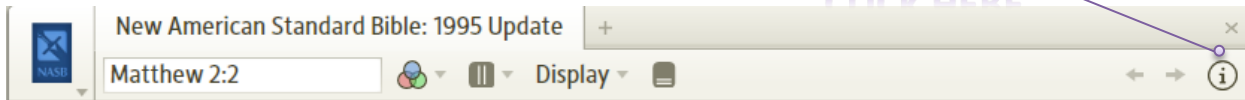
English Standard Version | ESV

The English Standard Version™ is founded on the conviction that the words of the Bible are the very words of God. And because the words themselves—not just the thoughts or ideas—are inspired by God, each word must be translated with the greatest precision and accuracy. As Jesus Himself stressed, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God” (Matt. 4:4). This passion for God’s Word is the driving force behind the translation of the ESV™ Bible. The English Standard Version™ does not try to “improve” on the original in light of today’s culture or by using trendy language. Instead,...

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- ③ At the far right, click the information button

CLICK HERE



- ④ Scroll down (using the vertical scroll bar at the right) to the bottom until you see the section labeled: **Search Fields**

Note: Here are the **Search Fields** for the NASB95. As you can see there are quite a few.

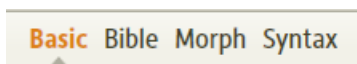
Search Fields	
surface	Text that is visible using default view settings; in interlinears, the top line using default view settings.
footnote	Text that appears in a footnote.
bible	The actual text of the Bible verses, without introductions, headings, etc.
largetext	Large text.
crossref	The text of the pop-up indicator for a cross-reference, and the text of the reference itself.
words-of-christ	Text considered to be the Words of Christ, traditionally the "red-letter" text.
heading	The text of book, chapter and pericope headings.
transnote	The text of the pop-up indicator for a translator's note, and the text of the note itself.

The next step is to create a search using these search fields.

- ⑤ Click on **Search** icon at the top left.



- ⑥ Choose **Basic** search



⑦ Be sure you choose to search the book with the search fields, which in this case is the NASB95

Search All Text in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for *eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace*

Find

⑧ Let's search only the **heading** field. Type the following: **heading:seed** and then press return

Note: to search on the field, you need to simply type the name of the field, followed by a colon.

heading:seed

Note: For phrases, place them in quotes. There is no need for a space after the colon.

Example: heading:"parable of"

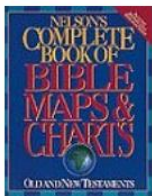
Book Overview and Review

MAPS & CHARTS BOOKS

Nelson's Complete Book of Bible Maps and Charts Revised

This book is packed full of visual aids to help you understand the Bible. Includes maps, charts, tables, and surveys. This book is 512 pages! In it you will find:

- Reproducible maps and charts to help you visualize and teach the events, places, and people in the OT/NT
- Easy-to-understand tables
- Overviews
- Maps
- Surveys
- Timelines



This image is for illustration only. The product is a download.

Works on:

Retail: \$ 19.99

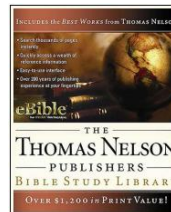
Nelson's Complete Book of Bible Maps and Charts Revised

by Thomas Nelson Publishers.
Thomas Nelson | ©1996.

\$19.99

ADD TO CART

It may also be found in:



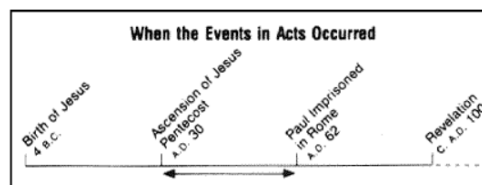
Retail: \$ 29.99 (better value!)

Here is a sample:

▼ Acts

Author
Date
Themes and Literary Structure
Acts at a Glance
Outline of Acts
The Nations of Pentecost
Major Sermons in Acts
Philip's Travels
Peter's Travels
Dreams and Visions
Peter and Paul Compared
The Life of Paul
Paul's Ministry
The Career of the Apostle Paul
Paul's First and Second Journeys
Paul's Third and Fourth Journeys
New Testament Deliverances
New Testament Journeys
Paul's Prison Experiences
Early Christian Churches

FOCUS	WITNESS IN JERUSALEM		WITNESS IN JUDEA AND SAMARIA	WITNESS TO THE END OF THE EARTH	
REFERENCE	1:1 ————— 3:1		8:5 —————	13:1 —————	21:17 —28:31
DIVISION	POWER OF THE CHURCH	PROGRESS OF THE CHURCH	EXPANSION OF THE CHURCH	PAUL'S THREE JOURNEYS	PAUL'S TRIALS
TOPIC	JEWS		SAMARITANS	GENTILES	
	PETER		PHILIP	PAUL	
LOCATION	JERUSALEM		JUDEA AND SAMARIA	UTTERMOST PART	
TIME	2 YEARS (A.D. 33-35)		13 YEARS (A.D. 35-48)	14 YEARS (A.D. 48-62)	



Note: With all 66 books of the Bible covered, this will help any Bible Study!

how to Study the Bible

NUMBERS: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Numbers](#)

[NICOT: The Book of Numbers](#)

[ICC: A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on Numbers](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Numbers](#)

[Preaching the Word: Numbers – God’s Presence in the Wilderness](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Numbers](#)

[Lange’s Commentary: Numbers](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: Numbers](#)

[JPS Torah Commentary: Numbers](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Counted: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley’s Notes: Numbers](#)

Outlines

[The Book of Numbers by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Exodus Commentaries

Collection Name: Numbers Resources

Collection Rule: subject:numbers

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS PRAYER LIFE, Part 3 / 7

PRINCIPLE #3

Jesus demonstrates to us the need to seek guidance in prayer in anticipation of upcoming decisions and events. Seeking God's wisdom ([James 1:5](#)) and will in these matters through prayer and His Word, must not be neglected regardless of the activities that may be required to plan and prepare for ministering.

A) Jesus Prayed Before Significant Decisions: Apostles Chosen.

One of the more remarkable passages of prayer is [Luke 6:12-16](#), the choosing of the twelve apostles. Specifically in Luke 6:12 are two points that need emphasizing. First is the phrase 'He spent the whole night' and 'prayer to God'. Jesus spent the whole night watching and persevering in this vigil (Louis Godet, [A Commentary on the Gospel of St. Luke](#), p. 299) and coupled with 'prayer to God' which is an objective genitive not a subjective genitive (Daniel B. Wallace, [Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics - Exegetical Syntax of the New Testament](#), p. 117). Therefore, grammatically, we may conclude that Jesus communed with the Father in a specific prayer about the decision to choose the twelve apostles, setting aside the second priority of sleep.

B) Jesus Prayed Before Significant Events: Betrayal, Arrest, & Cross.

In one of the most revealing passages into the mind and heart of Christ regarding His death on the cross we see three prayers of petition by the Lord Jesus Christ in the garden of Gethsemane ([Matthew 26:36-46](#), [Mark 14:32-42](#); [Luke 22:40-46](#)). First, we have Jesus withdrawing with several close disciples, and then, secondly, withdrawing Himself from them to pray alone. We see how Jesus prayed about His death on the cross that was about to take place and the sin bearing and resulting defilement from man's iniquity. No doubt His agony is reflected in these prayers/petitions (John F. MacArthur, [Matthew Commentary 24-28](#), p. 170). Three supplications were offered and stand before us never to forget that in the face of any trial, difficulty, and/or decision, we must call upon the Lord in prayer.

how to Preach

INTRODUCTIONS: SUGGESTIONS TO CAPTURE THE AUDIENCE'S ATTENTION

Here are some ideas for your next introduction for teaching and preaching.

- Place a familiar idea inside an unfamiliar setting
- Employ a rhetorical question
- Share a startling fact
- Provide a provocative comment
- Illustrate a Paradox
- A touch of humor
- Begin a story
- Utilize a confrontive statement
- Let the passage introduce

Don't forget that introductions should uncover and address a need (make it personal), introduce the sermon, overview the sermon points, connect it to the Biblical passage, and make it urgent/pressing.

Don't forget to check out and [sign-up](#) for Sermon Central's Better Preaching eNewsletter.

Q & A

BIBLE CROSS-REFERENCING

Q1: John, how do you personally use cross referencing in your sermons?

A1: I use Biblical cross references in the following way:

- ❶ *Repeat the point:* I am looking for another Bible verse that states the exact same idea. It may be a parallel passage or an OT quote in the NT, or vice versa.
- ❷ *Expand the point:* In this instance I am looking to “fill out” the idea. You will want to provide additional cross references that deepens the understanding. For example, if I am talking about the topic of love for family, I might cross reference to Ruth.
- ❸ *Contrast the point:* These kinds of cross references are important, especially if you want to make a strong point. Just look at the Book of Proverbs, they are filled with them!
- ❹ Additionally, I use between two to three cross references
- ❺ Lastly, I typically place my cross references after my explanation. However, on occasion I place them before or in the middle of my exposition.

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter! tips@learnlogos.com

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

BONUS ISSUE!

LearnLogos.com/john
Blog: www.StudyTheBibleToday.com

LearnLOGOS.com

eNewsletter

A New & Better World of Training

Volume 6, Issue 2/2 **5x the Normal Content! 100 pages, 65 Examples!**

John Fallahee, M.B.A., M.Div.
Your Personal Training Assistant!

[Interactive Training](#) [Webinars](#) [Bible Studies](#) [Distant Education Class](#) [Personalized Training](#) [Tips, Tricks, and Helps](#)

Welcome! More than a Manual...

If you like this eNewsletter let us know and tell others on [Facebook](#)! Now let's get ready to **LearnLogos**!

Note: You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about all of the available training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks and Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO & Video Trainer

RECENT NEWS

❶ Brand new website launched! Check it out [LearnLogos.com](#)

❷ **Update** to Training CDs Released - 60 New Videos / 7 Hours of Training Released – [Check it out, click here](#)

Download Only



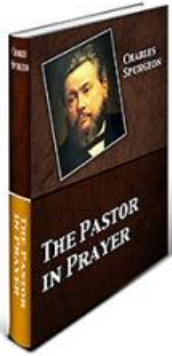
❸ More Webinars Released! *Only ~~\$9.99~~ \$4.99 for each download.*

- [Click Here to learn more](#)
 - Inductive Bible Study for Logos 4 (12 Webinars Available)
 - Studying the Bible with Logos 4 (12 Webinars Available)
 - Preparing Sermons with Logos 4 (12 Webinars Available)

Note: Most webinars are 1 ½ hours in length! Amazing value!

❹ 36 New Webinars coming starting in November!

Alert: **FREE BOOK**



- The Pastor in Prayer by Spurgeon, Charles H. | 1893
- [Click Here for Free Book](#)

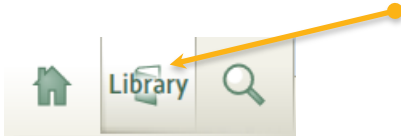
Optimizing LOGOS 4

THE GRID VIEW

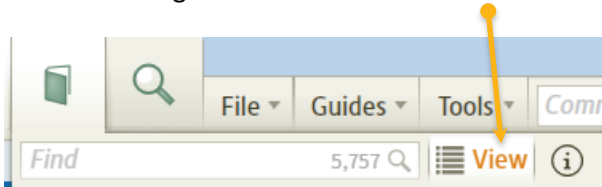
The grid view will help you see more books when you are viewing your library. In fact, you can double and nearly triple the number of books in your library view.

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main toolbar and **click** the book icon labeled library

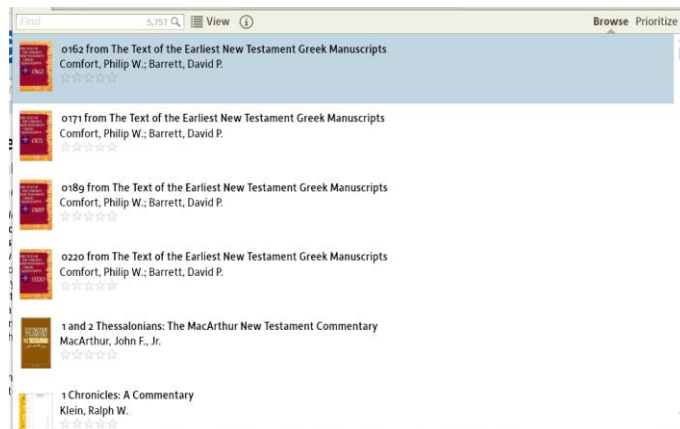


- 2 Go to the right of the find box and **click View**

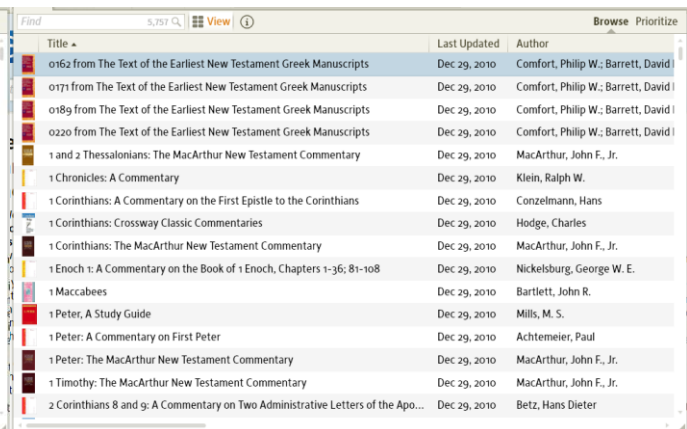


- 3 Please note how you have more books in the library browser space. Here is a side by side comparison.

BEFORE: Your Original Library View



AFTER: Your Improved Library View



Optimizing LOGOS 4

CHOOSING COLUMNS

In the library view you can access additional information about a book, beyond just the title and author. This is especially important when trying to see 'groups' or 'collections' of books.

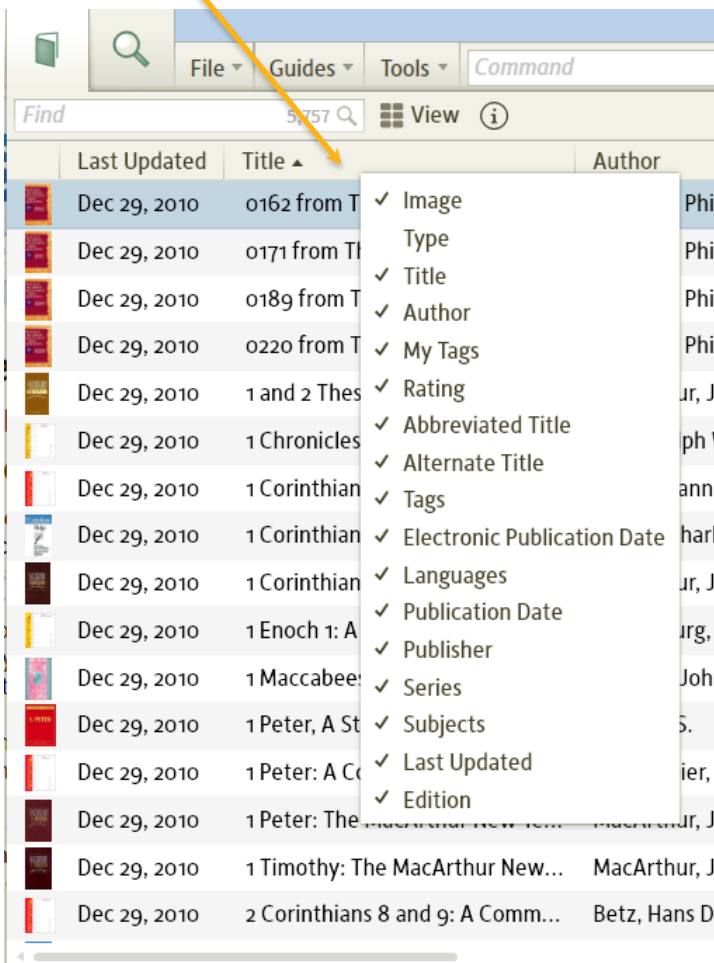
HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main toolbar and **click** the **book icon** labeled library



- 2 **Right click** on the column labeled "Title"

Note: Here is a list of all the additional information associated with your books. The columns with the **checkmark** are viewable in your library browser view. The columns with no **checkmark** can be selected to be viewed.

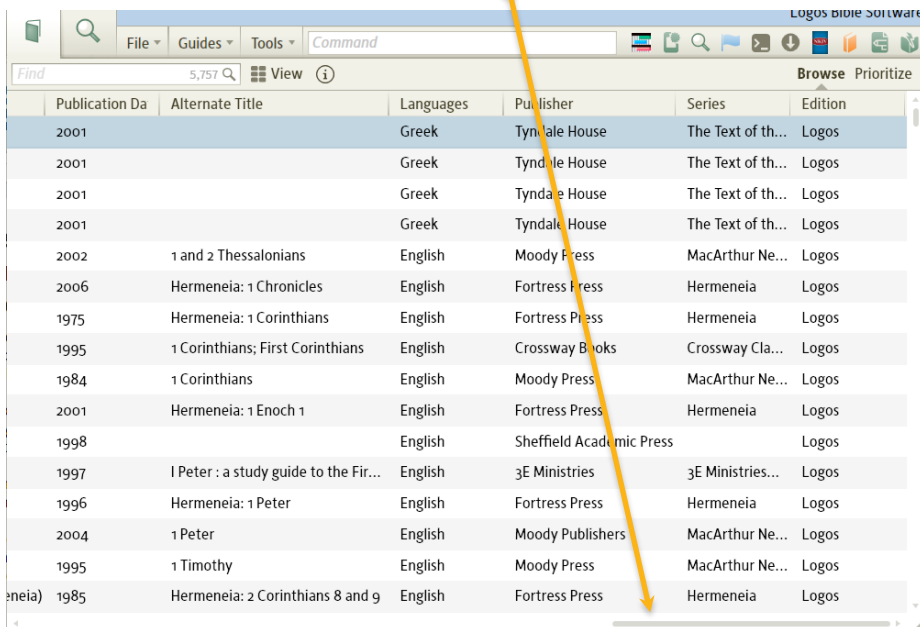


③ Click **type** or any **unchecked** item from the menu to **add** that column to your library browser view.

Note: When you click an item from the list, the menu disappears. Therefore, you will have to repeat the steps 1-3 to select other items from the list. To remove a column, simply click an item from the list with a check mark.



④ If you **scroll to the right** with the **horizontal scroll bar**, you can view all the columns.



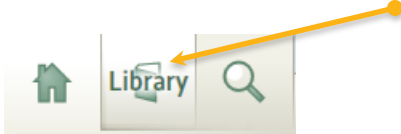
Optimizing LOGOS 4

CHANGING THE ORDER OF THE COLUMNS

Now that you have added all these new columns of information, over time, you will view some columns more than others. Therefore, it will be important to place the most frequently used columns to the left and the least frequently used columns to the right

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main toolbar and **click** the **book icon** labeled library



- 2 Left click on a column name and **drag** it to your preferred position

Note: The column name will go **semi-transparent** as you drag it to the left. A **black line** will appear between two columns to signify where the new column will be placed.

Find	5,757	View	Info	Browse	Prioritize
Last Updated	Title	Author	Subjects	Subjects	
Dec 29, 2010	0162 from The Text of the Earli...	Comfort, Philip W.; Barrett, David P.	Bible. N.T.--Manuscripts(Papyri).; Bible. N.T.--		
Dec 29, 2010	0171 from The Text of the Earlie...	Comfort, Philip W.; Barrett, David P.	Bible. N.T.--Manuscripts(Papyri).; Bible. N.T.--		
Dec 29, 2010	0189 from The Text of the Earli...	Comfort, Philip W.; Barrett, David P.	Bible. N.T.--Manuscripts(Papyri).; Bible. N.T.--		
Dec 29, 2010	0220 from The Text of the Earli...	Comfort, Philip W.; Barrett, David P.	Bible. N.T.--Manuscripts(Papyri).; Bible. N.T.--		
Dec 29, 2010	1 and 2 Thessalonians: The Mac...	MacArthur, John F., Jr.	Bible. N.T. Thessalonians--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Chronicles: A Commentary	Klein, Ralph W.	Bible. O.T. Chronicles, 1st--Commentaries.; B		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Corinthians: A Commentary o...	Conzelmann, Hans	Bible. N.T. 1 Corinthians--Commentaries.; Bib		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Corinthians: Crossway Classic...	Hodge, Charles	Bible. N.T. 1 Corinthians--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Corinthians: The MacArthur N...	MacArthur, John F., Jr.	Bible. N.T. Corinthians, 1st--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Enoch 1: A Commentary on th...	Nickelsburg, George W. E.	Ethiopic book of Enoch--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Maccabees	Bartlett, John R.	Bible. O.T. Apocrypha Maccabees, 1st--Critici		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Peter, A Study Guide	Mills, M. S.	Bible. N.T. 1 Peter--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Peter: A Commentary on First...	Achtemeier, Paul	Bible. N.T. 1 Peter--Commentaries.; Bible--Cc		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Peter: The MacArthur New Te...	MacArthur, John F., Jr.	Bible. N.T. Peter--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	1 Timothy: The MacArthur New...	MacArthur, John F., Jr.	Bible N.T. Timothy, 1st--Commentaries.		
Dec 29, 2010	2 Corinthians 8 and 9: A Comm...	Betz, Hans Dieter	Bible. N.T. 2 Corinthians--Commentaries.; Bit		

Optimizing LOGOS 4

PRIORITIZING YOUR BOOKS

Prioritizing your books in Logos 4 is an important step to take in optimizing your Logos experience. I don't know about you, but there are so many reports and search results with links and information that I feel I am on a precipice ready to fall into the bottomless pit of "information overload"! Hence, the need to prioritize your books!

Therefore, let's identify and prioritize the most important and most frequently used books in your library.

Categories

Bibles: You need to choose five of your favorite

Hebrew Dictionaries and Lexicons: Choose at least two (1 Concise, 1 in-depth)

Greek Dictionaries and Lexicons: Choose at least two (1 Concise, 1 in-depth)

Bible Dictionaries: Choose at least two (1 Concise, 1 in-depth)

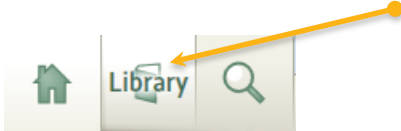
English Dictionaries: Choose one

Commentaries: Choose one concise commentary

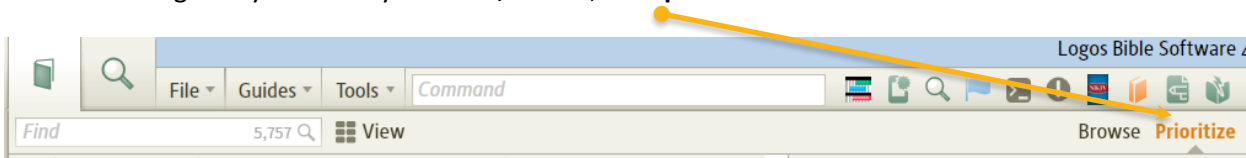
Now you might be asking, "How do I prioritize my books?" I thought you would never ask.

HOW TO:

❶ Go to the main toolbar and **click** the **book icon** labeled library



❷ At the far right of your Library browser/viewer, **click prioritize**.

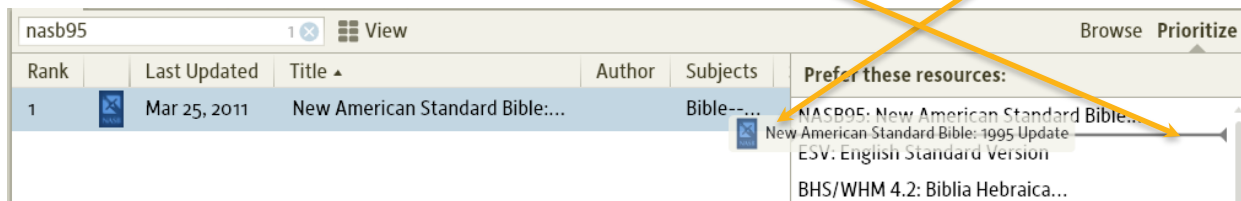


The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

③ Using the find box in the library browser, type in the name of a book you wish to prioritize; say the NASB95 Bible.

Once it appears in the library browser, drag it to the prioritize section.

Note: I recommend left clicking on the title. When you drag, the book title will be a **little transparent**. Additionally, when you drag to the prioritize section at the right; you will see a **black line**, which signifies where the resource will be placed.



Now you may be wondering what my priority list looks like, so I have included it below. Keep in mind, because every library is different, you may not have some of my resources listed below.

Rank	Last Updated	Title	Author	Subjects
1	Mar 25, 2011	New American Standard Bible:...		Bible--...

Five Key Bibles

- NASB95: New American Standard Bible:...
- ESV: English Standard Version
- BHS/WHM 4.2: Biblia Hebraica...
- Lexham LXX Interlinear: The Lexham Greek...
- NA27 w/GRAMCORD: Nestle-Aland Greek

One Concise Commentary

- The Bible Knowledge Commentary

Key Greek Dictionaries Ordered from most concise To most indepth

- DBL Greek: Dictionary of Biblical Languages...
- LXGRCANLEX: The Lexham Analytical...
- ANLEX: Analytical Lexicon of the Greek New...
- Louw-Nida: Greek-English Lexicon of the...
- Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of...
- Greek-English Dict. of N.T.: A Concise Greek...
- A Greek-English Lexicon of the New...
- An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon
- LSJ: A Greek-English Lexicon
- WSNTDICT: The Complete Word Study...
- WSOTDICT: The Complete Word Study...
- EDNT: The Exegetical Dictionary of the New...
- NIDNTT: New International Dictionary of...
- NIDOTTE: New International Dictionary of...
- Little Kittel: The Theological Dictionary of...
- A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of...
- BDAG: A Greek-English Lexicon of the New...
- BAGD: A Greek-English Lexicon of the New...
- TDNT: The Theological Dictionary of the...

Key Hebrew Dictionaries

- DBL Hebrew: Dictionary of Biblical...
- BDB: Enhanced Brown-Driver-Briggs...
- TWOT: Theological Wordbook of the Old...
- HAL: The Hebrew & Aramaic Lexicon of the...
- HAL Aramaic: The Hebrew & Aramaic...

Key Bible Dictionaries

- ABD: The Anchor Yale Bible Dictionary
- Eerdmans Dictionary of the Bible

Key English Dictionary

- MW Collegiate Dict. (11th Ed.): Merriam-...

Key Commentary Series

- Word Biblical Commentary | 58 volumes

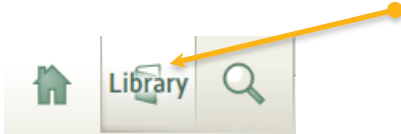
Optimizing LOGOS 4

RIGHT CLICK ON A TITLE

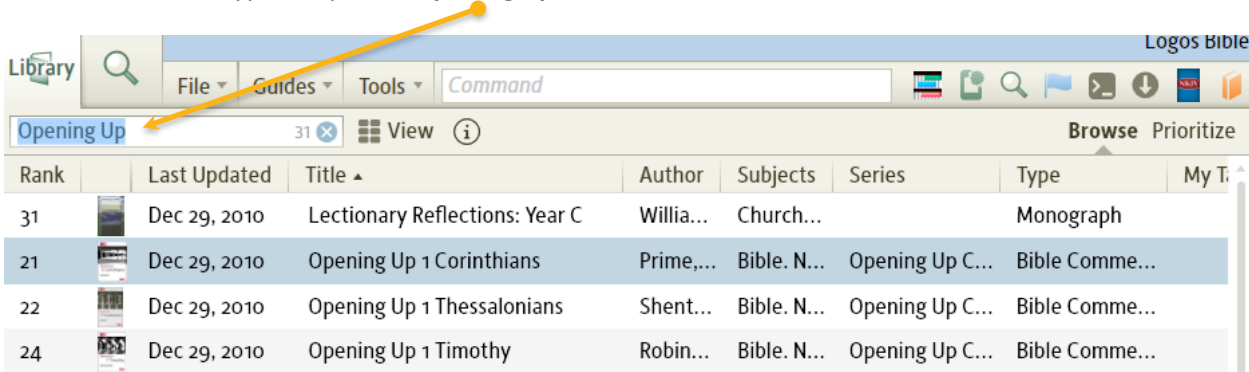
Hidden menus are powerful and usually a huge time saver, but they are not easy to find! One such hidden menu is found in the library browser view which makes adding and prioritizing a series a cinch!

HOW TO:

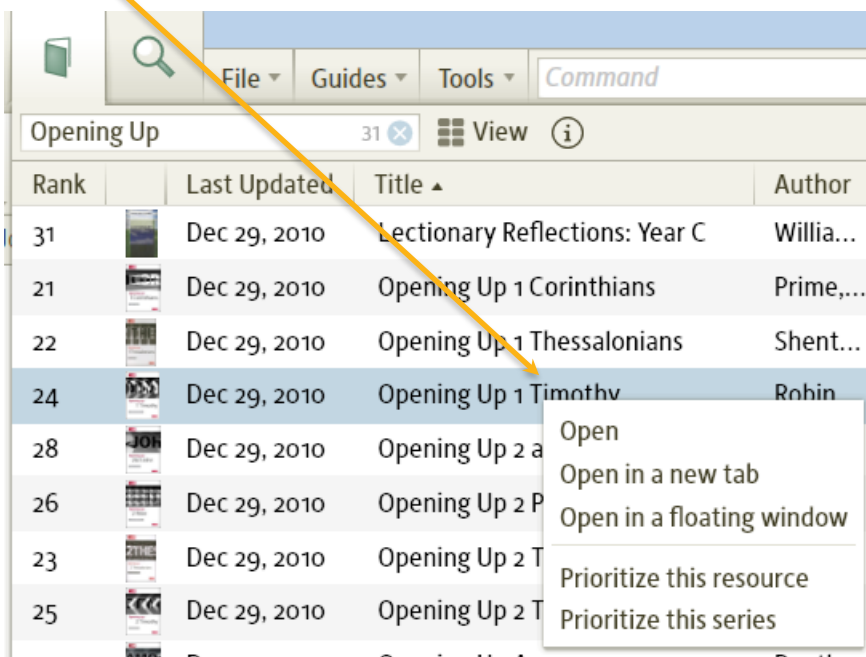
- 1 Go to the main toolbar and **click** the **book icon** labeled library



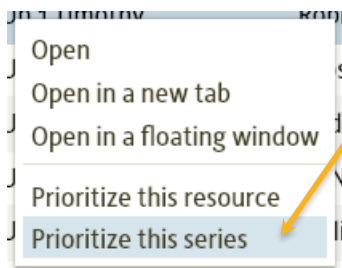
- 2 In the find box, type the phrase **opening up**



- 3 **Right click** on the title of any one of the “opening up” titles in the library browser

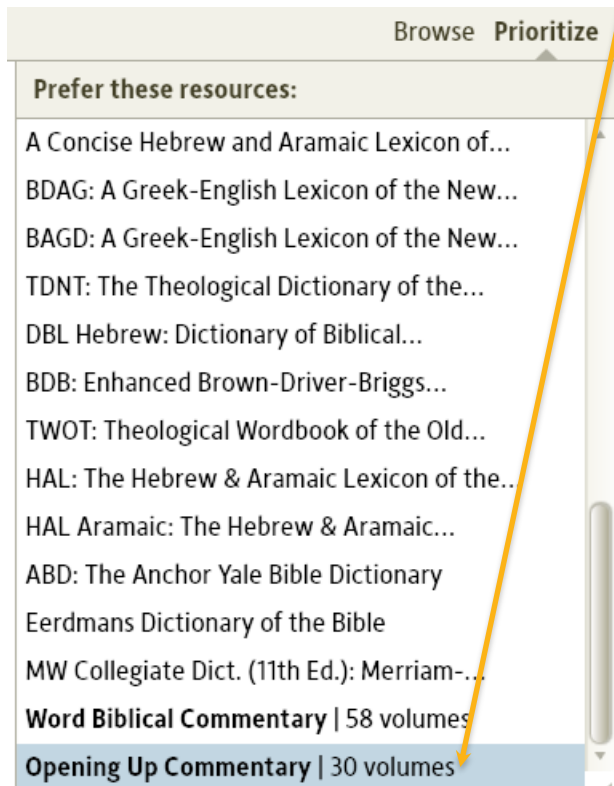


④ Choose from the menu **Prioritize this series**



⑤ Your “Opening Up” series has now been **added to the end** of your prioritization list

Note: You can now drag it to where you prefer in the list



Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS IN THE PSALMS: Thanksgiving

One of the most amazing books in the Bible is the book of Psalms. This book is rich for so many reasons: theology, types of prayers, heart of worship, the heights and depths of emotion, not to mention the prophecies of Christ and so much more!

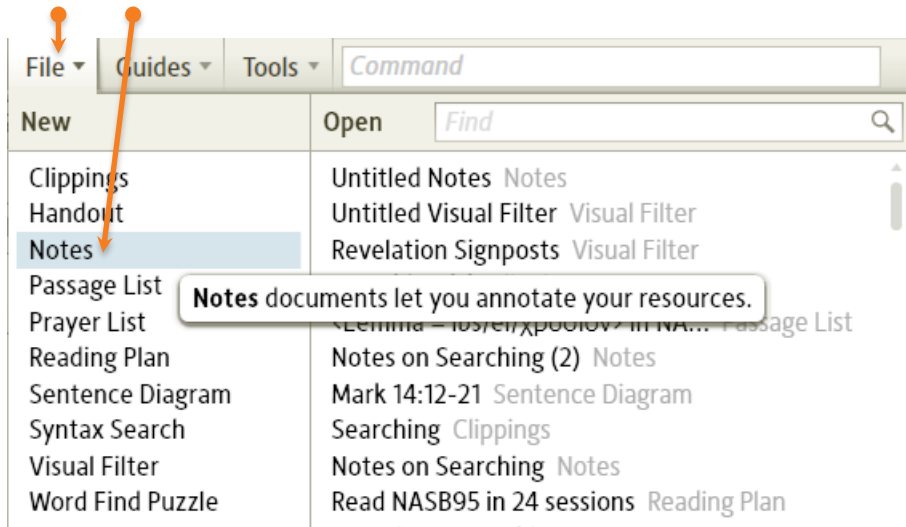
To know Psalms is not just to know David who penned the majority of this literature, but to know God!

So let's look at five types of prayers in Psalms: thanksgiving, lament, penitential, Messianic/Christ, and imprecatory prayer. For this exercise, let's simply read the psalms, and take notes on what we learn. Let's use this time to draw near to God. Don't forget to click the link to the Psalm to have Logos open the Psalm for you. Additionally, I have added a link to the passage guide so that if you wish to study further, you can learn more about the Psalm through the Passage Guide and Exegetical Guide. By the way, some Psalms mix these themes and therefore, may repeat in the lists below.

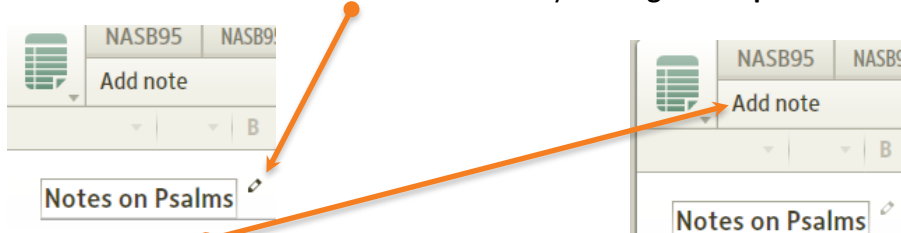
In your notes, use the outline in section 4 for observing the text and taking notes:

HOW TO:

1 File > Notes



2 Rename the note file to **Notes on Psalms** by clicking on the pencil icon.



3 Click **add note** and begin taking notes



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)
\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99) *50% Off
Best Practices (2-CD set)
\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)
ORDER TODAY
LearnLogos.com/discount
Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

NOW YOU CAN GET THE VERY MOST FROM LOGOS BIBLE SOFTWARE 4
Customer testimonials describe LearnLogos training as...

- "thrilling"
- "easy"
- "comprehensive"
- "effective"
- "incredible"
- "fun"
- "excellent"
- "affordable"
- "best value"
- "satisfied"
- "the best"
- "high quality"

DON'T JUST TAKE HOME TRAINING. TAKE HOME THE TRAINER.

John has trained tens of thousands of people through his training videos and training workshops. As a former employee of Logos Bible Software, he developed and pioneered their first ever online training videos for Logos 3. John has trained notable people like **Kay Arthur**, **Mark Dever**, **Irvin Lutzer**, and **John Piper**!

John Fallahee, MBA, M.Div.
Your Personal Training Assistant



The **NEW GOLD** STANDARD in Training!

④ Here are five specific observational questions to get you started

Add note

B / ABC X² X₂

Hyperlink

Notes on Psalms ✎

Full | Compact

■

Thanksgiving Psalms Observations

✕

What does the Psalmist thank God for?

How does the Psalmist describe God? (Hint: names of God)

What events were connected to the Psalmist's thanksgiving?

What time and where does the Psalmist thank God? (if details are given)

How can you thank God?

Bonus: [Click Here](#) to run a search that will find some psalms regarding prayers of thanksgiving in the NASB.

NASB95 NASB95 NASB95 NASB95 NASB95

Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search Heading Text in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for

thanksgiving WITHIN 10 WORDS psalm

eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

Psalms of Thanksgiving:

Psalm	Passage Guide	Exegetical Guide
Psalm 8	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 18	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 19	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 29	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 30	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 32	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 33	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 34	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 40	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 41	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 66	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 103	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 104	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 105	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 106	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 111	Click Here	Click Here

12

Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS IN THE PSALMS: Lament

HOW TO:

❶ Here are five specific observational questions to get you started

■ Lament Psalms Observations

What does the Psalmist lament/grieve/complain about to God?

How does the Psalmist describe God? (Hint: names of God)

What events were connected to the Psalmist's lament?

What time and where does the Psalmist thank God? (if details are given)

Do you have a lament for the Lord?

Bonus: [Click Here](#) to run a search that will find some psalms regarding prayers of lament in the NASB.

The screenshot shows the Logos search interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a dropdown menu showing 'Notes on Psalms'. Below the search bar, there is a 'Make Filter' button and a 'Basic Bible Morph Syntax' dropdown menu. The search text entered is 'Heading Text in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for (rescue, lament) WITHIN 10 WORDS psalm'. To the right of the search text, there is a hint: 'eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace'.

Psalms of Lament:

Psalm	Passage Guide	Exegetical Guide
Psalm 3	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 4	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 5	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 12	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 13	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 22	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 35	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 37	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 38	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 39	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 40	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 42	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 43	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 44	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 54	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 55	Click Here	Click Here

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Psalm 56	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 57	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 59	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 60	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 61	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 63	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 64	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 69	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 70	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 71	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 74	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 79	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 80	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 83	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 85	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 86	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 88	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 90	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 109	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 120	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 123	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 140	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 141	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 142	Click Here	Click Here



Interactive Training



100+ Videos
10+ Hours of Training
Free Updates

[Learn More](#)

[BUY NOW](#)

Distant Education Class



Learn at Your Pace

Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules

[Learn More](#)

[BUY NOW](#)

Click One, Click Both!

Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS IN THE PSALMS: Prayers of Repentance

HOW TO:

❶ Here are five specific observational questions to get you started

■ Prayers of Repentance

What does the Psalmist repent about to God?


How does the Psalmist describe God? (Hint: names of God)

What events were connected to the Psalmist's repentance?

What time and where does the Psalmist repent to God? (if details are given)

Do you need to repent to the Lord?

Bonus: [Click Here](#) to run a search that will find some psalms regarding prayers of repentance in the NASB.



Basic Bible Morph Syntax

Search [Heading Text](#) in [New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update](#) for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

Psalms of Lament:

Psalm	Passage Guide	Exegetical Guide
Psalm 6	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 32	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 38	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 51	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 102	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 130	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 143	Click Here	Click Here

Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS IN THE PSALMS: Messianic (Christ)

HOW TO:

❶ Here are five specific observational questions to get you started

■ Psalms about the Messiah

What does the Psalmist say about and to the Messiah?

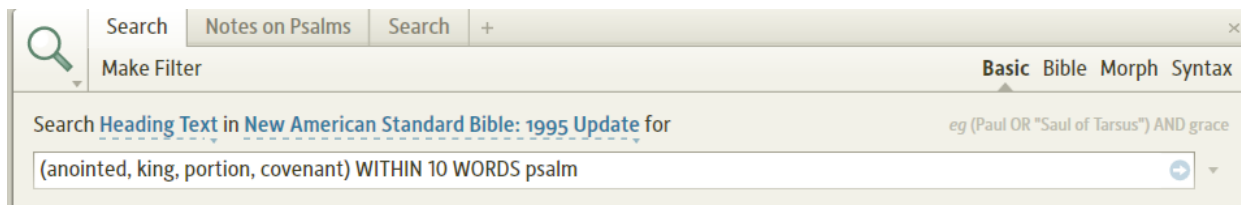
How does the Psalmist describe the Messiah? (Hint: names for the Messiah)

What events were connected to the Psalmist's Messiah?

What time and where does the Psalmist speak about the Messiah? (if details are given)

What new information have you learned about the Messiah?

Bonus: [Click Here](#) to run a search that will find some Messianic psalms in the NASB.



The screenshot shows the Logos 4 search interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a dropdown menu showing 'Search' and 'Notes on Psalms'. Below the search bar, there is a 'Make Filter' button. The search results are displayed in a table with columns for 'Search', 'Heading Text', and 'New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for'. The search criteria are '(anointed, king, portion, covenant) WITHIN 10 WORDS psalm'. The results show 'eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace'.

Messianic Psalms:

Psalm	Passage Guide	Exegetical Guide
Psalm 7	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 35	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 40	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 55	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 59	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 110	Click Here	Click Here

Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS IN THE PSALMS: Imprecatory Prayer

HOW TO:

❶ Here are five specific observational questions to get you started

■ Imprecatory Psalms

What does the Psalmist plead to God about?

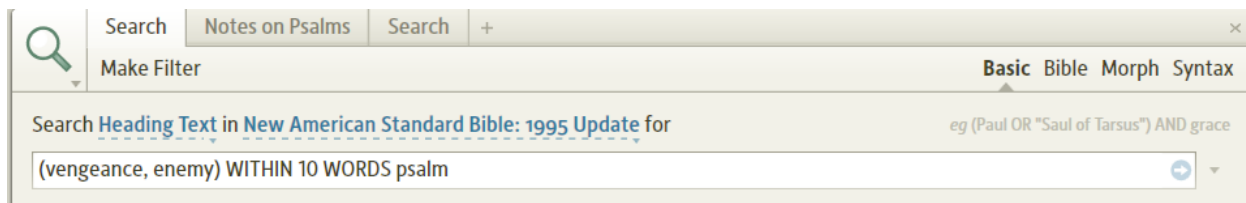
How does the Psalmist describe God? (Hint: names of God)

What events were connected to the Psalmist's imprecatory psalm?

What time and where does the Psalmist please God? (if details are given)

Have you prayed or need to pray an imprecatory prayer?

Bonus: [Click Here](#) to run a search that will find some imprecatory psalms in the NASB.



Imprecatory Psalms:

Psalm	Passage Guide	Exegetical Guide
Psalm 7	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 35	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 40	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 55	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 59	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 69	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 79	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 109	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 137	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 139	Click Here	Click Here
Psalm 144	Click Here	Click Here

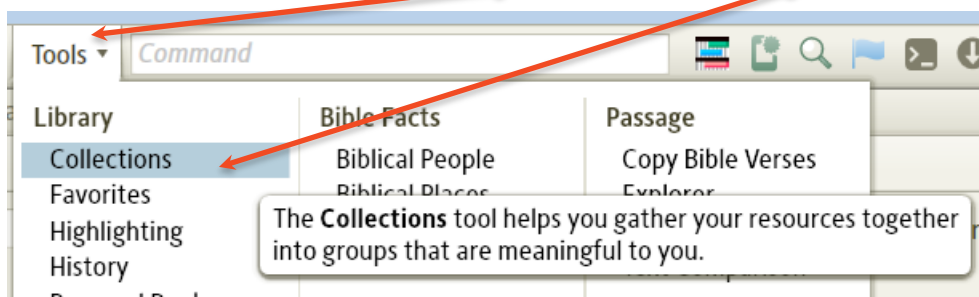
Historical/Theological Background

RESEARCHING FOR GENERAL HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

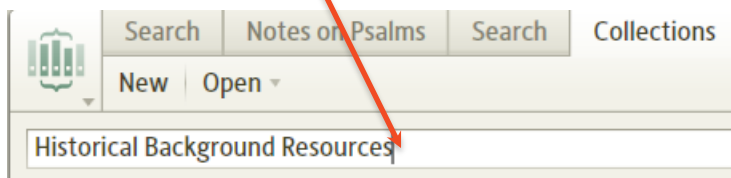
Researching historical background can be a daunting task for any passage of Scripture. When you consider the limited amount of data we have and the distance between those events from our own time; it's amazing we have any insights into the past. However, with Logos and some key resources we can gather at least a good sketch and sometimes even more to gain an interpretative insight. So before you set off on your next archeological adventure in Logos 4, be sure to pack with your travel gear a good collection of resources.

HOW TO: (Create a Collection)

- 1 Go to the main menu, and choose **Tools**, then choose **Collections**.



- 2 Name the Rule **Historical Background Resources**



- 3 **Copy** and **Paste** the complete rule below into the rule box

Note: Even though you may not have all the resources in this rule, it will still work correctly. The collection comprises of commentaries with historical background information, archaeological resources, surveys, handbooks, dictionaries, encyclopedias, and more.

Start with resources matching:

cal archaeology society" OR title:"Bible Review" OR title:"new testament introduction" OR title:"survey of old testament introduction" -

+ Plus these resources:

- Minus these resources:

Drop resources or collections to add here.

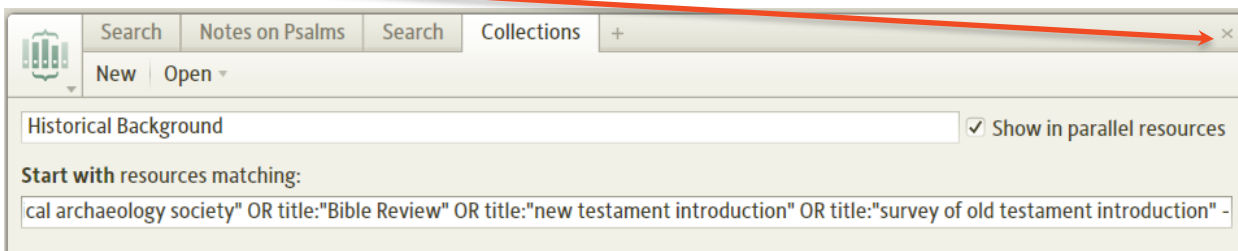
Drop resources or collections to subtract here.

(See next page for the rule)

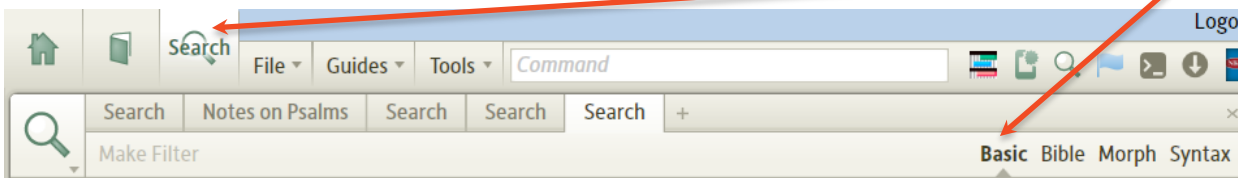
Rule:

"bible knowledge commentary" OR "teacher's commentary" OR "bible exposition commentary" OR "holman Concise Bible Commentary" OR "Commentary Critical" OR "opening up" OR "the new american commentary" OR "Holman New Testament Commentary" OR "Holman Old Testament Commentary" OR "the pulpit commentary" OR "NIGTC" OR "Keil" OR title:"a handbook on" OR "Baker exegetical" OR "baker new testament commentary" OR "Believers Church Bible Commentary" OR "Believer's Church Bible Commentary" OR "CCGNT" OR "pillar new testament" OR "horae" OR "International Critical Commentary" OR "macarthur new testament" OR "word biblical commentary" OR "exploring the old testament" OR "exploring the new testament" OR "summarized bible" OR "survey of old testament" OR "old testament survey series" OR title:"bible handbook" OR "jensen's survey" OR author:"donald guthrie" OR title:"easton's bible" OR title:"harper's bible" OR "new bible dictionary" OR title:"holman bible atlas" OR title:"exhaustive dictionary of bible names" OR title:"dictionary of bible themes" OR title:"eerdmans bible dictionary" OR title:"eerdmans dictionary" OR title:"archaeological encyclopedia of the" OR title:"oxford dictionary" OR title:"baker encyclopedia of the bible" OR title:"encyclopedia of christianity" OR title:"encyclopaedia of judaism" OR title:"dictionary of deities" OR ISBE OR title:"wycliffe bible encyclopedia" OR title:"anchor yale" OR "images of the holy land" OR title:"holy land" OR title:"biblical archaeologist" OR title:"archaeology odyssey" OR "Biblical archaeology society" OR title:"Bible Review" OR title:"new testament introduction" OR title:"survey of old testament introduction" - "lectionary" - "when skeptics ask" - "handbook on world views"

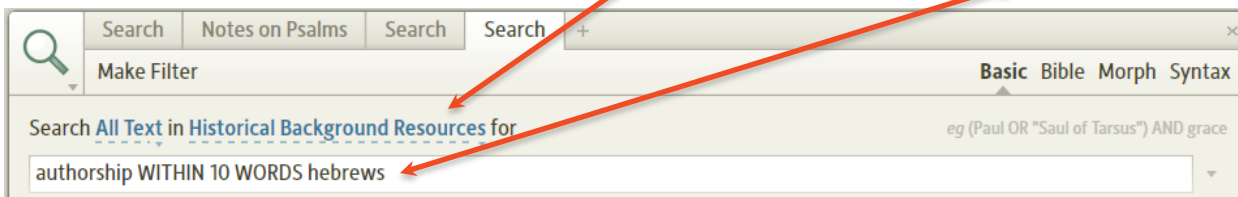
④ Click the "x" to close the collection tab.



⑤ You are now ready to search this collection. Go to the main menu and choose **Search**, then **Basic Search**



⑥ Choose your new collection **Historical Background Resources** and type your **search criteria**. Here is one example:



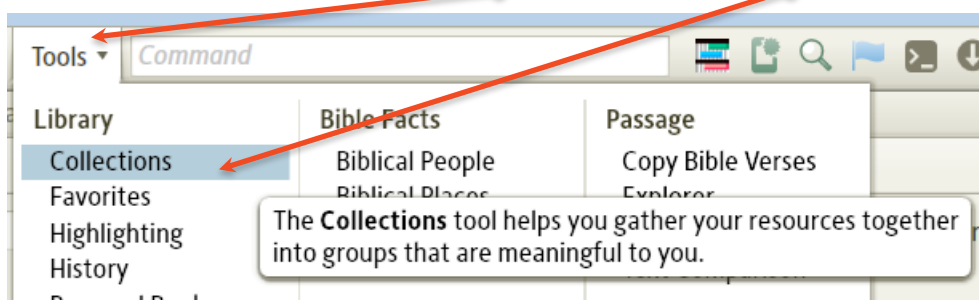
Historical/Theological Background

RESEARCHING FOR GENERAL THEOLOGICAL BACKGROUND

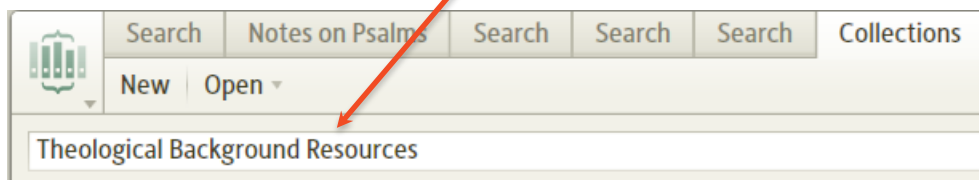
Researching theological background can be as challenging as researching historical background. Therefore, let's take the same approach. Let's identify a set of resources to serve our research needs.

HOW TO: (Create a Collection)

- 1 Go to the main menu, and choose **Tools**, then choose **Collections**.



- 2 Name the Rule **Theological Background Resources**



- 3 **Copy** and **Paste** the complete rule below into the rule box

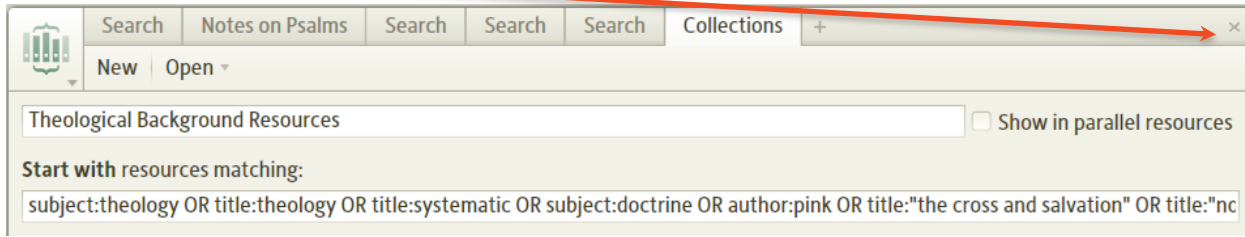
Note: Even though you may not have all the resources in this rule, it will still work correctly. The collection comprises of key resources associated with theology.

Start with resources matching:
subject:theology OR title:theology OR title:systematic OR subject:doctrine OR author:pink OR title:"the cross and salvation" OR title:"nc

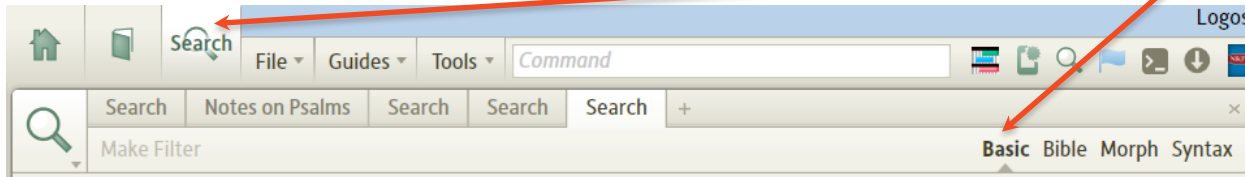
Rule:

subject:theology OR title:theology OR title:systematic OR subject:doctrine OR author:pink OR title:"the cross and salvation" OR title:"no one like him"

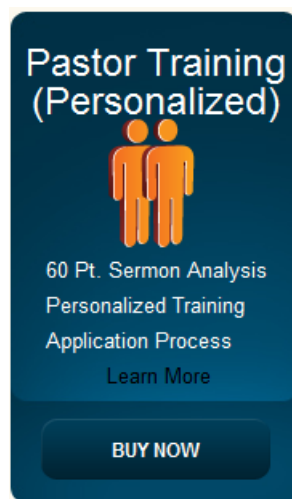
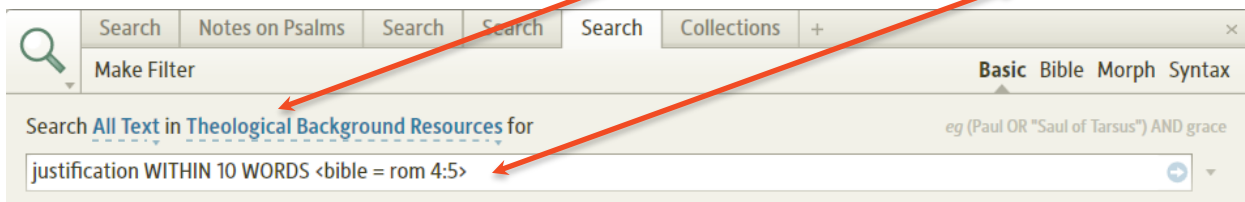
④ Click the “x” to close the collection tab.



⑤ You are now ready to search this collection. Go to the main menu and choose **Search**, then **Basic Search**



⑥ Choose your new collection **Theological Background Resources** and type your **search criteria**. Here is one example:



Historical/Theological Background

CHURCH HISTORY

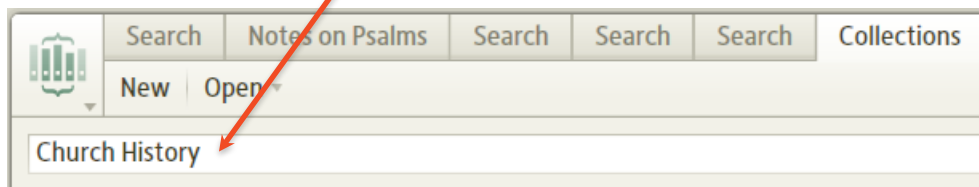
Church history is an important topic to be familiar with when it comes to Bible Study. For example, you can research various interpretations of the Scriptures and doctrines from different time periods. In fact, with the right set of collections and in some cases, you can trace a doctrine over the centuries and see its impact even today! Wow! How cool is that! Therefore, like our two previous examples, let's create a collection and identify a set of resources to serve our research needs.

HOW TO: (Create a Collection)

- 1 Go to the main menu, and choose **Tools**, then choose **Collections**.



- 2 Name the Rule **Church History**



- 3 **Copy** and **Paste** the complete rule below into the rule box

Note: Even though you may not have all the resources in this rule, it will still work correctly. The collection comprises of key resources associated with theology.

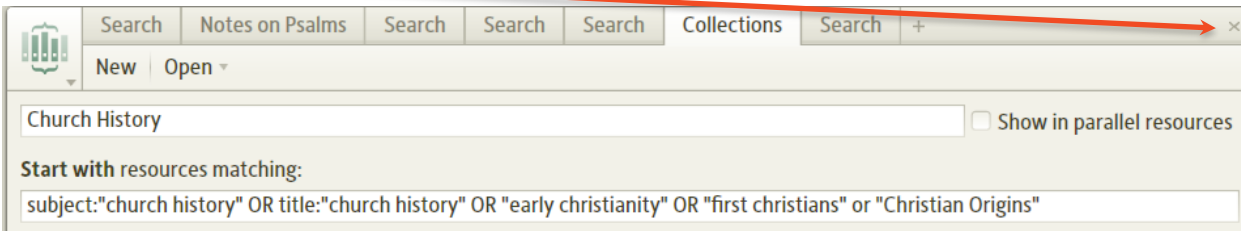
Start with resources matching:

subject:"church history" OR title:"church history" OR "early christianity" OR "first christians" or "Christian Origins"

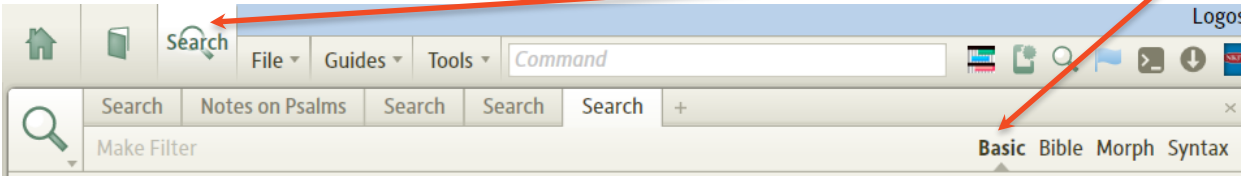
Rule:

subject:"church history" OR title:"church history" OR "early christianity" OR "first christians" OR "Christian Origins"

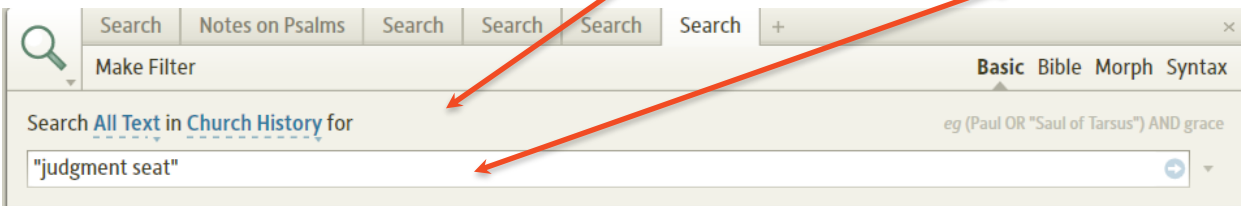
④ Click the “x” to close the collection tab.




⑤ You are now ready to search this collection. Go to the main menu and choose **Search**, then **Basic Search**



⑥ Choose your new collection **Church History** and type your **search criteria**. Here is one example:



FREE Live Webinars



- 1) Studying the Bible
- 2) Preparing Sermons
- 3) Inductive Study

[Learn More](#)

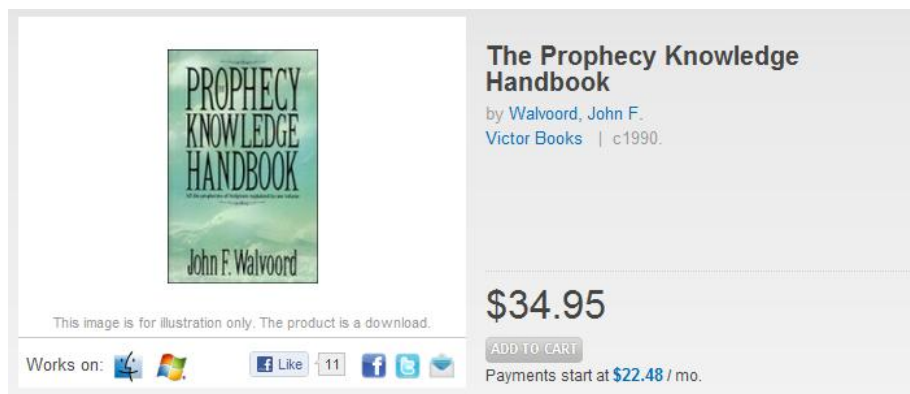
SIGN UP TODAY

Historical/Theological
Background

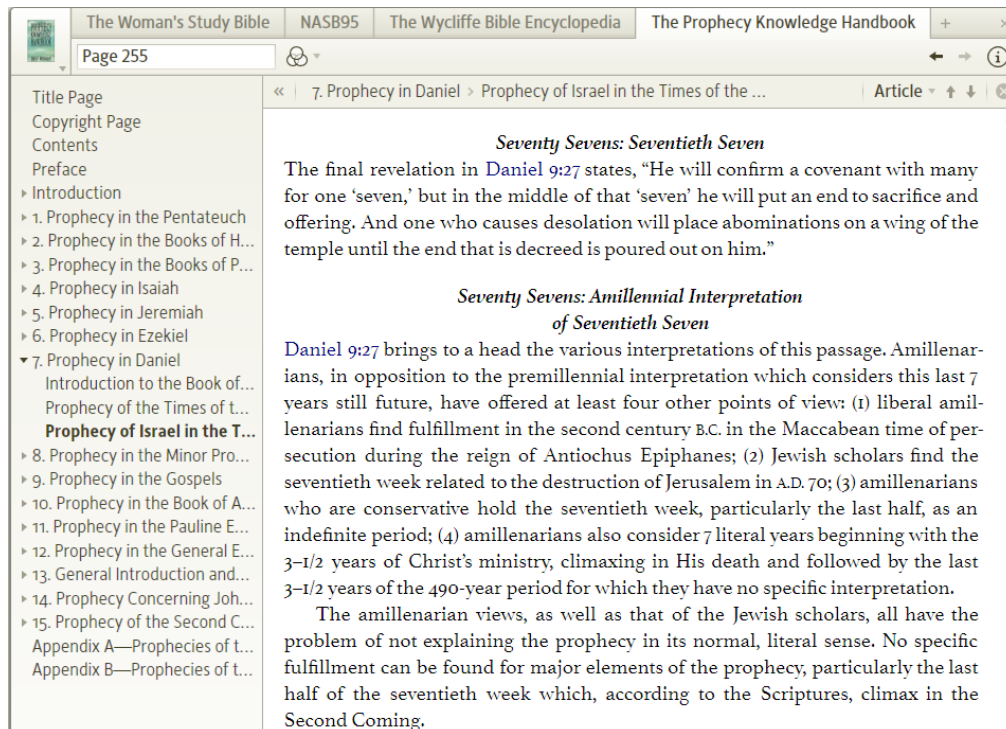
ESCHATOLOGY/END TIMES: Book Review - Prophecy Knowledge Handbook

One of the most fascinating topics in Scripture is prophecy. I would suggest that fulfilled prophecy and yet-to-be-filled prophecy are equally exciting and valuable in the truths they contain. Furthermore, one of the reasons I believe that the Scriptures alone are from God is the amazing detail and accuracy of the prophetic details contained in the Word.

Prophecy can be a difficult topic to study. However, if you have the Prophecy Knowledge Handbook by John Walvoord, then you have a great tool for studying this topic. Click the image below to buy from Logos.



Here is a sample from the book:

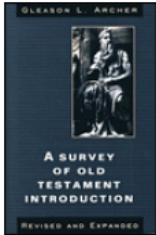


Historical/Theological Background

TWO UNIQUE AUTHORS FOR HISTORICAL BACKGROUND: Archer & Guthrie

Gleason Archer and Dr. Donald Guthrie have produced two books that are essential for historical background research for any book of the OT and NT. These resources are a wealth of information. Not only do they provide information about the authors and background of each book of the Bible, but they discuss interpretative issues, how the various texts came to be part of the canon, and much more.

[Gleason Archer's Survey of the Old Testament](#) is **included** in most Logos collections.




A SURVEY OF OLD TESTAMENT INTRODUCTION
REVISED AND EXPANDED

A Survey of Old Testament Introduction (Revised and Expanded)
by Archer, Gleason L., Jr.
Moody Press | 1998

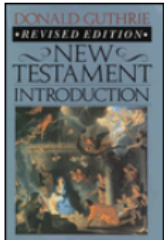
\$24.95

ADD TO CART

This image is for illustration only. The product is a download.

Works on:    Like   

[Donald Guthrie's New Testament Introduction](#) is sold separately.










NEW TESTAMENT INTRODUCTION

New Testament Introduction
by Guthrie, Donald
InterVarsity Press | 1996, c1990.

\$39.95

ADD TO CART

This image is for illustration only. The product is a download.

Works on:    Like  1   

Payments start at **\$24.98 / mo.**

Outlining

SURVEY OF BOOKS WITH OUTLINES

Discovering the Biblical outline for a passage is important if you wish to understand and communicate the author's intended meaning. However, determining the Biblical outline can be a difficult task; especially when you are working directly with the original language of the Bible. With Logos 4, the right mix of resources, that task can be made easy and you can more readily check your work.

Over the years, the following types of resources have provided valuable for discovering and checking the Biblical outline. Please enjoy my recommended buy list of favorite outlines.

Commentaries: Most commentaries have an outline at the beginning of the book. Outlines in commentaries tend to be descriptive, summarizing the important sections of the Biblical text. However, when you take a closer look, they can range from general to very detailed and therefore, no two outlines are alike.

Sample Jude Outlines (Jude1-Jude 16):

[Bible Knowledge Commentary](#) ([Learn More](#))

- I. Salutation (vv. 1-2)
- II. Warnings concerning Apostates (vv. 3-4)
- III. Warnings concerning the Peril of Apostasy (vv. 5-16)
 - A. Examples of apostates in the past (vv. 5-7)
 - 1. Egypt (v. 5)
 - 2. Angels (v. 6)
 - 3. Sodom and Gomorrah (v. 7)
 - B. Actions of apostates in the present (vv. 8-16)
 - 1. Rejecting authority (vv. 8-10)
 - 2. Walking in error (v. 11)
 - 3. Leading falsely (vv. 12-13)
 - 4. Pleasing self (vv. 14-16)

[Word Biblical Commentary](#) ([Learn More](#))

- 1-2 Address and Greeting
- 3-4 Occasion and Theme of the Letter
 - 3 A. The Appeal
 - 4 B. The Background to the Appeal
- 5-19 B. The Background to the Appeal: A Midrash on the Prophecies of the Doom of the Ungodly
 - 5-7 (1) Three OT Types
 - 8-10 *plus* interpretation
 - 9 (1a) Michael and the Devil
 - (2) Three More OT Types
 - 12-13 *plus* interpretation
 - 14-15 (3) The Prophecy of Enoch
 - 16 *plus* interpretation

Surveys and handbooks: These types of resources are helpful for quick summaries of individual books of the Bible. They provide a lot of information in a concise fashion. Outlines tend to be very basic.

Sample Jude Outlines (Jude1-Jude 16):

[Nelson's Complete Book of Bible Maps & Charts](#) ([Learn More](#))

I. Purpose of Jude	1-4
II. Description of False Teachers	5-16
A. Past Judgment of False Teachers	5-7
B. Present Characteristics of False Teachers	8-13
C. Future Judgment of False Teachers	14-16


[Jensen's Survey of the New Testament](#) ([Learn More](#))

JUDE: Keeping Oneself in the Love of God	
SALUTATION	1-2
WARNINGS ABOUT UNGODLY MEN	3-16
Occasion of the Letter	3-4
Historical Fate of Ungodly Men	5-7
Description of Ungodly Men	8-16

[Willmington's Bible Handbook](#) ([Learn More](#))

WARNING OF APOSTATES (1:1-16)
Warning that apostates have come (1:1-4)
God's judgment of past apostasies (1:5-7)
Description and doom of present apostates (1:8-16)

Online Class



Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Specialized Resources: These types of resources are the most helpful for detailed outlines of individual books of the Bible. They are the most comprehensive outlines you can find.

Sample Jude Outlines (Jude1-Jude 16):

[Outline Bible \(Learn More\)](#)

- I. THE BURDEN TO WARN AGAINST APOSTASY (1:1-3)
 - A. Jude's prayer (1:1-2): He asks God to grant his readers mercy, peace, and love.
 - B. Jude's plan (1:3a): He originally planned to write concerning God's wonderful salvation.
 - C. Jude's perception (1:3b): He then realized that the Spirit wanted him to warn against apostasy.
- II. THE NEED TO WARN AGAINST APOSTASY (1:4a): Wicked apostates have secretly slipped in among the believers.
- III. THE HISTORICAL EXAMPLES OF APOSTASY (1:5-6, 7b, 11): Jude lists six such examples.
 - A. The nation of Israel (1:5): Apostasy caused by unbelief.
 - B. Fallen angels (1:6): Apostasy caused by rebellion.
 - C. Sodom and Gomorrah (1:7b): Apostasy caused by sexual immorality.
 - D. Cain (1:11a): Apostasy caused by religious perversion.
 - E. Balaam (1:11b): Apostasy caused by financial greed.
 - F. Korah (1:11c): Apostasy caused by rejection of divine authority.
- IV. THE CHARACTERISTICS OF APOSTASY (1:4b-4c, 8-10, 16-19)
 - A. Changing God's grace into a license for immorality (1:4b)
 - B. Denying the deity of Jesus Christ (1:4c)
 - C. Degrading the human body (1:8a)
 - D. Rejecting authority (1:8b)
 - E. Slandering celestial beings (1:8c-9): Here Jude gives a classic example underlining the seriousness of this particular sin.
 - 1. *The background* (1:8c-9a): The archangel Michael was disputing with Satan about the body of Moses.
 - 2. *The back-down* (1:9b): Michael refused to level a slanderous accusation against the Devil, leaving that to God himself.
 - F. Degenerating into brute unreasoning animals (1:10)
 - G. Faultfinding (1:16a)
 - H. Flattering others only for their own advantage (1:16b)
 - I. Scoffing and divisive, following their own evil instincts, which are totally devoid of God (1:17-19)

[Roy Gingrich Bible Outlines \(Learn More\)](#)

The Book of Jude

- ▼ The Salutation (1:1, 2)
 - A. The Author: "Jude, the Servant of Jesus Christ and Brother of James"**
 - B. The Readers: "To Them that are Sanctified by God the Father, Preserved in Jesus Christ, and Called"
 - C. The Wish
- ▼ The Occasion for Writing (1:3, 4)
 - A. Jude Had Planned to Write His Readers a Doctrinal Letter
 - B. Jude Hears of the Arrival of False Teachers in the Readers' Midst
 - C. Jude Postpones His Doctrinal Letter and Writes His Readers a Letter of Warning and Exhortation
- ▼ The Warning against the False Teachers (1:5-15)
 - A. History Indicates the Doom of the False Teachers (1:5-7)
 - B. Justice Demands the Doom of the False Teachers (1:8-13)
 - C. Prophecy Predicts the Doom of the False Teachers (1:14, 15)
- ▼ The Personal Description of the False Teachers (1:16)
 - A. They Murmur and Complain
 - B. They Walk after Their Base Lusts
 - C. They Use Grandiose Speech

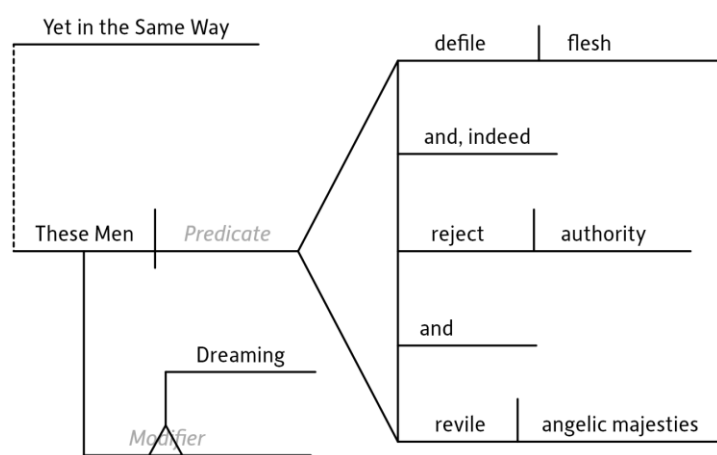
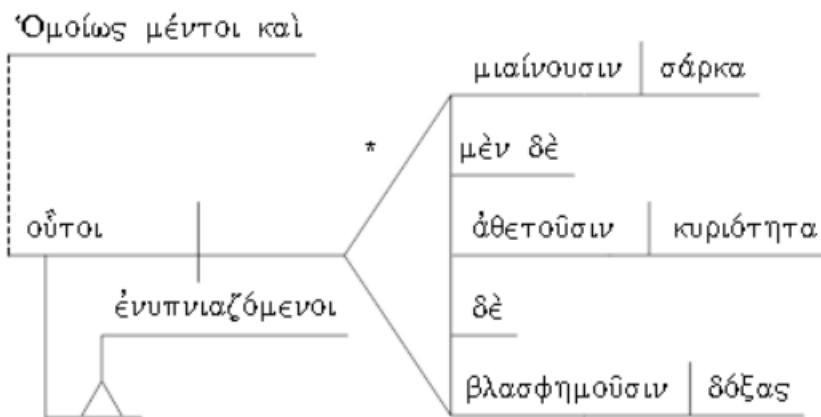
Outlining

PART 1 – THE GRAMMATICAL DIAGRAM

One of the challenges of using another person's outline is determining its accuracy. Therefore, creating your own outline is of course the preferred way to go if you have the time, training, and tools. One type of outline is the Grammatical Outline. This is created by analyzing the original language and creating an outline based from your research.

There is an excellent resource that can teach you this method, if you can work with the Greek :)
[Diagrammatical Analysis By Lee Kantenwein Lee](#). ([Learn More](#))

Jude 8



Outlining

PART 2 –THE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Additional Video Training
Best Practices – Lesson 5
Webinar: Any Session #4

The block diagram or structural analysis is a whole lot easier than the grammatical diagram. Additionally, it can be done in English or the original language. The resource *Biblical Hermeneutics* explains this process. Also, I have included a link to an excellent and straightforward set of instructions to block diagram from the English as well. Don't forget to use the [sentence diagram tool](#) in Logos (File > Sentence Diagram).

[Biblical Hermeneutics](#) ([Learn More](#))

<http://rockvalleybiblechurch.org/ResourcesAndLinks/Block%20Diagramming.htm>

Sample Jude Outlines (Ephesians 1:3-6):

STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS OF EPHESIANS 1:3-14	
[3]	Blessed [be] the <u>God</u> and <u>Father</u> of our Lord Jesus Christ, <u>who</u> blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the <i>heavenlies</i> <i>in Christ</i> ,
[4] Ia	<u>inasmuch as</u> he chose us <i>in him</i> before the foundation of the world, <u>that</u> we should be holy and blameless before him, in love
[5] Ib	<u>having predestined</u> us to adoption as sons through Jesus Christ to himself, according to the kind intention of his will,
[6]	<u>to the praise of the glory of his grace</u> , which he kindly gave us <i>in the beloved</i> .

[The Lexham Clausal Outlines of the Greek New Testament](#) is an excellent resource as well.

(main verb)	3	blessed	theGod and Father	of Lord our Jesus Christ
1st att ptc			- who has blessedus	
prep phr			with every blessing spiritual	
			in the heavenly	
			in Christ	
compar cl	4	just as he chose us in him before the foundation of the world		
inf pur		should bewe	holy and blameless	
prep phr		before him		in love
2nd att ptc	5	having predestinedus		
prep phr		to adoption		
		through Jesus Christ		to himself
		according to the good pleasureof will his		
	6	to the praise	of the glory of grace	his
rel cl		that	he bestowed onus	
prep phr			in the beloved	

Outlining

THE OUTLINE MAP – EACH POINT IS A PART, THE WHOLE IS A PROCESS

What makes an outline not only memorable but effective? Is it possible for an outline to communicate the author's intended meaning and yet still be relatable to a modern audience? Can an outline be simple enough to be remembered throughout the week and yet still be anchored to the text? These are important questions that are answered in the affirmative, but you may be asking, How is this all possible?

Let me suggest one technique that I believe can accomplish these lofty goals. I call it the **Outline Map**. Let me start with an example we all can relate to in order to illustrate how this works.

Title: Outline of a Journey

Point #1: Board the Plane

Point #2: Departure

Point #3: Journey to the destination

Point #4: Arrival

Point #5: Exit the Plane

This over simplified example provides a structure for the **Outline Map**. First we have a title that is an **Outline of a Journey**; the journey will be through a Biblical passage. Point #1, is where we **Board the Plane** and get the audience on board with the text, providing the background and introductory material. Point #2, we **Depart** and get the audience ready for the main point of the passage by addressing some of the significant ideas of the passage. Point #3, we **Journey to the Destination** filling in some of the most significant details of where we are going. Point #4, we have **Arrival** and now the main point is made and the purpose of the sermon is revealed. Point #5, we **Exit the Plane**, and provide principles, wisdom, and guidance for application. This is the **Outline Map**.

Now that you have an outline, let's do this with a Biblical Passage, Ephesians 2:1-10.

Title: Living with the Past

Point #1: Introduction

Point #2: I. We Were Ruined By Sin (Ephesians 2:1-3)

Point #3: II. We Were Rescued by God (Ephesians 2:4-9)

Point #4: III. We Were Redesigned for Service (Ephesians 2:10)

Point #5: Conclusion

Keep in mind not every passage lends itself to this kind of structure, so don't force it. Never the less, it can be a great guide to a better outline.

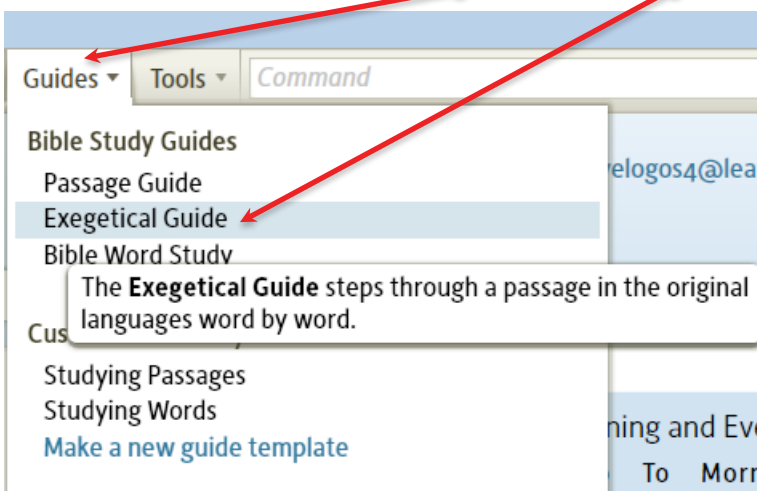
Outlining

REFINING AND REVIEWING OUTLINES THROUGH THE PASSAGE GUIDE

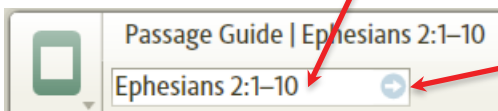
Now after you have created your preliminary outline and studied your passage, you are ready to review and refine your outline. Logos makes this easy through the passage guide. Therefore, let's run the passage guide and check our outline from Ephesians 2:1-10.

HOW TO:

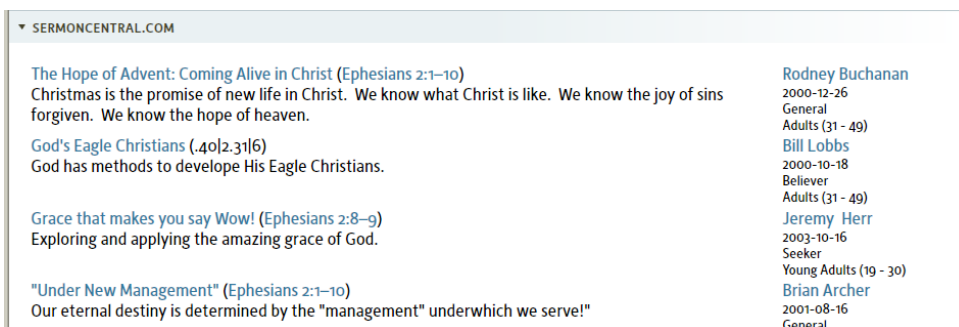
- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Guides > Passage Guide**



- 2 Enter the passage Ephesians 2:1-10 in the Bible Reference box and **Press Enter** or the **Go Button**



- 3 Locate the section in the **Passage Guide** named **SermonCentral.com** (Click this section if it is not opened)



- 4 Click through each sermon and **review** the outlines for ways to **refine** your outline.

Word Study

TRANSLITERATION: WHAT IS IT AND HOW CAN I FIND IT?

Transliteration makes it possible to read and pronounce a foreign language. The way it works is to take the letters and their associated sounds from a foreign language and convert them to the alphabet and its corresponding language of another language. Let's provide two examples, one from the Hebrew and one from the Greek.

HEBREW: אֱלֹהִים

ENGLISH: [*'elohiym* /el·o·**heem**/]

If you did not know Hebrew, you would immediately recognize from the English transliteration that this is one of the names of God. Let's examine a Greek example.

GREEK: θεός

ENGLISH: [*theos* /**theh**·os/]

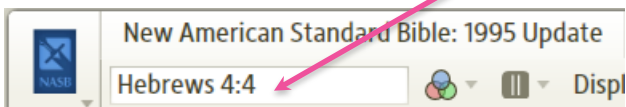
Can you pronounce and recognize this word? That's right; it's the Greek word for God.

Transliteration can sure help in growing your vocabulary and recognition of words in the original language. Furthermore, if you are trying to learn the Hebrew or Greek language, transliteration is a great tool to help you learn the sounds and letters more easily.

Now you may be asking what is the easiest way to find the transliteration for the underlying Hebrew or Greek word? I thought you would never ask! :)

HOW TO:

- ❶ Open any interlinear Bible, let's use the NASB.
- ❷ Let's go to Hebrews 4:4 by typing Hebrews 4:4 into the Bible reference box.



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

③ Right click on the word **Day** > Choose from the right menu **Greek Strong's Number #2250** > then choose **Enhanced Strong's Lexicon** from the left menu.

The screenshot shows a Bible study software interface. On the left, a list of Bible verses is visible, with the word "DAY" highlighted in blue. A right-click context menu is open over the word "DAY". The menu options are:

- Open
- Open in a new tab
- Power Lookup
- Search this resource
- Search all open resources
- Search entire library
- Cited By
- Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic...
- Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and...
- The Complete Word Study Dictionary, New...
- The Theological Dictionary of the New Testament
- Enhanced Strong's Lexicon** (highlighted in blue)

On the right, a side panel displays information for the selected word "DAY". The panel is divided into two sections. The top section, titled "Selection", shows the following information:

Selection	DAY
Reference	Hebrews 4:4
Manuscript	ἡμέρα
Lemma	ἡμέρα
Morph	NDSF
Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #2250
Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 67.178
Person	Yahweh

The bottom section of the side panel contains the following options:

- Add a note to "Preparing Sermons Notes"
- Add a clipping to "Preparing Sermon Notes (Clip"
- Show Information

④ Examine the Strong's Dictionary and **locate the transliteration** and try to pronounce.

The screenshot shows the "Enhanced Strong's Lexicon" interface. The top bar displays "BHS/WHM 4.2" and "Nestle-Aland Greek". The main search bar contains "Strong's Greek #2250". Below the search bar, the breadcrumb trail reads: "Strong's Notes (Greek) > 2200-2299 > 2250 ἡμέρα".

The main content area displays the entry for **2250 ἡμέρα** [hemera /hay·mer·ah/] n f. From (with 5610 implied).

Word Study

EXEGETICAL GUIDE: PART 1 – THE APPARATUSES

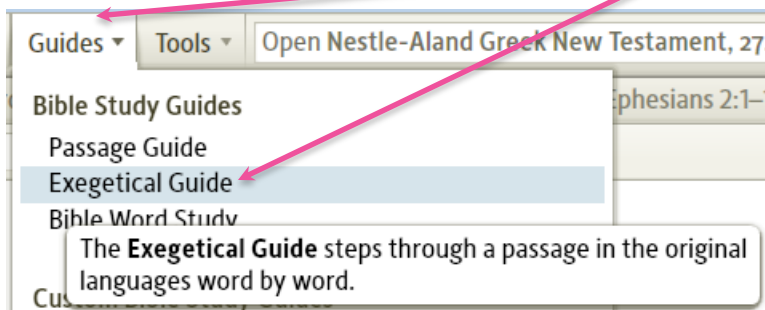
The **Exegetical Guide** is one of the easiest ways to complete your word study research. I use it when I have a lot of words to look up when they are in verse order. Now in this report there are several sections that you may not have explored such as: **The Apparatuses, Grammars, Visualizations, and Word by Word**. Let's begin with the Apparatuses.

Have you ever used an apparatus? If not, you are in good company. This tool is more often used by those who have had seminary or original language training. But you don't have to go to school to use this tool (but it does help).

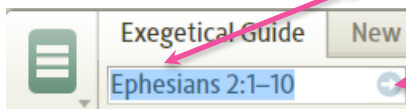
So what is an apparatus? In the simplest terms, think of it as brief notes about individual words and phrases in the Bible. You see, the Bible is a compilation of many, many pieces of Scripture. Since we do not have the original manuscripts that the Biblical authors created, we have had to hunt and look for copies of their original texts. Now with all these copies (literally thousands of pieces and parts of the Biblical text) there was a need to connect the parts to the whole. In other words, we need an index that can show us which words from the Bible are coming from which piece of a text that was found hundreds of years ago. By the way, this is what [Textual Criticism](#) is all about: comparing texts and determining what was written in the original manuscript.

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Guides > Exegetical Guides**

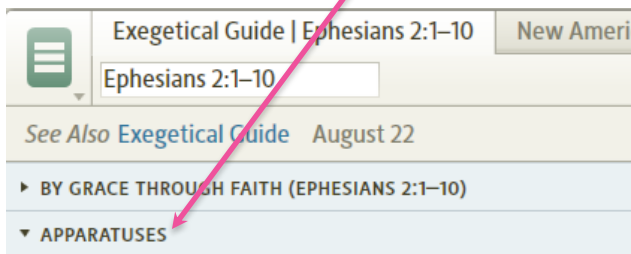


- 2 Enter the passage **Ephesians 2:1-10** in the Bible reference box and press enter or the **Go** button



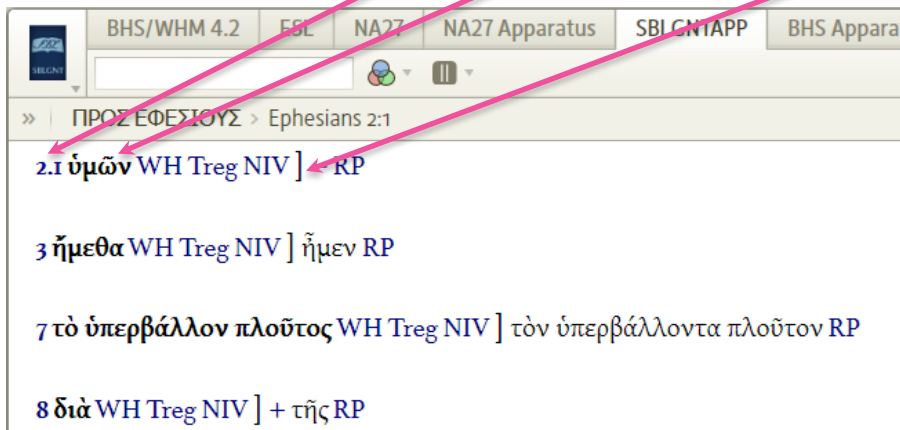
The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

③ Click on the section **Apparatuses** to expand the contents in case it is closed



[Nestle-Aland: NTG Apparatus Criticus](#)
[Novum Testamentum Graece: Prolegomena](#)
[Novum Testamentum Graece: Apparatus Criticus](#)
[Apparatus for the Greek New Testament: SBL Edition](#)

④ Here is a sample page showing the verse, Greek Word, and links to the manuscripts/copies where the word may or may not be found.



⑤ Here is a list of Apparatuses that are available in Logos 4. Keep in mind some of these are add-ons. Here is a list of links to these resources. I have included the Hebrew ones as well.

Note: Many of these apparatuses are part of larger collections. **Click on the book covers** to learn more at Logos.com

Hebrew Apparatuses



Greek Apparatuses



Word Study

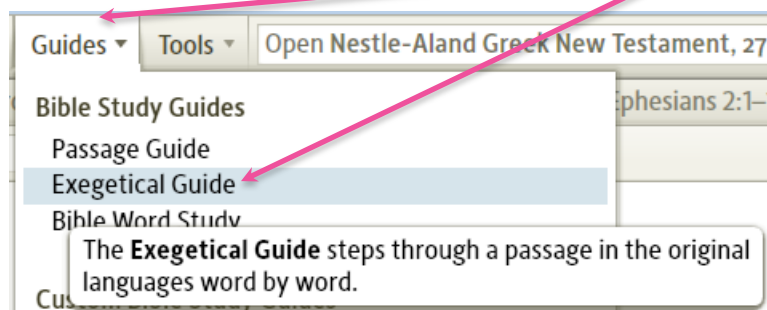
EXEGETICAL GUIDE: PART 2 – GRAMMARS

For most of us our native tongue is English, not Hebrew or Greek. When we write and speak we use grammar intuitively. And depending on your education and experience some better than others :)

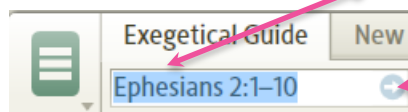
But when it comes to studying the Bible, we all need assistance in getting a clear understanding of what the authors intended to say in the text and without rules of grammar we could misunderstand the writer, and since we are dealing with an inspired text, we could misunderstand God! Therefore, to avoid confusion it becomes imperative that we consult the Hebrew and Greek grammars to get a clear understanding of what the text is saying.

HOW TO:

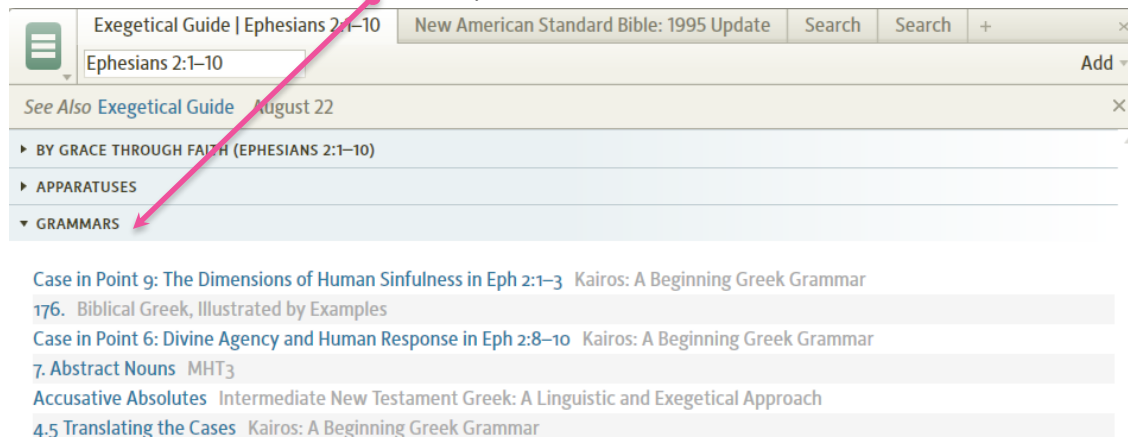
- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Guides > Exegetical Guides**



- 2 Enter the passage **Ephesians 2:1-10** in the Bible reference box and press enter or the **Go** button

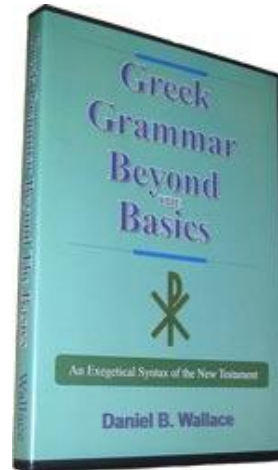
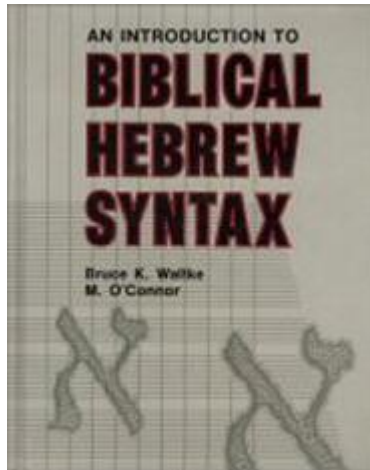


- 3 Click on the section **Grammars** to expand the contents in case it is closed



The **NEW GOLD** STANDARD in Training!

- ④ By reading each article you will begin to learn rules of grammar that can help you interpret the text.
- ⑤ Here are two key grammar books that are a must buy! **Click on the book covers** to learn more at Logos.com



If you are looking for more grammar book suggestions, click the link below and explore the Logos store.

[Hebrew Grammar](#)

[Greek Grammar](#)

➤ **Get THREE CDs for the BEST VALUE!**

As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)
\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)
\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

*** 50% Off** Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY
LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

➤ **NOW YOU CAN GET THE VERY MOST FROM LOGOS BIBLE SOFTWARE 4**

Customer testimonials describe LearnLogos training as ...

- "thrilling"
- "easy"
- "comprehensive"
- "effective"
- "incredible"
- "fun"
- "excellent"
- "affordable"
- "best value"
- "satisfied"
- "the best"
- "high quality"

Word Study

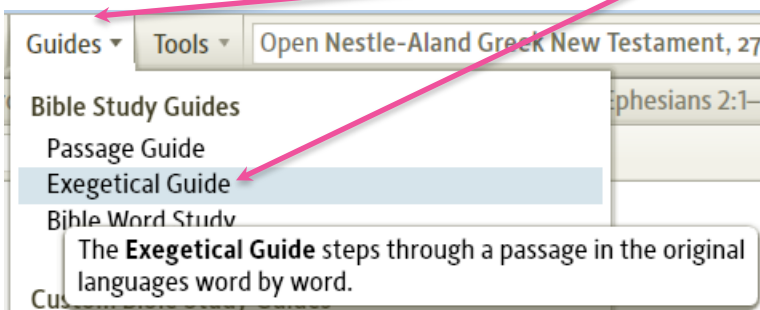
EXEGETICAL GUIDE: PART 3 – VISUALIZATIONS/SYNTAX

The next section in our exegetical guide to be explored is **visualizations**. If you have looked at these resources and scratched your head asking, “What in the world is this and what do I do with it?”, you are repeating what many others have said before and certainly will say after you.

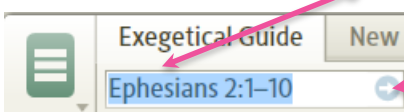
But first, I have video training on this resource. See the **Best Practices, Blue Disc 2/2 > Lesson 5 Observing the Text > Lesson 6** or check out any Session 4 Webinar (Inductive, Bible Study, or Preparing Sermons). In these videos, I show you how to use syntax to determine accurately the Biblical Outline for any passage in the Old Testament and New Testament. This is just one of the many applications for these tools.

HOW TO:

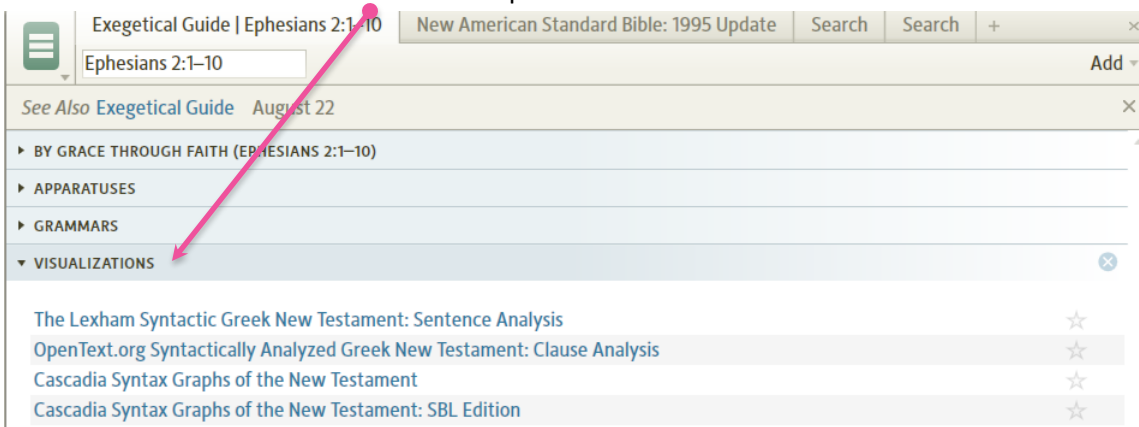
- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Guides > Exegetical Guides**



- 2 Enter the passage **Ephesians 2:1-10** in the Bible reference box and press enter or the **Go** button



- 3 Click on the section **Visualizations** to expand the contents in case it is closed



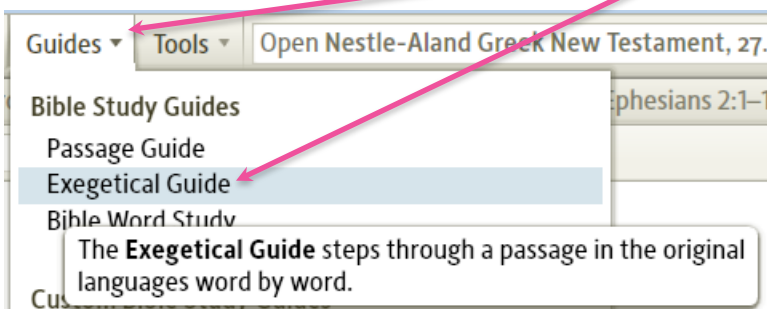
Word Study

EXEGETICAL GUIDE: PART 4 – WORD BY WORD

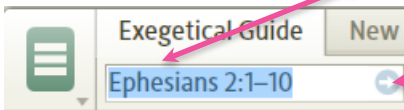
This section is your “GO TO” tool for word studies. Everything you need to start your word studies has been aggregated here in an accessible, organized format. Let’s take a closer look.

HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Guides > Exegetical Guides**



- 2 Enter the passage **Ephesians 2:1-10** in the Bible reference box and press enter or the **Go** button



3 Click on the section **Visualizations** to expand the contents in case it is closed

Exegetical Guide | Ephesians 2:1–10

New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update

Search

Search

+

Ephesians 2:1–10Add ▾

See Also Exegetical Guide August 22▹

► BY GRACE THROUGH FAITH (EPHESIANS 2:1–10)

► APPARATUSES

► GRAMMARS

► VISUALIZATIONS

▼ WORD BY WORD

The English-Greek Reverse Interlinear New Testament New American Standard Bible ▾

Ephesians 2:1

▼ Καὶ ὑμεῖς ὄντας νεκροὺς τοῖς παραπτώμασιν καὶ ταῖς ἀμαρτίαις ὑμῶν | NASB95 NT RIAnd you were dead in your trespasses and sins, | NASB95

▼ ὄντας ontasAnd you **were** dead in your trespasses and sins,

eimi eimi be, exist
verb, present, active, plural, accusative, masculine ± participle, 2nd person
DBL Greek be; be identical; exist; happen; be in a place; be possible; belong; represent
LXGRCANLEX be, exist; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be; to be;...
ANLEX be; the one who is, exists; I am; live; stay, reside; be, take place, occur, happen; it is possible; that is, which mea...
more »

Notes

▼ νεκρούς nekrousAnd you were **dead** in your trespasses and sins,

νεκρός nekros dead
adjective, accusative, plural, masculine
DBL Greek dead; useless; ineffective; that is not the issue
LXGRCANLEX dead; dead; dead; dead; dead
ANLEX dead; dead, lifeless, deceased; dead person; the dead, dead people; dead, powerless; dead; dead to; lifeless; ut...
more »

Notes

Let's take a closer look at each element in the Word Study section and learn how we can use this report to go deeper and more accurate with our word studies.

❶ At the **left** is the original language text (NT) and at the right is your prioritized Bible. The words in grey have been ignored in the report. The words in black are the words that have been listed below this section. To access the definitions for the grey words, simply click the word and the definition will be listed below in word order.

Ephesians 2:1

▼ Καὶ ὑμεῖς ὄντας νεκροὺς τοῖς παραπτώμασιν καὶ ταῖς ἁμαρτίαις ὑμῶν | NASB95 NT RI

And you were dead in your trespasses and sins, | NASB95

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

② This is the **Word** section. First listed is the word being studied from the original language with its transliteration to its right to help you pronounce the word in case you can't read Hebrew or Greek. To the right you can see the English word in its context. Below and to the left is the Lemma or root word. This is the word you will find in dictionaries and lexicons. The speaker icon, if clicked on, will pronounce the word so you can hear what the Lemma sounds like. To the right of the speaker you have a transliteration to pronounce the word. And to its right, is a translation of the word in English. Below this is the morphological information which will help you understand how the word functions in the text. For example, is it a verb or noun? Now below the morphological information are links to the dictionaries that can help you define what the word means. WOW! I told you this was a lot of information to help your word studies! So enjoy the easiest way to do word studies!

▼ νεκρούς *nekrous*
And you were **dead** in your trespasses and sins,

νεκρός *nekros* dead
adjective, accusative, plural, masculine
DBL Greek dead; useless; ineffective; that is not the issue
LXGRCANLEX dead; dead; dead; dead; dead
ANLEX dead; dead, lifeless, deceased; dead person; the dead, dead people; dead, powerless; dead; dead to; lifeless; ut...
[more »](#)

Notes

Interactive Training Videos

WITHOUT THIS TRAINING YOU WILL NEVER MAXIMIZE YOUR POTENTIAL TO DISCOVER AND USE THE AMAZING FEATURES OF LOGOS 4

- 100+ videos / 10+ hours of hands-on training
- Interactive and non-interactive training videos • Works on Mac or PC
- Beginner to advanced / Hebrew, Greek, Syntax and more!
- Learn what you are missing / Learn how to use ALL of Logos 4.
- Comprehensive, quality training with excellence is now affordable for everyone!
- FREE updates, "Get More Out of 4"

FREE Live Webinars

- How to study the Bible | How to prepare a sermon | Inductive Bible study (Precept Students)
- New topics each month • 90 minutes (avg.) of training per session • Live Q&A
 - Each session streamed live (downloadable 24x7 afterwards)
 - Live sessions are FREE / Download past sessions for \$4.99 each

FREE eNewsletter / Manual

- 2 eNewsletters per month (better than a manual)
- Tips, Tricks, Helps and Shortcuts / Not weekly, but daily!
- Blog articles, Q&A with John
- And so much more

Online Education Course

- Hermeneutics, Bible study, Sermon preparation
- 8 to 32 week modules taught by John Fallahee • Study at your own pace
 - Equivalent to a 3 hour accredited class (earn credits from Tennessee Temple University)
 - Overview & Best Practices Bundle included (\$80 value!)

Bible Studies using Logos 4 (coming soon)

- JUDE: Study for adults
- Learn how to study the book of Jude
- JESUS CHRIST: Study for kids
- Children 8-13 learn about Jesus & the Gospel and how to study the Bible

Personalized Training

- EXPOSITORY PREACHING ANALYSIS W/LOGOS TRAINING
- 5 sermons analyzed with objective 60 pt grading system
 - Customized sermon preparation with Logos 4
 - 6 months of follow-up support

Academic.LearnLogos.com (coming soon for professors and teachers in Academia)

- Effective training for classroom integration or any online education model
- SCORM compliant quizzing/testing
- Tools and helps exclusive for the academic environment
- To schedule a FREE 30 minute consultation, email > academic@learnlogos.com

Illustrations/ Applications

APPLICATION: HOW TO PRINCIPLIZE THE TEXT

One of the more important elements of Bible study, teaching and preaching is the application, without application we cannot grow in grace and truth to maturity in Christ. However, care must be taken to derive the application from the Biblical text. For if it is not, you will be faced with several problematic issues. Your application could be man-centered rather than God-centered, and may run the risk of the application contradicting Scripture itself. Applications may be too narrow and very few could apply it to their lives, or it may be too general and be difficult to apply at all. Additionally, some applications from the Old Testament may no longer be applicable such as the dietary laws of the Mosaic Laws.

So what should a Bible student do to avoid these issues? Principlize the text! But how you ask? Let me take you through a process that will help you anchor your applications in the text. Consider this quote:

God is so sovereign that He
will use my obedience and
disobedience to accomplish
His purpose, His Will...
Anonymous

...I'd rather have Him use my
obedience!

This quote reminds me of the importance to pursue the Scriptures and grow up in Christ. James reminds us in James 1:2, we will encounter various trials to test our faith; which should result in producing endurance in our life. Since life is fraught with tests, one needs to have wisdom to anticipate and respond early to what may lie ahead on the horizon. The easiest way to do this is with wisdom grounded and rooted in principles from the Scriptures. When situations arise, you seek the full counsel of the Scripture to determine your course, and that's where the Biblical principle comes to assist you. So let's learn to look at a Biblical text and glean a principle for everyday life. Let's use the text from Philippians 2:1-18.

Principlizing the Text (Philippians 2:1-18)

Pre-Work: It is presumed you have studied this passage and know what it means.

Step 1: Identify the major theme of the passage

When we read the Biblical text, we simply want to identify the theme or topic that stands out in our passage. In this example it is **humility**.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Step 2: identify the subject/topic of the passage (morphology can help sometimes)

In this passage there are several subjects related to this topic of humility: Paul, Believers, Christ, and every creature in heaven, on the earth, and under the earth. However, one subject is the focus and that is **Jesus Christ**.

Step 3: Identify the Action

Here we look at the action in the passage. There are several verbs: have the same mind, regard one another as more important than yourselves, and more. But again if you consider the theme, the subject, the action that stands out is Christ **humbled himself**.

Step 4: Identify the effect/result/purpose

Now this step can be a little tricky. Here we look for effects, results, or purpose. Phrases like “therefore” or “so that” can be helpful pointers in the text. In this text, we have several, “for this reason”, “so then”, “so that”, etc. Therefore, when we step back from the text, we see not only God exalting Christ but we see the redemption and **reconciliation of sinful man to Holy God**. Let’s go with this last principle.

Step 5: Choose the direction of the application (man to God, man to man)

Of all the steps this is the easiest because there are only two choices. Does the principle direct man to his vertical relationship with God or does the text direct him to his horizontal relationship to his fellow man? For this passage let’s **choose the horizontal relationship**.

Step 6: Create the application formula (subject + action + effect)

Here we simply organize our research into the formula. Here is an example:

Subject: Jesus Christ + **Action:** humbled Himself + **Effect:** reconciled sinful man to Holy God

Step 7: Generalize the Subject, Action, effect/result/purpose from steps 2-4

This step is the most difficult because not only do you have to generalize the ideas from the previous step, but you need to ensure that in this early stage of developing a principle it is Biblical and not heretical. Once again we will use the formula, generalizing for a horizontal application.

Subject: You + **Action:** humbled Himself + **Effect:** reconciled man to man

Note: Do you see how I replaced ‘Christ’ with ‘you’ and reconcile man to man (not in the saving sense, but in the human relation sense)

Step 8: Write and refine the principle

This step will take some practice and creativity. You may wish to write out several variations.

Here is my example: **Without humility there can be no reconciliation.**

Think about this principle for a second. If I am in conflict with another person, one of us must humble themselves in order for reconciliation to be possible. And if you consider the backdrop of the text, Christ who is without sin, humbling Himself on the cross for us sinners who were enemies. Furthermore, Christ is infinite God and we are finite man, that’s

the great divide only God can traverse. Yet, when we sin or are sinned against by another person, the gap between them and us is minor. Do you see why God is opposed to the proud? Why that's an intense truth! But it's also a great principle when faced with a conflict – so who's ready to humble themselves in the spirit of Christ?

Step 9: Two Important tests

Now after you determine the principle, you need to test it.

Test #1 is the doctrine test: Is the principle rooted in the Biblical text?

Test #2 is the love test: Does the principle demonstrate sacrificial love?

You see, if you have doctrine but no love, you are a noisy gong. And if you have love but no doctrine, you run the risk of disobeying God's word in order to please another person and that can create all sorts of moral dilemmas.

In closing, what tools do you have in Logos to guide you through the process? Consider the following suggestions:

Resource 1: Using the Treasury of Scripture Knowledge: [Cross Reference w/ Power Lookup](#)

Look for cross references to a text which may have a Biblical principle or command.

Resource 2: Find a Proverb: [Create & Search a collection or your entire library](#)

Look for books that mention your passage and a specific proverb

Resource 3: Search a Collection of Devotions based on your passage: [devotions](#) and [application commentaries](#)
[NIV Application Commentary](#) and [Jon Courson's Commentary](#) would be an excellent resource

Step 4: Topic Search: Examine your topic results for additional ideas. i.e.

Search on "humility" from the home page. [Click here](#) to run the search on your computer.

Step 5: Other Sermons: Sermon Audio, Sermon Central, Sermon.Logos.com

Run the passage guide and read through these resources. [Click here](#) to open your passage guide and search.

On a Last note, let me suggest several additional thoughts:

- Must follow directly after the exposition
- Must be rooted and clearly anchored to the Biblical text
- Distinguish between justification/sanctification
- Use "we" instead of "you"
- Distinguish between Unbeliever/Believer
- Don't moralize

Illustrations/ Applications

MARK DEVER & HIS LIST OF APPLICATIONS

I recently attended the [IX Marks Conference](#); which by the way I highly recommend. During one of these sessions Mark Dever discussed how during his sermon preparation he considers several areas of application. You can discover these for yourself by clicking the link below:

[Click here](#)

Illustrations/ Applications

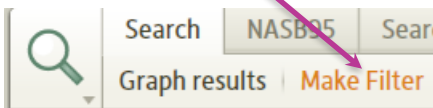
THE BUILT-IN APPLICATION: DISCOVERING THE COMMAND & ADDING A VISUAL FILTER – OLD TESTAMENT

One application that you should never miss is a clear command in Scripture. Now keep in mind, context is king, and therefore some commands are no longer applicable to believers on this side of the cross, such as those commands specific to Israel. But aside from these, you don't want to miss commands.

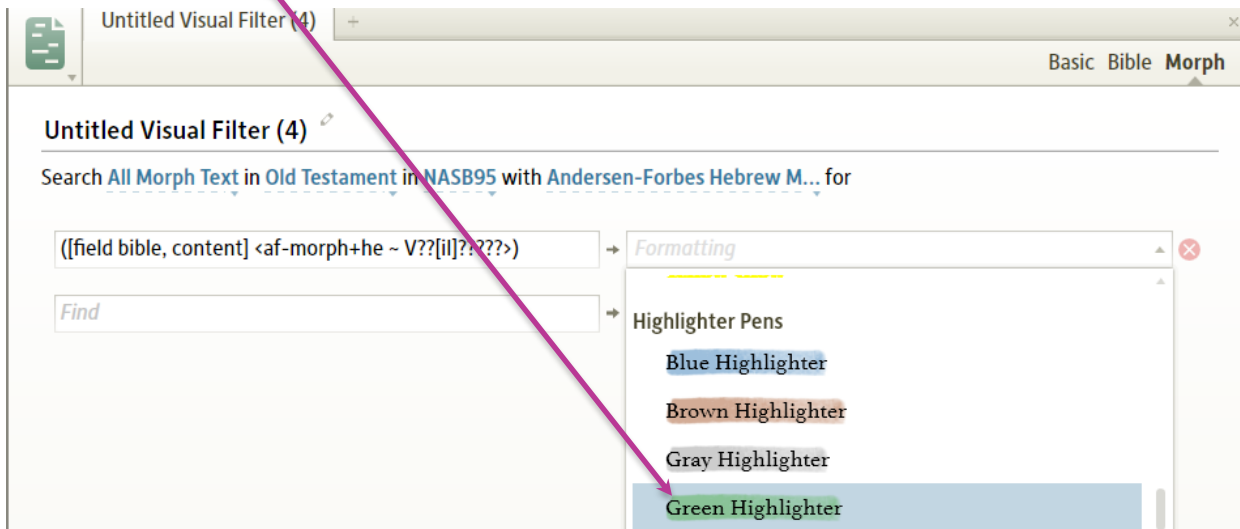
Well it turns out this can be very easy to do in Logos 4. Let's walk through this process for the OT and NT.

Old Testament Commands

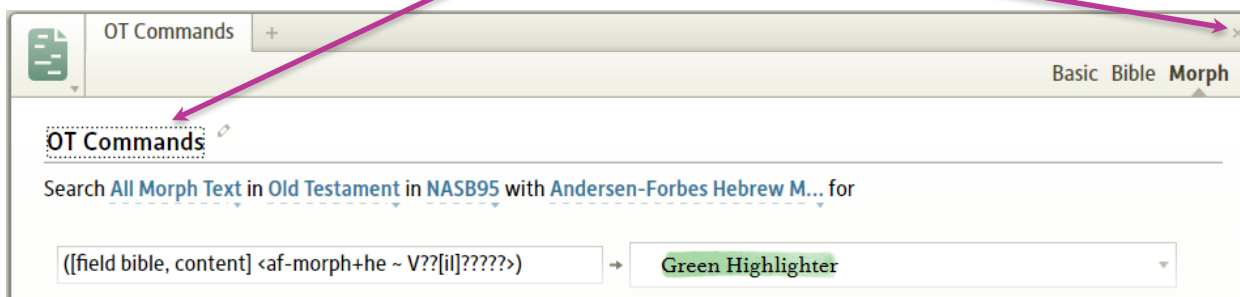
- 1 [Click here](#) to search the Old Testament for all its commands
- 2 Next, click the **Make Filter** button to make this visually recognizable



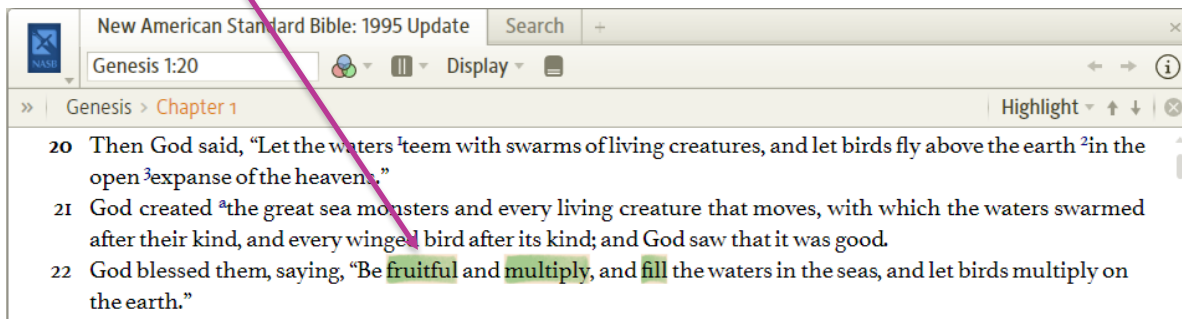
③ Choose a **highlighting Color**, I recommend the Green Highlight



④ Rename this visual filter to **OT Commands** and close this window by **clicking the X** in the upper right corner



⑤ Check your Bible Text, which in our case is the NASB95



Note: Why don't you try this out with the Aramaic text

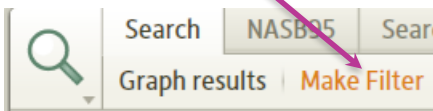
Illustrations/ Applications

THE BUILT-IN APPLICATION: DISCOVERING THE COMMAND & ADDING A VISUAL FILTER – NEW TESTAMENT

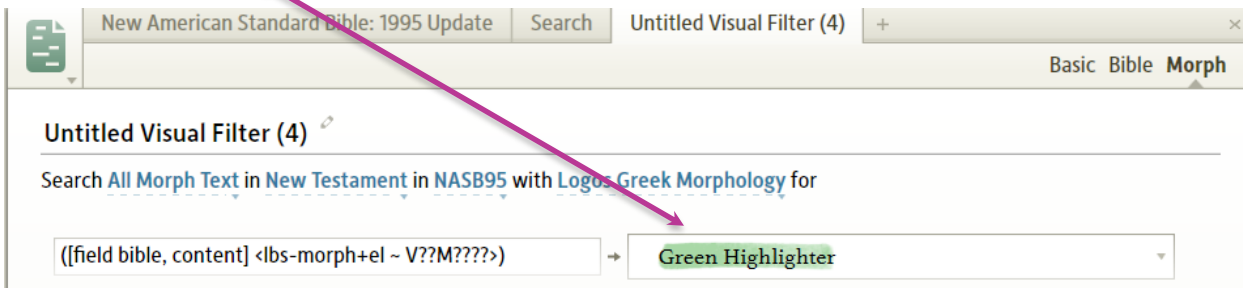
HOW TO:

New Testament Commands

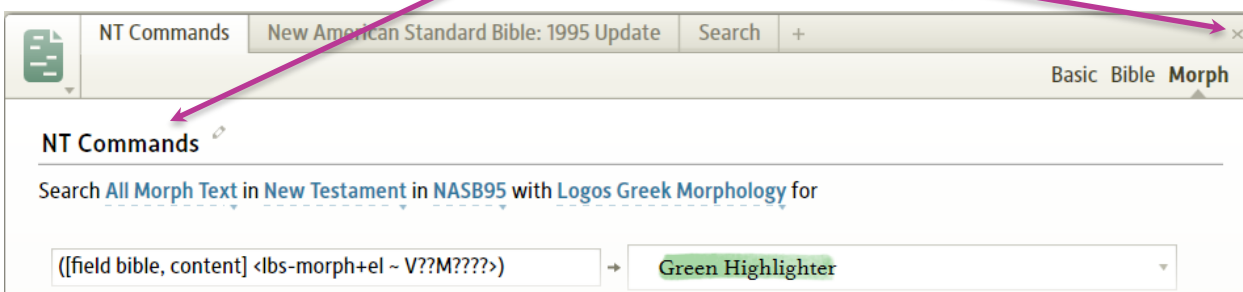
- 1 [Click here](#) to search the Old Testament for all its commands
- 2 Next, click the **Make Filter** button to make this visually recognizable



- 3 Choose a **highlighting Color**, I recommend the Green Highlight



- 4 Rename this visual filter to **NT Commands** and close this window by clicking the **X** in the upper right corner



⑤ Check your Bible Text, which in our case is the NASB95

New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update NT Commands Search +

Matthew 28:16

Matthew > Chapter 28 Article ↑ ↓

16 But the eleven disciples proceeded to Galilee, to the mountain which Jesus had designated.

17 When they saw Him, they worshiped Him; but ^asome were doubtful.

18 And Jesus came up and spoke to them, saying, ^a"All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth.

19 ^a"Go therefore and ^bmake disciples of ^call the nations, ^dbaptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit,

20 teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, ^aI am with you ¹always, even to ^bthe end of the age."

Illustrations/ Applications

THE BUILT-IN ILLUSTRATION: SEARCHING FOR PARABLES, STORIES, AND ILLUSTRATION IN THE BIBLE

WHAT ILLUSTRATIONS SHOULD NEVER DO:

Many times teachers and preachers draw from their own experience for an application. This can be a good strategy now and then. A better strategy is to find Biblical examples of those who obeyed (examples to follow) as well as those who disobeyed (warnings not to follow). Not only will this help you grow in your familiarity with the Bible but it can show the consequences of obeying or disobeying. With this in mind, consider the following four questions to help you and others apply the Biblical text in your life. Every application should be run through this grid of questioning.

Let's explore a command from Jesus, Matthew 5:44, "Love your enemies" through this "grid of questioning".

Thinking: (James 3:13-18, Philippians 4:8)

- What is the right/Christ-like way to think about this matter?
- What is the wrong/Man-centered way to think about this matter?

Speaking: (James 1:1-12, Colossians 4:6, Ephesians 4:29)

- What should not be said?
- What should be said?

Doing - Put Off/Put On: (Colossians 3:8-17, Ephesians 4:17-32, 1 Peter 3:8-9, 2 Peter 2:5-11, Romans 12-15)

- Look at Colossians 3:8-9, Ephesians 4:25-31 and examine these lists and see what needs to be **Put Off/Laid Aside** to "love your enemy"
- Look to Colossians 3:10-17, Ephesians 4:32, etc. and examine these lists and see what needs to be **Put On** to "love your enemy"

Here is a great search to discover "one another" passages in the NT:

❶ Search > Morph Search > @v WITHIN 2 WORDS lemma:ἀλλήλων

[Click here to run the search](#)

Here is a great search to discover all the "commands" passages of the NT:

Note: Keep in mind, this finds all commands so remember "context is king" to determine relevancy

❷ @V??M2 -behold -lemma:ἰδοὺ

[Click here to run the search](#)

Searching

SEARCHING HEBREW ACCENTS

Now this kind of search is not for everyone, but it reveals the power of Logos 4 search capabilities. Now you may be wondering, why even search for Hebrew accents? Hebrew accents can show you where a phrase begins and ends in the text and it can even help you pronounce the Hebrew words (if you can read Hebrew).

If you want to learn more about Hebrew Accents [click here](#) to read the article from the [Hebrew Bible Insert](#).

Here is a list of the search criteria to search on various accents:

ALL BOOKS, EXCEPT Psalms, Job, Proverbs	ONLY Psalms, Job, Proverbs
DISJUNCTIVE 1. Silluq /.*\u05bd.*/ 2. 'Athnach /.*\u0591.*/ 3. Segolta /.*\u0592.*/ 4. Shalshleth /.*\u0593.*/ 5. Zaqeph /.*\u0594.*/ 6. Tiphchah /.*\u0596.*/ 7. Rebia' /.*\u0597.*/ CONJUNCTIVE 1. Munach /.*\u05a3.*/ 2. Mehuppakh /.*\u05a4.*/ 3. Merkha /.*\u05a5.*/ 4. Darga /.*\u05a7.*/ 5. 'Azla /.*\u05a8.*/	DISJUNCTIVE 1. Silluq /.*\u05bd.*/ 2. 'Oleh weyored /.*\u05ab.*/ 3. 'Athnach /.*\u0591.*/ 4. Rebia' gadol & mugrash /.*\u0597.*/ CONJUNCTIVE 1. Merkha /.*\u05a5.*/ 2. Munach /.*\u05a3.*/ 3. 'Illuy /.*\u05ac.*/ 4. Tarcha /.*\u0596.*/ 5. Galgal /.*\u05aa.*/ 6. Mehuppakh /.*\u05a4.*/ 7. 'Azla /.*\u05a8.*/

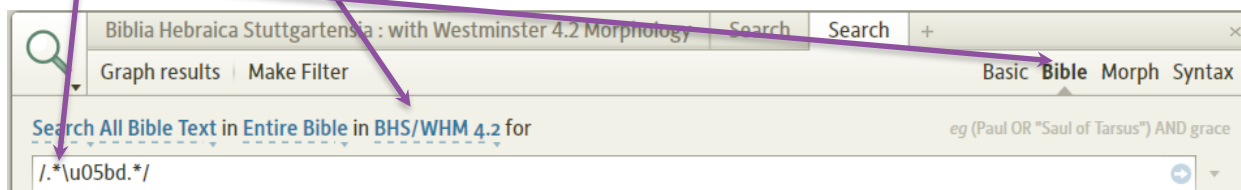
Pre-requisites: BHS 4.2

HOW TO:

❶ Let's begin with a Bible. Click the **Library** icon at the top left



❷ Click **Bible**, Choose **BHS 4.2**, and then **copy and paste** one of the accent search criteria into the search box



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- Click **Add Versions** and add your favorite English Bible Translation

▼ VERSES 40,916 results

[+ Add Versions](#)

- Examine your search results

▼ VERSES 40,916 results in 23,204 verses (16.85 sec)

ESV

[Grid](#) [Verses](#) [Aligned](#) [Analysis](#)



BHS/WHM 4.2



English Standard Version

Gen 1: 1

בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת
הָאָרֶץ:

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth.

2

וְהָאָרֶץ הִיְתָה תֹהוֹ וָבֹהוּ וְחָשֶׁךְ עַל־פְּנֵי
תְהוֹם וְרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֶפֶת עַל־פְּנֵי
הַמַּיִם:

The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.

Searching

FIND IT QUICK...FIND IT FAST

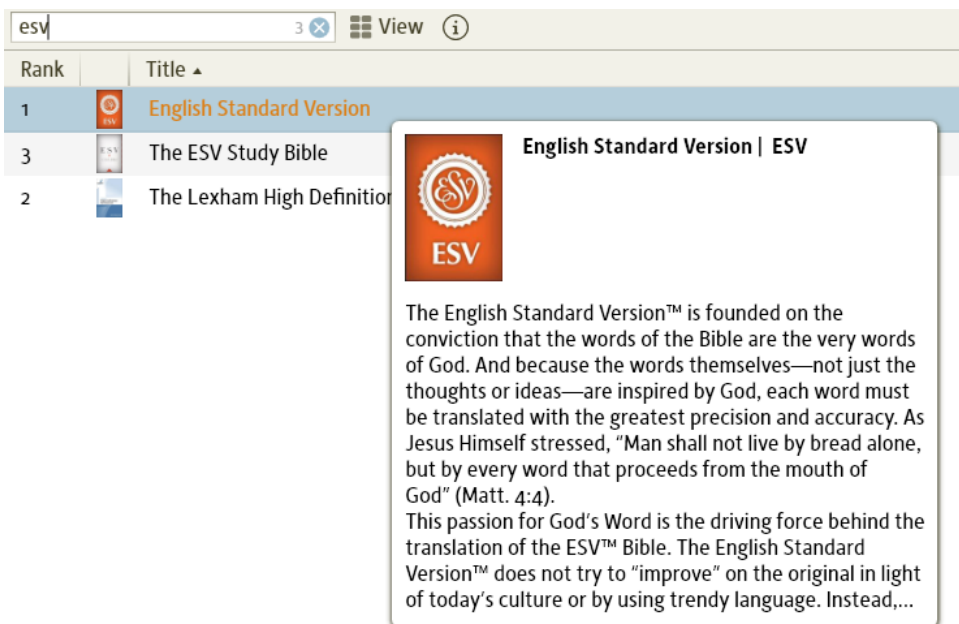
If you are looking for a quick way to search for a word or phrase, than look no further than the **Quick Find**.

HOW TO:

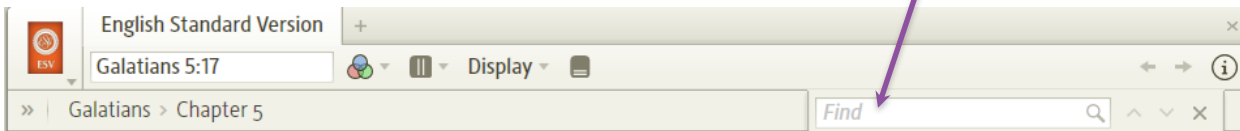
- Let's begin with a Bible. Click the **Library** icon at the top left



- Type **ESV** in the find box



- Press CTRL + F (PC) or COMMAND + F (MAC) and you will see a search box appear



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- ④ Type in the word **love** and press enter or the search buttons **previous / next**.



- ⑤ You will see your word highlighted

you, as I warned you before, that ^dt
of the Spirit is **love**, joy, peace, pa
such things there is no law. ²⁴ And t

Note: the 'find' search has one capability the other search engines do not; you can search for special characters like ! ? . ; " ' , etc..

IMPORTANT:

If you want to find all the questions in the Bible this is one way to do it, of course, one question at a time.

Searching

SEARCHING FIELDS THE EASY WAY

Now you may be wondering, “What is a field”? Fields is Logos’ special way of tagging information so you can search it exclusively. For example, you have a field called **Words of Christ**. When you read your Bible you read the red text for the word of Christ. With fields, you can search only the **Words of Christ** and not search any other part of the Biblical text.

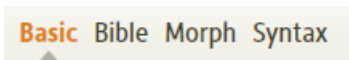
So **field searching** is a wonderful way to narrow your search. Now if you are wondering what the available fields to search are, let me show you the easy way to do this!

HOW TO:

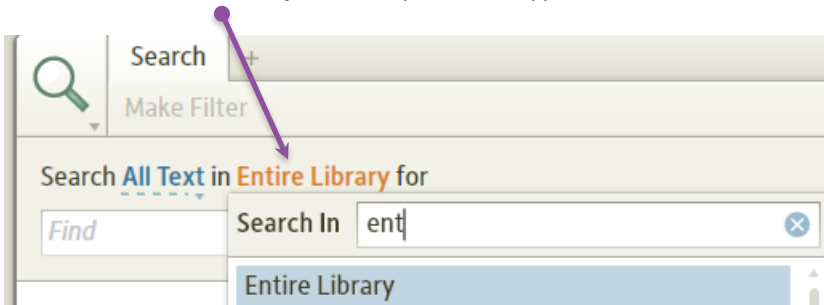
- ❶ Let’s begin with a Bible. Click the **Search** icon at the top left



- ❷ Choose **Basic** from the four choices

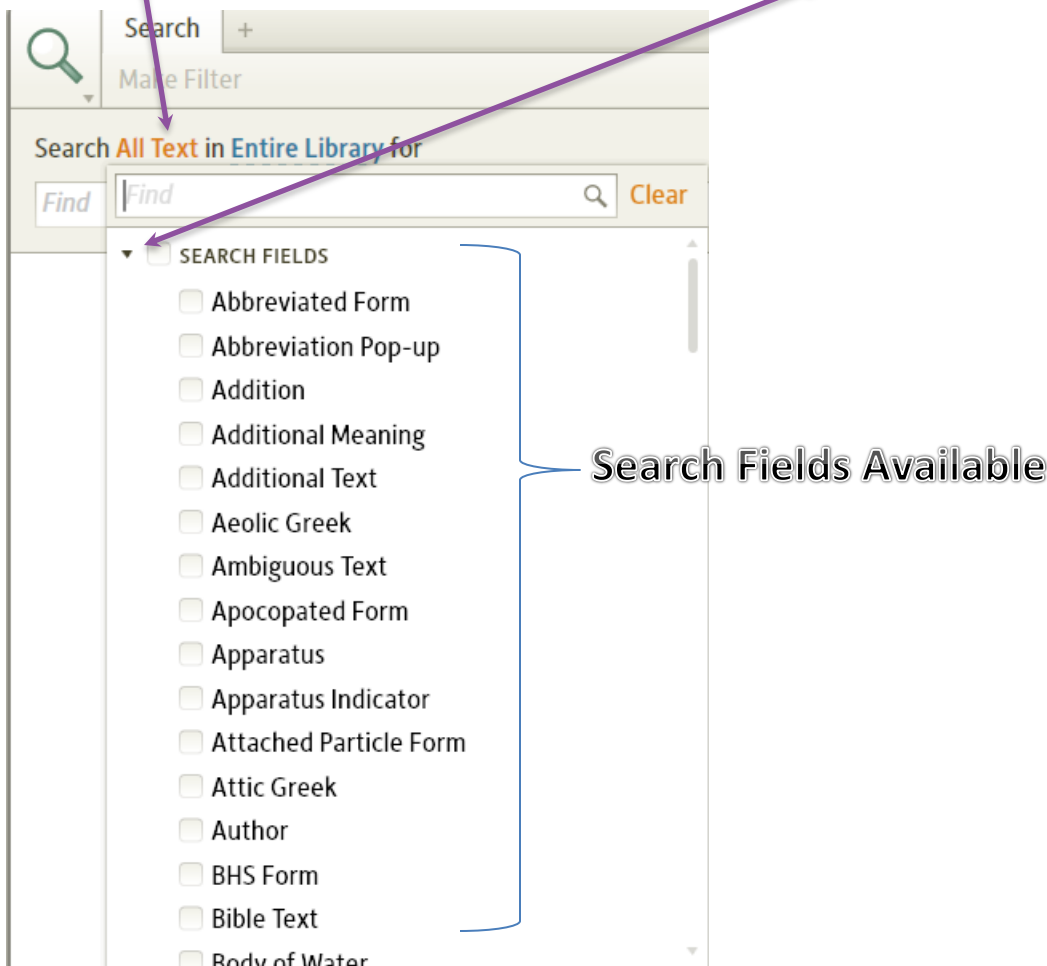


- ❸ Choose **Entire Library** (You may need to type **entire** in the search box, and click **Entire Library**)



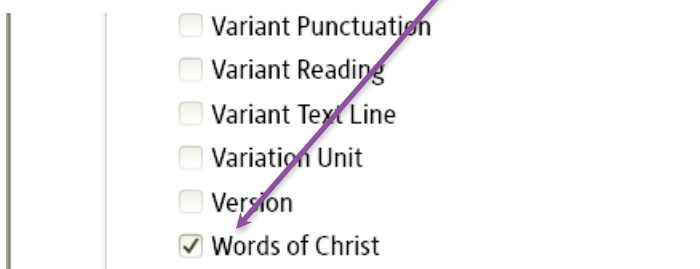
The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- ④ Click **All Text** and then click the black triangle to the left of **Search Fields** to see all the searchable fields.



Note: The search field list will differ based on the books in your library. Additionally, the list will differ based on the books you are searching. In this example, we are searching the entire library. If you were just searching Bibles, the list would display only those search fields available from the Bible you are searching.

- ⑤ Let's check the box labeled **Words of Christ**



⑥ Type the word **love** in the search box, press **Enter**, and examine your search results

The screenshot shows the LearnLOGOS.com search interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a plus sign. Below the search bar, there is a section titled "Search Words of Christ in Entire Library for" with a text input field containing the word "love". To the right of the input field, there is a dropdown menu showing "eg (Paul OR 'Saul of Tarsus') AND grace". Below the search bar, there are two tabs: "Basic" and "Bible Morph Syntax". The "Basic" tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section titled "MY BOOKS" with "0 results (0.32 sec)". Below that, there is a section titled "LIBRARY RESULTS" with "1,557 results in 586 articles in 22 resources (0.66 sec)". To the right of the "LIBRARY RESULTS" section, there are three tabs: "Ranked", "By Title", and "By Count". The "Ranked" tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a list of search results. Each result consists of a small icon, a title, and a count of hits and articles. The results are as follows:

Icon	Title	Hits	Articles
	1890 Darby Bible	67	24
	American Standard Version	57	23
	Authorized Version	61	23
	The Complete Word Study Bible: King James Version	61	23
	The Contemporary English Version	79	34
	English Standard Version	74	26
	A Harmony of the Synoptic Gospels for Historical and Critical Study	35	12

Searching

SEARCH HISTORY (TWO WAYS) – DROP DOWN, HISTORY BUTTON

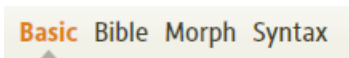
When you open and close multiple books, and jump from one location to the next, it does not take long to forget where you have been. Now and then you will want to go back and find something you recently viewed. This is where **search history** comes in handy. Let's learn how.

HOW TO:

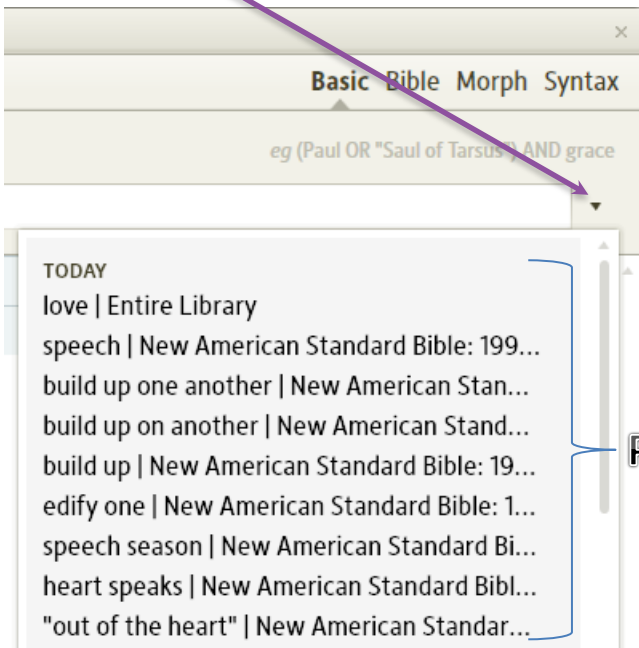
- 1 Click the **Search** icon at the top left



- 2 Choose **Basic** from the four choices

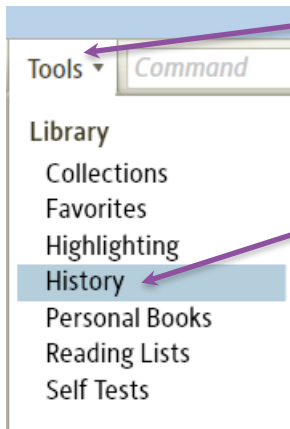


- 3 Click the **black triangle** to the right of the search box to access your search history

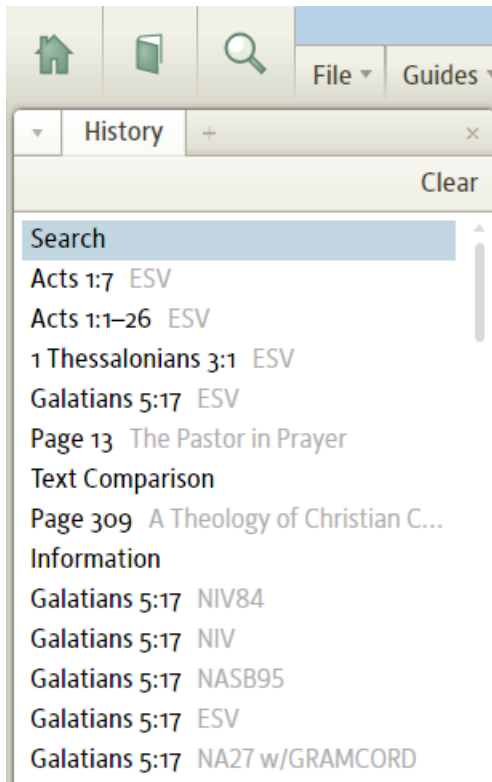


Previous Search History

④ The second way, to access your history is to click **Tools** on the main menu, then click **History**



⑤ Now examine your history by scrolling down



Searching

TOOLBAR: ADD AN IMPORTANT SEARCH SHORTCUT: SEARCH FAVORITE BIBLE

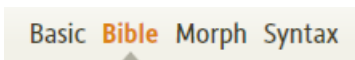
Adding shortcuts to the toolbar is an important way to save time and make searching easy!

HOW TO:

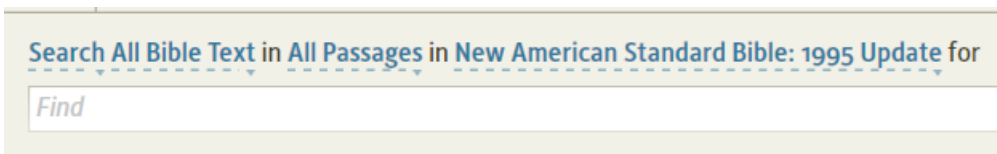
- 1 Let's begin with a Bible. Click the **Search** icon at the top left



- 2 Choose **Bible** from the four search choices

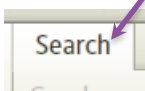


- 3 Choose your search criteria with one Bible. Here are my settings:

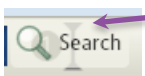


Note: Make sure there is nothing in the find box

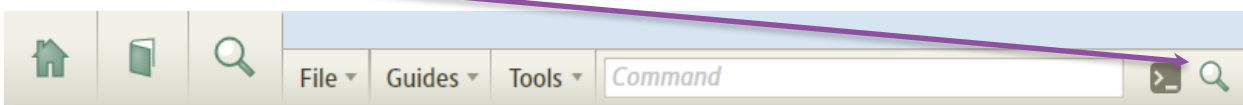
- 4 **Drag the search tab** to the toolbar by left clicking on the tab, holding the mouse button down, and dragging onto the shortcut toolbar.



Note: Notice that when you drag the search tab to the tool bar you will see a **vertical line** showing you where the icon will be placed.



- 5 Now you are just **one click away** from searching your Bible



Book Overview and Review

FINDING BOOKS...IF THE PRICE IS RIGHT

In this economy, no one wants to turn away from a good bargain! But each of us values a bargain differently. Therefore, I would like to show you a helpful way to shop at Logos.com's store. Let's learn how to search on a price that fits your budget.

HOW TO:

- 1 Searching for Free Books (\$ 0.00)

<http://www.logos.com/products/search?q=price:0>

- 2 Searching for Books priced at \$ 10.00

<http://www.logos.com/products/search?q=price:10>

- 3 Searching for Books priced at \$50

<http://www.logos.com/products/search?q=price:50>

**CHANGE THIS NUMBER IN YOUR
BROWSER TO WHAT YOU CAN AFFORD**

- 4 Edit the web address after you click the link and **change the number** to what you can afford



Note: I was not able to figure out how to search a price range, so for now you can only search for the exact price.

Book Overview and Review

FLAVORS OF COMMENTARIES

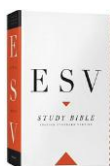
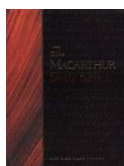
If you have had a chance to look at my Best Practices CD 1/2, you will see that I have overviewed over 130 books. In LESSON 3, I take a look at 48 titles alone! And this brings us to commentaries. Not all commentaries are built the same. When it comes to studying and buying books, having the right commentary can make all the difference to shedding light and insight on the passage you are studying. So let's learn about the 4 major types of commentaries:

Type 1: The Study Bible

Typically they cover Genesis to Revelation, and you will find comments on nearly every passage of the Bible. They may comment on a single verse or a range of verses. Depending on the author(s) the comments can range in depth of scholarship. Additionally, some study Bibles have themes: apologetics, end times, new believers, women, etc. I recommend having several of these. These commentaries include maps, charts, and images. Here are my top two:

[The MacArthur Study Bible](#)

[The ESV Study Bible Notes](#)



Here is an excerpt from the MacArthur Study Bible:

3:16 For God so loved the world. The Son's mission is bound up in the supreme love of God for the evil, sinful "world" of humanity (cf. 6:32, 51; 12:47; see note on 1:9; see note on *Matt. 5:44, 45*) that is in rebellion against Him. The word "so" emphasizes the intensity or greatness of His love. The Father gave His unique and beloved Son to die on behalf on sinful men (see note on 2 *Cor. 5:21*), **everlasting life**. See note on v. 15; cf. 17:3; 1 *John 5:20*.

Here is an excerpt from the ESV Study Bible:

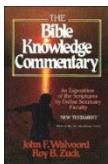
3:16 Here is the most famous summary of the gospel in the entire Bible. **For** connects to v. 15 and explains what happened to make it possible that someone can "have eternal life" (v. 15), that is, through believing in Christ. **God so loved the world** was an astounding statement in that context because the OT and other Jewish writings had spoken only of God's love for his people Israel. God's love for "the world" made it possible for "whoever" (v. 15) believes in Christ, not Jews alone, to have eternal life. God's love for the world was not mere sentiment but led to a specific action: he **gave his only Son**, which John elsewhere explains as sending him to earth as a man (v. 17) to suffer and die and thereby to bear the penalty for sins (see note on 1 *John 2:2*; cf. *Rom. 3:25*). On "only Son," see note on *John 1:14*, which contains the same Greek phrase. The purpose of giving his Son was to make God's great gift of eternal life available to anyone—to **whoever believes in him**, that is, whoever personally trusts in him (see note on 11:25). **Not perish** means not perish in eternal judgment, in contrast to having **eternal life**, the life of abundant joy and immeasurable blessing in the presence of God forever. Those who "believe in" Christ **have** that "eternal life" and already experience its blessings in this present time, not yet fully, but in some significant measure.

Type 2: The Introductory/Overview Commentary

These come in several flavors. First, there are commentaries that are “whole-Bible” (Genesis-Revelation) sets that are five or less volumes. The best example of this is the [Bible Knowledge Commentary](#) (which most of you have). It is two volumes and covers nearly every passage of Scripture. Wycliffe Bible Commentary [OT/NT](#), [Believer’s Bible Commentary](#), and [Matthew Henry](#) would be good examples. These commentaries can also have special emphasis, like Roy Zuck’s 2 Volume Theological Commentary for [OT/NT](#), or John Walvoord’s [Bible Prophecy Handbook](#). On a side note, Zuck and Walvoord are organized by book of the Bible, but cannot be linked to a Bible, like an ordinary commentary and therefore have to be manually navigated to the passage of interest.

My top recommendation:

[Bible Knowledge Commentary](#)



Here is an excerpt from the Bible Knowledge Commentary:

3:10. The prophet's message may have included conditions whereby the threats of God could be rescinded. As an evidence of His mercy to the Ninevites God sent Jonah to them, told him what to proclaim to them, and opened the hearts of a vast population. Also, seeing their repentant actions, God relented of His threat of destruction. He had spared Jonah ([chap. 2](#)); now He spared Nineveh. God's mercies are always unmerited; His grace is never earned. Repentance is never a work to be rewarded. But this is not to say that God does not act in response to such repentance. Nineveh's repentance delayed God's destruction of the city for about 150 years. The people evidently fell into sin again, so that later the city was destroyed, in 612 B.C. (see the Book of Nahum).

When God threatened punishment He provided a dark backdrop on which to etch most vividly His forgiving mercies. This emphasized His grace most forcefully to the sinners' hearts. God's readiness to have compassion on a wicked but repentant people and to withhold threatened destruction showed Israel that *her* coming judgment at God's hand was not because of His unwillingness to forgive but because of her impenitence.

Here is an excerpt from the Matthew Henry's Concise Commentary:

and in a dying state. Jesus Christ came to save us by pardoning us, that we might not die by the sentence of the law. Here is gospel, good news indeed. Here is God's love in giving his Son for the world. God so loved the world; so really, so richly. Behold and wonder, that the great God should love such a worthless world! Here, also, is the great gospel duty, to believe in Jesus Christ. God having given him to be our Prophet, Priest, and King, we must give up ourselves to be ruled, and taught, and saved by him. And here is the great gospel benefit, that whoever believes in Christ, shall not perish, but shall have everlasting life. God was in Christ reconciling the world to himself, and so saving it. It could not be saved, but through him; there is no salvation in any other. From all this is shown the happiness of true believers; he that believeth in Christ is not condemned. Though he has been a great sinner, yet he is not dealt with according to what his sins deserve. How great is the sin of unbelievers! God sent One to save us, that was dearest to himself; and shall he not be dearest to us? How great is the misery of unbelievers! they are condemned already; which speaks a certain condemnation; a present condemnation. The wrath of God now fastens upon them; and their own hearts condemn them. There is also a condemnation grounded on their former guilt; they are open to the law for all their sins; because they are not by faith interested in the gospel pardon. Unbelief is a sin against the remedy. It springs from the enmity of the heart of man to God, from love of sin in some form. Read also the doom of those that would not know Christ. Sinful works are works of darkness. The wicked world keep as far from this light as they can, lest their deeds should be reprov'd. Christ is hated, because sin is loved. If they had not hated saving knowledge, they would not sit down contentedly in condemning ignorance. On the other hand, renewed hearts bid this light welcome.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

Another type of introductory commentary can focus on just one book of the Bible. Now these can come in sets of 10 or more. The best example is Warren Weirsbe's "Be" Series. The [Old Testament](#) has 27 volumes. The [New Testament](#) has 23 volumes. There is no Hebrew or Greek, the comments are basic, getting the high points including illustrations and applications.

Here is an excerpt from the "Be" Series:

The serpent on the pole (vv. 14–18). The story in [Numbers 21:4–9](#) was certainly familiar to Nicodemus. It is a story of sin, for the nation rebelled against God and had to be punished. God sent fiery serpents that bit the people so that many died. It is also a story of grace, for Moses interceded for the people and God provided a remedy. He told Moses to make a brass serpent and lift it up on a pole for all to see. Any stricken person who looked at the serpent would immediately be healed. So, it is also a story of faith: when the people looked by faith, they were saved.

The verb *lifted up* has a dual meaning: to be crucified ([John 8:28; 12:32–34](#)) and to be glorified and exalted. In his Gospel, John points out that our Lord's crucifixion was actually the means of His glorification ([John 12:23ff](#)). The cross was not the end of His glory; it was the means of His glory ([Acts 2:33](#)).

Much as the serpent was lifted up on that pole, so the Son of God would be lifted up on a cross. Why? To save us from sin and death. In the camp of Israel, the solution to the "serpent problem" was not in killing the serpents, making medicine, pretending they were not there, passing antiserpent laws, or climbing the pole. The answer was in looking by faith at the uplifted serpent.

The whole world has been bitten by sin, and "the wages of sin is death" ([Rom. 6:23](#)). God sent His Son to die, not only for Israel, but for a whole world. How is a person born from above? How is he or she saved from eternal perishing? By believing on Jesus Christ; by looking to Him in faith.

On January 6, 1850, a snowstorm almost crippled the city of Colchester, England; and a teenage boy was unable to get to the church he usually attended. So he made his way to a nearby Primitive Methodist chapel, where an ill-prepared layman was substituting for the absent preacher. His text was [Isaiah 45:22](#)—"Look unto Me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth." For many months this young teenager had been miserable and under deep conviction; but though he had been reared in church (both his father and grandfather were preachers), he did not have the assurance of salvation.

The unprepared substitute minister did not have much to say, so he kept repeating the text. "A man need not go to college to learn to look," he shouted. "Anyone can look—a child can look!" About that time, he saw the visitor sitting to one side, and he pointed at him and said, "Young man, you look very miserable. Young man, look to Jesus Christ!"

The young man did look by faith, and that was how the great preacher Charles Haddon Spurgeon was converted.

The difference between perishing and living, and between condemnation and salvation, is faith in Jesus Christ. Jesus could well have come to this world as a Judge and destroyed every rebellious sinner; but in love, He came to this world as our Saviour, *and He died for us on the cross!* He became the "uplifted serpent." The serpent in Moses' day brought physical life to dying Jews; but Jesus Christ gives eternal life to anyone who trusts Him. He has salvation for a whole world!

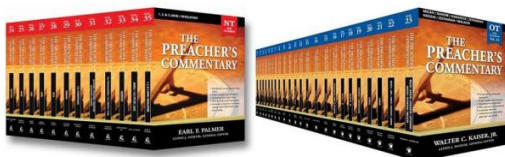
Type 3: The Expository Commentary

The goal of these commentaries is to explain the text, more in depth than the previously mentioned examples, but not overwhelm you with scholarly terminology or Hebrew and Greek. You will be exposed to word studies, theology, historical background and Biblical cross references. These sets are typically 20 or more volumes when they cover the whole Bible. Some good examples would be the [New American Commentary](#) (in Silver or higher), The [MacArthur New Testament Commentary](#), [Opening Up Commentary](#) (included in most collections)

My Top Recommendation:

Preacher's Commentary ([AMAZING \\$15 SALE @ Rejoice Software](#))

[MacArthur New Testament Commentary](#)



Here is an excerpt from the Preacher's Commentary:

The Decision: Belief or Condemnation (vv. 16–21). We can see in these verses that the lifting up of the Son of Man is an act of love. The act is not an afterthought or a last-minute emergency plan. Love is central to the very nature of God, reaching out to all who are unlovely and sick, like those dying Israelites, like Nicodemus, and like us sinners. That love is not selective or discriminating. It is universal, with no limitations. God comes to the whole world in love.

Love is never passive. It is the very nature of love to give the best and not hold back. And the gift is unique, “the only begotten.” The greater the object of love, the more costly the gift. “Any old thing” is not good enough. That would not be love.

The invitation is as wide as God's heart—“whoever believes.” He will not cheapen the terms, or He would not be true to Himself. We can only accept the invitation by trust, faith, submission. It has been that way with God since the beginning.

The gift is everlasting: “a life consistent with the age to come. This life is not an endless duration of being in time, but being of which time is not a measure.”² This is life with God that is limitless; it is quality, not quantity. Our final destiny is life, not death. But the word “perish” is here because those who do not look or believe are condemned. They refuse to accept God's great gift and so must go on without the gift. The judgment then is to remain in their present state.

Here is the great paradox, the two-edged meaning of Jesus' coming. He came in love to save, to heal, and to offer spiritual birth. He did not come to condemn or judge. But His coming sharpens the issue. Now we must decide! There is both wondrous possibility and great peril in Nicodemus's coming to Jesus. If he chooses to lay aside all his preconceived ideas and learning and accepts Jesus as the One who has come down from heaven, he will be born again! But if he chooses to turn aside, to leave, to work out his own salvation by his own stubborn efforts, however noble, he stands under condemnation and will perish.

Here is an excerpt from the MacArthur New Testament Commentary:

Verse 16 is undoubtedly the most familiar and beloved verse in all of Scripture. Yet its very familiarity can cause the profound truth it contains to be overlooked. God's motive for giving “His indescribable gift” of Jesus Christ (2 Cor. 9:15) was that He loved the evil, sinful world of fallen humanity. As noted earlier in this chapter, all humanity is utterly sinful, completely lost, and unable to save itself by any ceremony or effort. Thus, there was nothing in man that attracted God's love. Rather He loved because He sovereignly determined to do so. The plan of salvation flowed from “the kindness of God our Savior and His love for mankind” (Titus 3:4). “God demonstrates His own love toward us,” wrote Paul to the Christians in Rome, “in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us” (Rom. 5:8). John wrote in his first epistle, “In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation for our sins.... We love, because He first loved us” (1 John 4:10, 19). Such love is so vast, wonderful, and incomprehensible that John, shunning all adjectives, could only write that God so loved the world that He gave His own Beloved Son (cf. 1 John 3:1). World is a nonspecific term for humanity in a general sense. The statement in verse 17, “that the world might be saved through Him,” proves that it does not mean everyone who has ever lived, since all will not be saved. Verse 16 clearly cannot be teaching universal salvation, since the context promises that unbelievers will perish in eternal judgment (vv. 16–18). Our Lord is saying that for all in the world there is only one Savior (1 John 2:2), but only those who are regenerated by the Spirit and who believe in His gospel will receive salvation and eternal life through Him. (For a more extensive discussion of this point, see my book *The God Who Loves* [Nashville: Word, 2001], especially pp. 99ff.)

Type 4: The Exegetical Commentary

These are the most expensive, technical, complicated, and yet, helpful resources for studying a passage. In these resources you can get so much information on a passage: Hebrew and Greek Word Studies, grammar, theological, historical and literary analysis, and even comments on other commentaries. Hands down these resources are the most helpful if you can steer through all the technical jargon. Keep in mind, these commentaries are especially biased in their theological views of Scripture, so buyer beware! In short, these types of commentaries are indispensable for deep study. Some examples would be the [ICC](#), [Heremania](#), [Word Biblical Commentary](#), [Baker NT Commentary](#) (AMAZING \$50 ONLY through Rejoice Software), [NICOT/NICNT](#) and many more.

Here is an excerpt from the Baker NT Commentary:

16. For God so loved the world that he gave his Son, the only-begotten, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have everlasting life.

God's infinite love made manifest in an infinitely glorious manner, this is the theme of the golden text which has endeared itself to the hearts of all God's children. The verse sheds light on the following aspects of this love: 1. its character (*so* loved), 2. its Author (God), 3. its object (the world), 4. its Gift (his Son, the only-begotten), and 5. its purpose (that whoever believes in him should not perish but have everlasting life).

The conjunction *for* establishes a causal relation between this and the preceding verse. We might paraphrase as follows: the fact that it is only in connection with Christ that everlasting life is ever obtained (see verse 15) is clear from this, that it has pleased God to grant this supreme gift only to those who repose their trust in him (verse 16).

1. Its character

The word *so* by reason of what follows must be interpreted as indicating: *in such an infinite degree and in such a transcendently glorious manner*. Great emphasis is placed on this thought.

So loved. The tense used in the original (the aorist ἠγάπησεν) shows that God's love in action, reaching back to eternity and coming to fruition in Bethlehem and at Calvary, is viewed as *one*, great, central fact. That love was rich and true, full of understanding, tenderness, and majesty.⁶⁰

2. Its Author

So loved God (with the article in the original: ὁ θεός, just as in 1:1 where, as has been shown, the Father is indicated). In order to gain some conception of the Deity it will never do to subtract from the popular concept every possible attribute until literally nothing is left. God is ever *full* of life and *full* of love.⁶¹ Take all human virtues;

Here is an excerpt from the NICNT:

16 God loved⁷⁴ "the world" (see Additional Note B, pp. 111–13). The Jew was ready enough to think of God as loving Israel, but no passage appears to be cited in which any Jewish writer maintains that God loved the world.⁷⁵ It is a distinctively Christian idea that God's love is wide enough to embrace all people. His love is not confined to any national group or spiritual elite. It is a love that proceeds from the fact that he is love (1 John 4:8, 16). It is his nature to love. He loves people because he is the kind of God he is. John tells us that his love is shown in the gift of his Son. Of this gift Odeberg finely says, "the Son is God's gift to the world, and, moreover, it is *the* gift. There are no Divine gifts apart from or outside the one-born (*sic*) Son."⁷⁶ It should be noticed that God's love is for "the world"; in recent times some scholars have argued that John sees God's love as only for believers, but here it is plain that God loves "the world." In typical Johannine fashion "gave" is used in two senses. God gave the Son by sending him into the world, but God also gave the Son on the cross. Notice that the cross is not said to show us the love of the Son (as in Gal. 2:20), but that of the Father. The atonement proceeds from the loving heart of God.⁷⁷ It is not something wrung from him. The Greek construction puts some emphasis on the actuality of the gift: it is not "God loved enough to give," but "God loved so that he gave."⁷⁸ His love is not a vague, sentimental feeling, but a love that costs. God gave what was most dear to him.⁷⁹ For "one and only" see on 1:14, and for "believes" on 1:12 (also Additional Note E, pp. 296–98). The death of the Son is viewed first of all in its revelatory aspect; it shows us the love of the Father. Then its purpose is brought out, both negatively and positively. Those who believe on him do not "perish." Neither here nor anywhere else in the New Testament is the awful reality behind this word "perish" brought out. But everywhere there is the recognition that a dreadful reality awaits the finally impenitent.⁸⁰ Believers are rescued from this only by the death of the Son. Because of this they have "eternal life" (see on v. 15). John sets perishing and life starkly over against one another. He knows no other final state.

My Top Recommendations:

[Word Biblical Commentary](#)



[NICOT/NICNT](#)







Book Overview and Review

HOW TO EVALUATE A DIGITAL BOOK

When it comes to building a digital library it not only takes money, but wisdom! Not all books are created equal. Therefore, in order to stretch your dollar and make the most of your study time, it is imperative to have the best possible resources. I truly believe one good book is worth ten mediocre books, so choose wisely! The following criteria will help you find the best resources.

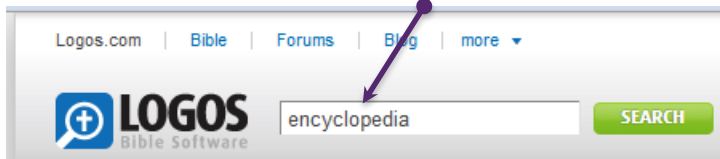
❶ Determine the category of the resource (Bible, English Dictionary, Exegetical Commentary, etc.)

- See the Logos Product comparison page for category ideas
- See your Library and look at the column **type** for category ideas

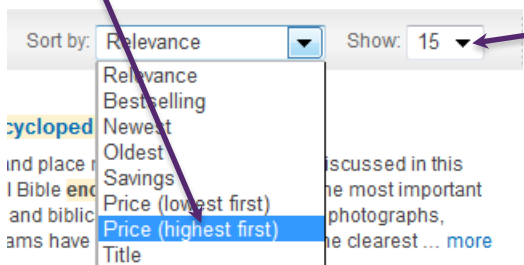
Rank	Title ▲	Author	Subjects	Series	Type	Last Updated	My Tags
4	 The Complete Word Study Dictionary, New Te...	Zodhi...	Bible. N...		Lexicon	Dec 29, 2010	
3	 Harper's Bible Commentary	Mays,...	Bible--...		Bible Commentary	Dec 29, 2010	
2	 Harper's Bible Dictionary	Achte...	Bible--...		Encyclopedia	Dec 29, 2010	
1	 The Seventh-day Adventist Bible Dictionary		Sevent...		Encyclopedia	Dec 29, 2010	

❷ Generate a list of books in the category and sort the books from the most expensive to the least expensive

- Go to the Logos.com store and search on the category (i.e. encyclopedia)



❸ Re-sort your search results to sort by price. Note: You may want to **increase the number** of product to show.



The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

④ Now that you have a list of books to choose from, here are some specific items to look for to help you in the decision.

Note: Once you identify the book, the product page may give you a page view, if not you may need to visit [Amazon.com](https://www.amazon.com) or books.google.com/ to **Look Inside** the book and see what is inside the book.

- **Publisher:** Was the book published by a significant publisher?
- **Year Published:** How recent and updated is the material. This is important in reference books.
- **Page Count:** (More pages for your money (Total Price / # of Pages)
- **Table of Contents:** This is the easiest way to compare two or more books. You will quickly see if one book covers more content and material than the other books.
- **Chapter Length:** This is very revealing and a great way to compare books that are very similar. If you can find a topic that both discuss in a chapter, the longer chapter usually proves to be more detailed.
- **Outlines:** A book that takes an effort to outline its content is a book that is organized and most often very structured, making reading and skimming for content easier.
- **Bibliography:** Look to see if there are additional sources cited at the end of each chapter or at the end of the book. A large bibliography can point you to better resources, as well as show you how researched the author is. If you were trying to decide between two or more books, I would choose the one with the bibliography.
- **Bible Verses:** You want a lot of Bible Cross References in your book! This is so critical! A lot of talk without a lot of verses makes the book more difficult to use when it comes to searching, and may be less anchored to the Biblical text. Note: In print, look at the end of the book and see if it has a Scripture index.
- **Original Language:** Does the book contain Hebrew and Greek words or transliteration (English spellings of Hebrew/Greek Words)? This demonstrates a high level of detail and scholarship.
- **Illustrations/Maps/Charts:** Frankly, you can never have too many of these, so any book that has these immediately jumps to the top of my list!
- **Logos Collection:** If the book you are looking to buy is part of a Logos collection, then don't buy it separately, unless you absolutely need it and have no plans to upgrade to the larger collection. My rule of thumb: if 50% of the larger collection contains books you would use, it's worth upgrading at some point. Additionally, if the books you want cost at least 50% of the upgrade, get the larger collection.
- **Book is Part of a Special Collection:** Many times a book you want may be found in a special collection. Always, examine these collections and weigh out the value.
- **CHECK OUT REJOICE SOFTWARE!** Many times they have special deals that you should not pass up:
 - Here are some links to current specials:
 - <http://www.dxcart.com/cart/?id=8698&code=BKBNKTC> (Baker NT Commentary)
 - <http://www.dxcart.com/cart/?id=8698&code=NLMLEBSL> (Max Lucado Essential Bible Library)
 - http://rejoicesoftware.com/ebible_special.htm (eBible)
 - <http://www.dxcart.com/cart/?id=8698&code=NLTPCEB> (The Preachers Commentary)
 - <http://www.dxcart.com/cart/?id=8698&code=BKGEISL> (Norman Geisler Apologetics Library)
 - <http://rejoicesoftware.com/specials.htm>

Do you have criteria for book selection that I have not mentioned? Let me know at tips@learnlogos.com

Book Overview and Review

HARMONIES, PARALLELS, & SYNOPTIC

If you are studying, teaching, and/or preaching from one of the gospels, then these resources are absolutely invaluable and required to have. They are an excellent way to understand the chronology and details of our Lord and Savior's life on earth. The good news is Logos includes quite a few helps for this in Logos 4.

- Eusebian Canons
- Gospel Synopsis, by Jeffrey Glen Jackson
- Harmony of the Gospels
- A Harmony of the Gospels, by A .T. Robertson
- A Harmony of the Synoptic Gospels
- Records of the Life of Jesus
- Synopsis of the Four Gospels, by Kurt Aland

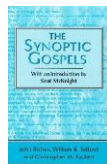
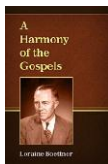
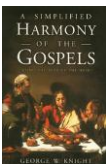
Additional Cross Reference Resources that may be included in your gospel studies:

- Pastoral Epistles, by Rick Brannan
- Synopsis of the Old Testament, by Jeffrey Glen Jackson
- Old Testament Allusions
- Old Testament Quotes in the New Testament (HCSB)
- A Harmony of Samuel, Kings, and Chronicles, by William Day Crockett
- Jude–2 Peter, by Jeffrey Glen Jackson

Note: All of these are available in Scholar's Collection or higher. See [Logos product comparison](#) for details.

Here is a list of additional books with Harmonies and Synoptic analysis to add to your library:

Click on the book image to learn more.



****This is not a logos book, but I highly recommend it**

① Harmony of the Gospels Defined:

A harmony of the Gospels attempts to organize Matthew-John into chronological order. The Biblical text is typically shown side by side in full context. See the example below from the Logos Edition of the *Harmony of the Gospels*:

Sec. 74 Walking on the Water

Matthew 14:24–33

²⁴But the boat was already a long distance from the land, battered by the waves; for the wind was contrary. ²⁵And in the fourth watch of the night He came to them, walking on the sea. ²⁶When the disciples saw Him walking on the sea, they were terrified, and said, "It is a ghost!" And they cried out in fear. ²⁷But immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying, "Take courage, it is I; do not be afraid." ²⁸Peter said to Him, "Lord, if it is You, command me to come to You on the water." ²⁹And He said, "Come!" And Peter got out of the boat, and walked on the water and came toward Jesus. ³⁰But seeing the wind, he became frightened, and beginning to sink, he cried out, "Lord, save me!" ³¹Immediately Jesus stretched out His hand and took hold of him, and ³²said to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?" ³³When they got into the boat, the wind stopped. ³⁴And those who were in the boat worshiped Him, saying, "You are certainly God's Son!"

Mark 6:47–52

⁴⁷When it was evening, the boat was in the middle of the sea, and He was alone on the land. ⁴⁸Seeing them straining at the oars, for the wind was against them, at about the fourth watch of the night He ⁴⁹came to them, walking on the sea; and He intended to pass by them. ⁵⁰But when they saw Him walking on the sea, they supposed that it was a ghost, and cried out; ⁵¹for they all saw Him and were terrified. But immediately He spoke with them and ⁵²said to them, "Take courage; it is I, do not be afraid." ⁵³Then He got into the boat with them, and the wind stopped; and they were utterly astonished, ⁵⁴for they had not gained any insight from the *incident of the loaves*, but their heart was hardened.

John 6:16–21

¹⁶Now when evening came, His disciples went down to the sea, ¹⁷and after getting into a boat, they *started to cross the sea to Capernaum*. It had already become dark, and Jesus had not yet come to them. ¹⁸The sea *began to be stirred up* because a strong wind was blowing. ¹⁹Then, when they had rowed about three or four miles, they ²⁰saw Jesus walking on the sea and drawing near to the boat; and they were frightened. ²¹But He ²²said to them, "It is I; do not be afraid." ²³So they were willing to receive Him into the boat, and immediately the boat was at the land to which they were going.

② Synoptic Gospel Defined:

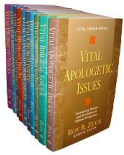
The synoptic takes the approach that the gospels come from one single source. So instead of showing the text side by side in full context, they try to identify what is the unique information from each text to identify the original single text. See the example below from the Logos Edition *A Harmony of the Synoptic Gospels for Historical and Critical Study*:

§79: THE WALKING ON THE SEA	
MATTHEW 14:23B-36	MARK 6:47-56
^{23b} and when even was come, he was there alone. ²⁴ But the boat	⁴⁷ And when even was come, the boat was
was now in the midst of the sea,	in the midst of the sea, and he
distressed by the waves; for the wind was contrary. ²⁵ And in the fourth watch of the night he came unto them, walking upon the sea.	alone on the land. ⁴⁸ And seeing them distressed in rowing, for the wind was contrary unto them, about the fourth watch of the night he cometh unto them, walking on the sea; and he would have
²⁶ And when the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled, saying, It is a ghost; and they cried out for fear. ²⁷ But straightway Jesus spake unto them, saying	passed by them: ⁴⁹ but they, when they saw him walking on the sea, supposed that it was a ghost, and cried out; ⁵⁰ for they all saw him, and were troubled. But he straightway spake with them, and saith unto them, Be of good cheer; it is I; be not afraid. ²⁸ And Peter
Be of good cheer; it is I; be not afraid. ²⁸ And Peter	good cheer; it is I; be not afraid.

Book Overview and Review

ROY ZUCK - VITAL ISSUES (12 Volumes)

What if you could find concise, scholarly, articles on vital Christian issues? Well, look no further than the [Roy Zuck's 12 Volume set of Vital Issues](#). The best way to show the scope of these books is to provide the table of contents for each book. Click the link above to learn more at Logos.com store.



Vital Apologetic Issues: Examining Reason and Revelation in Biblical Perspective

- ▼ Part 1: Problems in Christianity
 - ▶ Chapter 1: The Nature and Origin of Evil
 - ▶ Chapter 2: The Role of Apologetics and Evangelism
 - ▶ Chapter 3: Johannine Apologetics
 - ▶ Chapter 4: Does the Bible Teach Science?
- ▼ Part 2: Creation and Evolution
 - ▶ Chapter 5: Biblical Naturalism and Modern Science
 - ▶ Chapter 6: Darwin's Evolutionary Theory and 19th-Century Natural Theology
 - ▶ Chapter 7: Reasons for Opposing Evolution
 - ▶ Chapter 8: The Age of the Earth
 - ▶ Chapter 9: Special Creation or Evolution
 - ▶ Chapter 10: Theological Problems with Theistic Evolution
- ▼ Part 3: Biblical Reliability
 - ▶ Chapter 11: Evidence for the Verbal, Plenary Inspiration of the Bible
 - ▶ Chapter 12: Fixed Dates in Patriarchal Chronology
 - ▶ Chapter 13: Ebla and Biblical Historical Inerrancy
 - ▶ Chapter 14: The Date of the Book of Daniel
 - ▶ Chapter 15: Historical Verities in the Gospel of Luke
 - ▶ Chapter 16: Biblical Inspiration in 2 Timothy 3:16

Vital Biblical Issues: Examining Problem Passages of the Bible

- ▶ Chapter 1: The Curse of Canaan
- ▶ Chapter 2: Saul and the Changing Will of God
- ▶ Chapter 3: A Fresh Look at the Imprecatory Psalms
- ▶ Chapter 4: Structure, Style, and the Prophetic Message: An Analysis of Isaiah 5.8–30
- ▶ Chapter 5: The Virgin Birth in the Old Testament and Isaiah 7:14
- ▶ Chapter 6: Modern Rationalism and the Book of Daniel
- ▶ Chapter 7: The Temple Vision of Ezekiel
- ▶ Chapter 8: The Use of Hosea 11:1 in Matthew 2:15: An Alternative Solution
- ▶ Chapter 9: The Meaning of Cross-Bearing
- ▶ Chapter 10: The Significance of the First Sign in John's Gospel
- ▶ Chapter 11: Abiding Is Remaining in Fellowship: Another Look at John 15:1–6
- ▶ Chapter 12: Paul's Use of "About 450 Years" in Acts 13:20
- ▶ Chapter 13: "God Gave Them Up": A Study in Divine Retribution
- ▶ Chapter 14: Romans 8:28–29 and the Assurance of the Believer
- ▶ Chapter 15: Should Women Wear Headcoverings?
- ▶ Chapter 16: The Chronological Problem of Galatians 2:1–10
- ▶ Chapter 17: The Mystery in Ephesians 3
- ▶ Chapter 18: "The Husband of One Wife" Requirement in 1 Timothy 3:2
- ▶ Chapter 19: The Thorn-Infested Ground in Hebrews 6:4–12
- ▶ Chapter 20: An Exegetical Study of 2 Peter 2:18–22

Vital Christology Issues: Examining Contemporary and Classic Concerns

- ▶ Chapter 1: The Preexistence of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 2: Is the Angel of Yahweh the Lord Jesus Christ?
- ▶ Chapter 3: Did Jesus Claim to Be God?
- ▶ Chapter 4: The Ministry of Christ in His Life on Earth
- ▶ Chapter 5: The Baptism of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 6: The Temptation of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 7: Jesus, the Unique Son of God: Tested and Faithful
- ▶ Chapter 8: The Transfiguration of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 9: The Triumphal Entry of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 10: Roman Law and the Trial of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 11: The Agony of Christ in Gethsemane
- ▶ Chapter 12: The Savior's Sufferings in Life
- ▶ Chapter 13: The Death of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 14: The Resurrection and Ascension of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 15: Pauline Theology Relative to the Death and Resurrection of Christ
- ▶ Chapter 16: The Glorified Christ on Patmos
- ▶ Chapter 17: The Present Universal Lordship of Christ

Vital Christian Living Issues: Examining Crucial Concerns in Spiritual Life

- Chapter 1: What Is Spirituality?
- Chapter 2: The Specific Character of the Christian's Sin
- Chapter 3: "Sinners" Who Are Forgiven or "Saints" Who Sin?
- Chapter 4: Prayer and the Sovereignty of God
- Chapter 5: The Meaning of Crossbearing
- Chapter 6: Encountering God at Bethel
- Chapter 7: Reexamining Biblical Worship
- Chapter 8: Believers' Spiritual Gifts
- Chapter 9: Victory over Indwelling Sin in Romans 6
- Chapter 10: Christlikeness in Ephesians 4:13
- Chapter 11: The Christian Life According to Colossians
- Chapter 12: Christian Apparel in Colossians (3:5–17)
- Chapter 13: Sarah as a Model for Christian Wives (1 Peter 3:5–6)
- Chapter 14: Living in the Light of Christ's Return (1 Peter 4:7–11)
- Chapter 15: Growth in the Christian Life (2 Peter 1:5–11)
- Chapter 16: Fellowship and Confession in 1 John 1:5–10

Vital Church Issues: Examining Principles and Practices in Church Leadership

- Chapter 1: The Church at History's Hinge
- Chapter 2: Theological Issues of 21st-Century Ministry
- Chapter 3: Personal Challenges for 21st-Century Pastors
- Chapter 4: Practice of Ministry in 21st-Century Churches
- Chapter 5: Priorities for the Local Church
- Chapter 6: The Church's Mission in the World
- Chapter 7: Augustine's Self-Watch: A Model for Pastoral Leadership
- Chapter 8: The "Elder" in the Old and New Testaments
- Chapter 9: The New Testament Elder, Overseer, and Pastor
- Chapter 10: The Discipline of a Sinning Elder
- Chapter 11: The "Laying on of Hands" of Elders
- Chapter 12: Can Fallen Leaders Be Restored to Leadership?
- Chapter 13: The Old Testament Offices as Paradigm for Pastoral Identity
- Chapter 14: Audience Relevance in Expository Preaching
- Chapter 15: Ancient Psalms and Modern Worship
- Chapter 16: Assimilating New Converts into the Local Church
- Chapter 17: Confidentiality in Counseling Individuals with HIV/AIDS
- Chapter 18: Evangelical Education for the 21st Century

Vital Contemporary Issues: Examining Current Questions and Controversies

- ▼ Part 1: Contemporary Ethical Issues
 - ▶ Chapter 1: What Is behind Morality?
 - ▶ Chapter 2: Biblical Absolutes and Moral Conflicts
 - ▶ Chapter 3: The Abortion Epidemic: America's Silent Holocaust
 - ▶ Chapter 4: A Critical Appraisal of Theological Arguments for Abortion Rights
 - ▶ Chapter 5: Euthanasia: A Biblical Appraisal
 - ▶ Chapter 6: The Morality of Suicide: Issues and Options
 - ▶ Chapter 7: The Condemnation of Homosexuality in Romans 1:26–27
 - ▶ Chapter 8: The Church and the Aids Crisis
- ▼ Part 2: Contemporary Doctrinal Issues
 - ▶ Chapter 9: Evangelical Pluralism: A Singular Problem
 - ▶ Chapter 10: Major Flaws in Liberation Theology
 - ▶ Chapter 11: An Appraisal of the Signs and Wonders Movement
 - ▶ Chapter 12: The Cessation of the Sign Gifts
 - ▶ Chapter 13: When Will the Gift of Prophecy Cease?
 - ▶ Chapter 14: The New Age Movement

Vital Ministry Issues: Examining Concerns and Conflicts in Ministry

- ▶ Chapter 1: The World's Challenge to the Church
- ▶ Chapter 2: Called to Serve: Toward a Philosophy of Ministry
- ▶ Chapter 3: Distinctives of Christian Leadership
- ▶ Chapter 4: Pauline Images of the Christian Leader
- ▶ Chapter 5: Jeremiah's Ministry and Ours
- ▶ Chapter 6: Ideals of Pastoral Ministry
- ▶ Chapter 7: The Nature of the Pastoral Role: The Leader as Completer
- ▶ Chapter 8: Priorities for the Local Church
- ▶ Chapter 9: Obligations of Pastor and Congregation to Each Other
- ▶ Chapter 10: The Credibility of the Preacher
- ▶ Chapter 11: A Paradigm for Preaching
- ▶ Chapter 12: Is the Pulpit a Factor in Church Growth?
- ▶ Chapter 13: The Biblical Concept of Elder
- ▶ Chapter 14: Behind the Word Deacon: A New Testament Study
- ▶ Chapter 15: Reexamining Biblical Worship
- ▶ Chapter 16: The Place of the Small Church in Today's World
- ▶ Chapter 17: Women in Ministry: An Exegetical Study of 1 Timothy 2:11–15
- ▶ Chapter 18: Perimeters of Corrective Church Discipline
- ▶ Chapter 19: Court Involvement in Church Discipline, Part 1
- ▶ Chapter 20: Court Involvement in Church Discipline, Part 2

Vital Missions Issues: Examining Challenges and Changes in World Evangelism

- Chapter 1: Missions in Biblical Perspective
- Chapter 2: Missions in Historical Perspective
- Chapter 3: Missions in Cultural Perspective
- Chapter 4: Missions in a Religiously Pluralistic World
- Chapter 5: The Destiny of the World and the Work of Missions
- Chapter 6: Paul's Approach to the Great Commission in Acts 14:21–23
- Chapter 7: Paul's Corporate Evangelism in the Book of Acts
- Chapter 8: Paul's Corporate Witness in Philippians
- Chapter 9: Soteriological Inclusivism and Dispensationalism
- Chapter 10: Isaiah, Jonah, and Religious Pluralism
- Chapter 11: The Fate of Those Who Never Hear
- Chapter 12: Is There Opportunity for Salvation after Death?
- Chapter 13: Is Hell Forever?
- Chapter 14: Does the Bible Teach Annihilationism?
- Chapter 15: Major Flaws in Liberation Theology
- Chapter 16: Defending God before Buddhist Emptiness
- Chapter 17: Islamic Values and the Gospel
- Chapter 18: Principles and Methods of Household Evangelism
- Chapter 19: Relationships
- Chapter 20: Go, Missions

Vital New Testament Issues: Examining New Testament Passages and Problems

- Chapter 1: Do the Synoptics Depend on Each Other?
- Chapter 2: A New Look at Asides in the Fourth Gospel
- Chapter 3: The Significance of Pentecost
- Chapter 4: Church Growth in the Book of Acts
- Chapter 5: The Holy Spirit's Intercessory Ministry
- Chapter 6: Romans 8:28–29 and the Assurance of the Believer
- Chapter 7: The End of the Law
- Chapter 8: Presentation and Transformation: An Exposition of Romans 12:1–2
- Chapter 9: Should Women Wear Headcoverings?
- Chapter 10: Another Look at 1 Corinthians 15:29, "Baptized for the Dead"
- Chapter 11: Tongues and the Mystery Religions of Corinth
- Chapter 12: Who Were Paul's Opponents in Galatia?
- Chapter 13: The Dionysian Background of Ephesians 5:18
- Chapter 14: The Theme and Structure of Philippians
- Chapter 15: The "Women" of 1 Timothy 3:11
- Chapter 16: Endurance in Suffering in 1 Peter
- Chapter 17: Second Peter 2:1 and the Extent of the Atonement
- Chapter 18: The Identity of Babylon in Revelation 17–18

Vital Old Testament Issues: Examining Textual and Topical Questions

- ▶ Chapter 1: Genesis 1:1–3: Creation or Re-Creation?
- ▶ Chapter 2: The Meaning of the Divine Name YHWH
- ▶ Chapter 3: Jacob at the Jabbok, Israel at Peniel
- ▶ Chapter 4: The Date of the Exodus Reexamined
- ▶ Chapter 5: Literary Structure in the Book of Ruth
- ▶ Chapter 6: The Purpose of 1 and 2 Chronicles
- ▶ Chapter 7: The Wife of Noble Character in Proverbs 31:10–31
- ▶ Chapter 8: The Prophets and Social Concern
- ▶ Chapter 9: Wordplay in the Eighth-Century Prophets
- ▶ Chapter 10: Structure, Style, and the Prophetic Message: An Analysis of Isaiah 5:8–30
- ▶ Chapter 11: Literary Genres in Isaiah 40–55
- ▶ Chapter 12: Structure and Meaning in Lamentations
- ▶ Chapter 13: The Archaeological Background of Daniel
- ▶ Chapter 14: Daniel's Seventy Weeks and New Testament Chronology
- ▶ Chapter 15: "For Three Sins ... Even for Four": The Numerical Sayings in Amos
- ▶ Chapter 16: The Day of the Lord in Zephaniah

Vital Prophetic Issues: Examining Promises and Problems in Eschatology

- ▼ Part 1: Millennialism
 - ▶ Chapter 1: Basic Considerations in Interpreting Prophecy
 - ▶ Chapter 2: The Premillennial Interpretation of History
 - ▶ Chapter 3: The Hermeneutics of Covenant Theology
 - ▶ Chapter 4: Ages and Dispensations in the Ante-Nicene Fathers
 - ▶ Chapter 5: The Abrahamic Covenant and Premillennialism
 - ▶ Chapter 6: Is the Present Age the Millennium?
 - ▶ Chapter 7: Is Satan Bound?
 - ▶ Chapter 8: An Evaluation of Theonomic Neopostmillennialism
 - ▶ Chapter 9: The Kingdom of God in the Old Testament
 - ▶ Chapter 10: The New Testament Doctrine of the Kingdom
- ▼ Part 2: Dispensationalism and the Tribulation
 - ▶ Chapter 11: The Necessity of Dispensationalism
 - ▶ Chapter 12: A New Look at Dispensationalism
 - ▶ Chapter 13: Development of Dispensationalism by Contemporary Dispensationalists
 - ▶ Chapter 14: Is the Church in View in Matthew 24–25?
 - ▶ Chapter 15: The Comforting Hope of 1 Thessalonians 4
 - ▶ Chapter 16: The Rapture and the Day of the Lord in 1 Thessalonians 5
 - ▶ Chapter 17: Pretribulationism as the Alternative to Posttribulationism
 - ▶ Chapter 18: The Rapture in Revelation 3:10

Vital Theological Issues: Examining Enduring Issues of Theology

- ▶ Chapter 1: Prayer and the Sovereignty of God
- ▶ Chapter 2: Is Foreknowledge Equivalent to Foreordination?
- ▶ Chapter 3: The Doctrine of Miracles
- ▶ Chapter 4: The Importance of Inerrancy
- ▶ Chapter 5: The Role of the Holy Spirit in Hermeneutics
- ▶ Chapter 6: The Image of God
- ▶ Chapter 7: The Doctrine of the Conscience
- ▶ Chapter 8: Untold Billions: Are They Really Lost?
- ▶ Chapter 9: The Impeccability of Jesus Christ
- ▶ Chapter 10: For Whom Did Christ Die?
- ▶ Chapter 11: The Present Work of Christ in Hebrews
- ▶ Chapter 12: The Terms of Salvation
- ▶ Chapter 13: The Role of the Holy Spirit in Conversion
- ▶ Chapter 14: Has Lordship Salvation Been Taught throughout Church History?
- ▶ Chapter 15: The Significance of Pentecost
- ▶ Chapter 16: The Purpose of the Law
- ▶ Chapter 17: The Mediatorial Kingdom from the Acts Period to the Eternal State
- ▶ Chapter 18: The Theological Context of Premillennialism

So what does an article look like? Here is a brief sample:

CHAPTER 7

Reexamining Biblical Worship

Kenneth O. Gangel

Worship in evangelical churches today is too often a congregational adaptation of good old American pragmatism—people do what they like and they like what they do. Worship experience has become a means to an end, as hymns, Scripture reading, and prayer serve as “preliminary activities” lead up to the focal point of worship, the preaching of God’s Word. Without diminishing the importance of exposition, it is possible that one individual’s comments about the Bible may be no more important than the worship pattern, no more truth-serving than singing God’s Word or listening to it read in its purest, uninterrupted form.

Biblical worship is often corrupted by boredom, lack of purpose, and nonparticipational behavior that leads the congregation to go through the motions without genuine heart involvement. The opposite extreme offers little more than secular entertainment with a religious veneer, a packaged plastic program so perfect and professional that even the most sincere worshiper can scarcely break through its shrink-wrapped design to get his hands on true worship.

What Is Worship?

Webber defines worship as “a meeting between God and His people” and calls for renewal of worship based on the Scriptures and the history of the church.¹ He suggests that evangelicals actually suffer from an illness of which the failure to worship is a symptom. He warns that “the remedy consists of repentance, a *metanoia*, a turning away from all shallow and uninformed approaches to worship.”²

Many people think the gospel of John focuses on evangelism, the message that whosoever will may come. But in his presentation of Jesus Christ the Son of God, John was concerned that people recognize His deity and bow before Him in worship. A blind beggar came to faith in the Savior after his sightless eyes saw light for the first time. Within hours he fell before the One who created sight “and he worshiped Him” (9:38).

In the Lord’s encounter with the woman of Samaria (John 4) John mentioned “worship,” “worshiped,” or “worshippers” ten times (out of its thirteen occurrences in his gospel). The ten usages appear within five verses

how to Study the Bible

DEUTERONOMY: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Deuteronomy, Pt 1](#)

[Word Biblical Commentary: Deuteronomy, Pt 2](#)

[NICOT: The Book of Deuteronomy](#)

[ICC: A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on Deuteronomy](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Deuteronomy](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Deuteronomy](#)

[Lange's Commentary: Deuteronomy](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: Deuteronomy](#)

[JPS Torah Commentary: Deuteronomy](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Equipped: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley's Notes: Deuteronomy](#)

[UBS Handbook: Deuteronomy](#)

Outlines

[The Book of Deuteronomy by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Deuteronomy Commentaries

Collection Name: Deuteronomy Resources

Collection Rule: subject:deuteronomy

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

WBC Vol. 6A | A Commentary on the Holy Scriptures: Deuteronomy | Be Equipped | Collections + x

New | Open v

Deuteronomy Resources ☐ Show in parallel resources

Start with resources matching:
subject:deuteronomy

+ Plus these resources: *Drop resources or collections to add here.*

- Minus these resources: *Drop resources or collections to subtract here.*

how to
Study the Bible

JOSHUA: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Joshua](#)

[NICOT: The Book of Joshua](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Joshua](#)

[Joshua: An Expositional Commentary \(Boice\)](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Joshua](#)

[Lange's Commentary: Joshua](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: Joshua](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Strong: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley's Notes: Joshua](#)

[UBS Handbook: Joshua](#)

Outlines

[The Book of Joshua by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Exodus Commentaries

Collection Name: Joshua Resources

Collection Rule: subject:joshua

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

how to Study the Bible

JUDGES: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Judges](#)

[ICC: A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on Judges](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Judges/Ruth](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Judges](#)

[Lange's Commentary: Judges](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: Judges](#)

[Preacher's Commentary: Judges/Ruth](#)

[Believers Church Bible Commentary: Judges](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Available: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley's Notes: Judges/Ruth](#)

Outlines


[The Book of Judges/Ruth by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Judges Commentaries

Collection Name: Judges Resources

Collection Rule: subject:judges

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

 Collections +

New | Open ▾

Judges Resources ☐ Show in parallel resources

Start with resources matching:

subject:judges

+ Plus these resources:

- Minus these resources:

Drop resources or collections to add here.

Drop resources or collections to subtract here.

how to
Study the Bible

RUTH: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: Ruth/Esther](#)

[NICOT: The Book of Ruth](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: Judges/Ruth](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: Ruth](#)

[Lange's Commentary: Ruth](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: Ruth](#)

[Preacher's Commentary: Judges/Ruth](#)

[Believers Church Bible Commentary: ruth/Jonah/Esther](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Committed \(Ruth/Esther\): Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley's Notes: Judges/Ruth](#)

Outlines

[The Book of Judges/Ruth by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your Exodus Commentaries

Collection Name: Ruth Resources

Collection Rule: subject:ruth

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

Collections +

New | Open ▾

Ruth Resources ☐ Show in parallel resources

Start with resources matching:

subject:ruth

+ Plus these resources: *Drop resources or collections to add here.*

- Minus these resources: *Drop resources or collections to subtract here.*

how to Study the Bible

1 SAMUEL & 2 SAMUEL: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: 1 Samuel](#)

[Word Biblical Commentary: 2 Samuel](#)

[NICOT: The Book of 1 Samuel](#)

[ICC: A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on 1 & 2 Samuel](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: 1 & 2 Samuel](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: 1 Samuel](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: 2 Samuel](#)

[Lange's Commentary: 1 & 2 Samuel](#)

[ITC: Journeying with God: 1 & 2 Samuel](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Restored \(1 Samuel\): Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Be Successful \(2 Samuel & 2 Chronicles\): Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Wesley's Notes: 1 & 2 Samuel](#)

[UBS Handbook: 1 Samuel](#)

[UBS Handbook: 2 Samuel](#)

Outlines

[The Book of 1 Samuel by Gingrich, Roy](#)

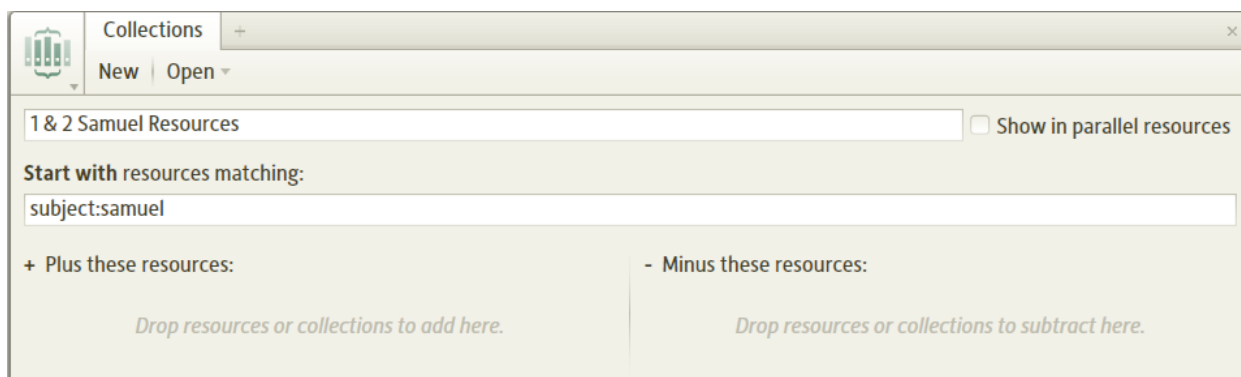
[The Book of 2 Samuel by Gingrich, Roy](#)

Create a collection of your 1 & 2 Samuel Commentaries

Collection Name: 1 & 2 Samuel Resources

Collection Rule: subject:samuel

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection



The screenshot shows the 'Collections' window in Logos Bible Software. At the top, there's a title bar 'Collections' with a plus icon and a close button. Below it, there are buttons for 'New' and 'Open'. A text input field contains '1 & 2 Samuel Resources', and to its right is a checkbox labeled 'Show in parallel resources'. Below this, a section titled 'Start with resources matching:' has a text input field containing 'subject:samuel'. At the bottom, there are two columns: '+ Plus these resources:' and '- Minus these resources:'. Each column has a text input field with the placeholder text 'Drop resources or collections to add here.' and 'Drop resources or collections to subtract here.' respectively.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS' PRAYER LIFE, Part 2/7

PRINCIPLE #2: People and Places of Prayer

The second principle of prayer is that people and location did not interfere with Christ's priority to pray, but were integrated into His pattern of prayer. For throughout Jesus' ministry, He found a place to pray amidst the constant needs of the people that He was responsible for ministering to. At times this required Jesus to withdraw completely from them. At other times, He withdrew with several or more disciples. And yet, there are times where He remained with the people and prayed before them. It should be noted that when Jesus was alone, the Scriptures do not necessarily mention Him praying. However, because of Jesus' pattern of prayer, we can reasonably presume that He was praying at some point in His solitude.

A) Solitude.

There are several examples where Jesus withdrew to be alone with God the Father in prayer. For example, the temptation in the wilderness (Luke 3:21, Matt 3:13–17, Mark 1:9–11), prior to His betrayal by Judas withdrawing to Mount Olivet (Luke 21:37) and after the feeding of five thousand (Matthew 14:23) we are told that Jesus went to pray alone. Regardless of recent events, present situations or what lies ahead, Jesus establishes a priority to pray to God the Father.

B) Several Companions.

On several occasions we see Jesus withdrawing not by Himself, but taking along several companions. One example is at the Mount of Transfiguration mentioned in Luke 9:28. Another example would be when Christ withdrew from Galilee before heading to Bethsaida after the news that John the Baptist had been killed (Matthew 14:13, Mark 6:31-34, Luke 9:10-16, and John 6:1-3). Another example would be the high priestly prayer of Jesus in the upper room in John 17:1-26.

C) Sizeable Crowds.

At crucial times, the Lord Jesus Christ would even pray before a large crowd and address God the Father directly as "Father". In many of these cases, it was to demonstrate the unique relationship between Himself and God the Father. For example, in Matthew 11:25-27, Jesus praises God the Father in a prayer before the multitudes for the believing repentant "infants" in spite of the unrepentant cities of Chorazin, Capernaum and Bethsaida. In Luke 23:34, Jesus from the cross intercedes for the soldiers before the multitudes by praying to God the Father. In Luke 23:46, Jesus cries out with a loud voice before those watching the crucifixion and prays entrusting His Spirit to God the Father. The last example is the raising of Lazarus from the dead in John 11:41-42 where Jesus thanks God in His public prayer.

Whether after a busy day of ministry or even the death of a close companion, Jesus' pattern was to pray at times in isolation, with close companions, and/or sometimes even before large crowds so that God was glorified.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS' PRAYER LIFE, Part 3/7

PRINCIPLE #3: Preparing for Significant Events and Decisions

Jesus demonstrates to us the need to seek guidance in prayer in anticipation of upcoming decisions and events. Seeking God's wisdom ([James 1:5](#)) and will in these matters through prayer and His Word, must not be neglected regardless of the activities that may be required to plan and prepare for ministering.

A) Jesus Prayed Before Significant Decisions: Apostles Chosen.

One of the more remarkable passages of prayer is [Luke 6:12-16](#), the choosing of the twelve apostles. Specifically in Luke 6:12 are two points that need emphasizing. First is the phrase 'He spent the whole night' and 'prayer to God'. Jesus spent the whole night watching and persevering in this vigil (Louis Godet, [A Commentary on the Gospel of St. Luke](#), p. 299) and coupled with 'prayer to God' which is an objective genitive not a subjective genitive (Daniel B. Wallace, [Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics - Exegetical Syntax of the New Testament](#), p. 117). Therefore, grammatically, we may conclude that Jesus communed with the Father in a specific prayer about the decision to choose the twelve apostles, setting aside the second priority of sleep.

B) Jesus Prayed Before Significant Events: Betrayal, Arrest, & Cross.

In one of the most revealing passages into the mind and heart of Christ regarding His death on the cross we see three prayers of petition by the Lord Jesus Christ in the garden of Gethsemane ([Matthew 26:36-46](#), [Mark 14:32-42](#); [Luke 22:40-46](#)). First, we have Jesus withdrawing with several close disciples, and then, secondly, withdrawing Himself from them to pray alone. We see how Jesus prayed about His death on the cross that was about to take place and the sin bearing and resulting defilement from man's iniquity. No doubt His agony is reflected in these prayers/petitions (John F. MacArthur, [Matthew Commentary 24-28](#), p. 170). Three supplications were offered and stand before us never to forget that in the face of any trial, difficulty, and/or decision, we must call upon the Lord in prayer.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS' PRAYER LIFE, Part 4/7

PRINCIPLE #4: Progression of Ministry

In the trench-work of ministering, where people demand attention, prayer must not be neglected. No person, event, nor circumstance should hinder the primacy of prayer. Whether Jesus was being baptized, confronted with death of a loved one, or even approached by inquiring individuals the progression of ministry necessitates prayer.

A) Jesus' Baptism.

In Luke 3:21-22 we see Jesus praying and immediately heaven was opened and the Holy Spirit descended upon Him in bodily form like a dove. At this hinge, between the baptism of Jesus and the temptation in the wilderness by Satan we see Jesus exemplifying for us that all activities are to be bathed in prayer. Although we do not know what type of prayer Jesus prayed, we do read what follows that prayer, the descent of the Holy Spirit upon Him.

B) Raising of Lazarus.

In John 11, we have a discourse of the death and resurrection of Lazarus. The prayer of Jesus for Lazarus to rise from the dead is not recorded in the Scriptures, however we do read in John 11:41 about Jesus giving thanks to God the Father before the people as a result of the resurrection of Lazarus. As these events progress, amidst those mourning Lazarus' death as well as Jesus' own grief, Jesus lifts up a prayer of thanksgiving. Once again, illustrating that Jesus was continually in prayer (John Peter Lange, Gospel According to John, p. 356) no matter how busy.

C) Answering the Greeks.

The Passover before Jesus was to be crucified was approaching and Jesus was answering questions from the Greeks in John 12:20-43. As Jesus taught the people that He must die, He petitioned God the Father to glorify His name. Soon after this prayer, the voice of God the Father speaks forth from heaven for all to hear (John 12:28). It is important to note that although Jesus is ministering to the people, Jesus Himself is troubled, and yet in spite of His grief and the multitude of questions, Jesus prays not for Himself but for God's glory (Beauford Bryant & Mark Krause, The College Press NIV Commentary: John, p. 275).

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS' PRAYER LIFE, Part 5/7

PRINCIPLE #5: Post-Ministry

At the end of a ministering event or the close of any activity, the principle to pray post-ministry must be employed. Reflecting on the blessings, successes, and failures of ministering one must come to God the Father with gratitude, praise and worship regardless of the temptation to neglect prayer due to exhaustion or other excuses.

A) After Feeding the 5000.

It is amazing to see that after a significant ministry event/miracle, it is recorded in Scriptures that Jesus allocates time to pray. He sends the disciples away in a boat and heads alone to the mountains to pray (Matthew 14:23, Mark 6:46, John 6:15). As exhausting as ministry was, Jesus always found time to pray.

B) After the Return of the 70 Disciples.

In the passage of Luke 10:21-22 the seventy disciples that Jesus sent out earlier (Luke 10:1) have returned with much joy. And this brought about a divine initiated joy (Alfred Plummer, International Critical Commentary on St. Luke, p. 281) in Christ which resulted in open prayer of praise to God the Father in Luke 10:21. Once again Christ manifests to us the priority of prayer after ministering to others.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS' PRAYER LIFE, Part 6/7

PRINCIPLE #6: Persecution

The Lord Jesus Christ Himself best portrays the principle of prayer in the course of persecution like no other individual in the biblical text. For we see our Lord and Savior under the severest of trials, death on the cross and at the core of His persecution and pain, prayer permeates throughout His suffering on our behalf for our sin. On the cross, the Scriptures reveal to us seven sayings of Jesus; three of these sayings are considered prayers, which will be examined.

A) Commencement of the Crucifixion.

Jesus utters the following words, recorded in Luke 23:33, seemingly immediately at the beginning of His crucifixion, "Father, forgive them; for they do not know what they are doing". This is an intercessory prayer to God the Father on behalf of His tormentors (John MacArthur, MacArthur Study Bible, p. 1564). This perfect example, amid the intensity of such pain, Jesus showed us the model that prayer has to inaugurate our trials. Jesus Christ, in spite of the injurious nature of the cross, committed this to prayer, looking past the circumstance to the hearts of His ignorant enemies.

B) Continuance of the Crucifixion.

The fourth saying of Jesus on the cross is placed before us in the written Word of God in Matthew 27:46, "My God, my God why have you forsaken me". This prayer, in the form of a question, refers back to Psalm 22:1. These words reveal to us the anguish of Jesus as a result of being separated from God the Father for the first and only time, because of His sin bearing (John MacArthur, Matthew Commentary 24-28, p. 270). In the middle of our Lord's suffering for sin, He turns to prayer and compels us to consider doing the same regardless of other priorities and especially during the intensive, moments of service and trials.

C) Conclusion of the Cross.

It is recorded in Luke 23:46, "Father, into your hands I commit my spirit". This final seventh saying of Jesus from the cross, refers back to Psalm 35:1 (Nolland, John, Word Biblical Commentary Vol. 35c: Luke 18:35-24:53, p. 1158) consummating with prayer the completion of His cross work to atone for sin. Nearing the end of His work, Jesus' prayer is a reminder that when the end is in sight, pray.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

7 KEY PRINCIPLES OF JESUS PRAYER LIFE, Part 7/7

PRINCIPLE #7: Intercessory Prayer

The principle of intercessory prayer for people cannot be overlooked nor missed in the life of Jesus. Additionally, some intercessory prayers are not recorded; however, the Scriptures reveal that Jesus had indeed interceded for individuals.

A. Prayer for Peter.

In Luke 22:32 we discover that Jesus had been requested by Satan to sift Peter like wheat. However, we read that Jesus had prayed for Peter at some point earlier in time. Although we do not know when this prayer was offered, it reveals that Jesus never lost site of people amid the demands and pressures of life and ministry.

B. Priestly Prayer.

In John 17:1-26, in the upper room before Jesus' betrayal we have the longest single prayer of Jesus found in the New Testament (Beauford Bryant and Mark Krause, The College Press NIV Commentary: John, p. 338). The Lord Jesus is amongst the disciples and it has been an evening full of activity. Jesus had washed their feet (John 13:1-20), the Passover meal was completed and the Lord's Supper was instituted (Matthew 26:26-29), Judas had left to betray Jesus (John 13:21-30), and right before they sang a hymn and departed, Jesus took the time to pray this petition. Not only did Jesus pray for Himself, but He prayed for the disciples, and future believers in His great high priestly prayer (Robert L. Thomas and Stanley N. Gundry, A Harmony of the Gospels With Explanations and Essays, p. 218). These particular petitions were not about wealth, prestige, or worldly influence but that present and future believers may be kept from evil and the evil one, separated from the sinful world, eligible for duty, and delivered safely to their heavenly home (Marcus Rainsford, Our Lord Prays for His Own, p. 173). Amid these significant activities, Jesus made prayer a priority.

III. Conclusion

The living of life will have its ebbs and flows, but prayerful communion with the Father must remain the steadfast practice of every born-again believer. To truly prioritize prayer in a busy schedule there must be prayer before, during, and after any and all activities and seasons of peace, prosperity, persecutions or even painful trials. Not only petitioning on behalf of self but for others as well. This is the pattern Jesus exemplified throughout His ministry- alone, before few and before many. Even though we have few examples of the words of Jesus' prayers (Beauford Bryant and Mark Krause, The College Press NIV Commentary: John, p. 337), what is said and seen from His prayer life is adequate to conclude that prayer was a priority for Jesus. His example is sufficient to necessitate us to the identical priority. Lastly, Christ was sinless, He had the perfect relationship with the Father, and He made prayer a priority while doing the will of the Father.

WARNING:

Prayerlessness is willful independence

how to Preach

OUTLINES & THEIR TITLES – WHAT MAKES A GREAT HEADLINE

Now that most sermons are going online, a sermon title and corresponding outline will be the difference between one sermon being heard and another being overlooked. Therefore, think thoughtfully and carefully about your titles and outlines. The principles for a good title apply for a good outline as well. Here is advice from various preaching books:

Advice for Creating an Effective Sermon Title (**Note:** some of these books may not work if you do not own the book)

Anderson, Kenton C. [*Choosing to Preach: A Comprehensive Introduction to Sermon Options and Structures*](#), p 152. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan Publishing House, 2006.

- [CP:CISOS](#): 11. Title Your Sermon

Robinson, Haddon W. and Craig Brian Larson. [*The Art and Craft of Biblical Preaching: A Comprehensive Resource for Today's Communicators*](#). 1st ed., p 370. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan Publishing House, 2005.

- [ACBP:CRTC](#): Chapter 100: The Purpose-Driven Title

MacArthur, John F., Jr. [*Rediscovering Expository Preaching*](#), p 239. Dallas: Word Publishing, 1992.

- [REP](#): Choosing a Title for a Message

Hamilton, Donald L. [*Homiletical Handbook*](#), p 67. Nashville, TN: Broadman Press, 1992.

- [Homiletical Handbook](#): Step 9: Choose a Title
- [Homiletical Handbook](#): Step 12: Choose a Title

Gugliotto, Lee J. *Handbook for Bible Study: A Guide to Understanding, Teaching, and Preaching the Word of God*. electronic ed. Hagerstown, MD: Review and Herald Publishing Association, 2001.

- [Handbook for Bible Study](#): Choosing a Title

Brown, H.C., Jr, H. Gordon Clinard, Jesse J. Northcutt and Al Fasol. *Steps to the Sermon: An Eight-Step Plan for Preaching With Confidence*. Revised., p 112, p 113. Nashville, TN: Broadman & Holman Publishers, 1996.

- [SS:ESPPWCR](#): The Title

Another place to learn techniques to improve your sermon titles come from a source you might not initially consider: newspapers & blogs! Check out the following links:

- <http://www.bloguission.com/content-management/better-blog-titles/>
- <http://michelfortin.com/write-magnetic-headlines-with-these-7-tips/>
- <http://outspokenmedia.com/blogging/write-killer-blog-titles/>
- <http://www.copyblogger.com/10-sure-fire-headline-formulas-that-work/>
- <http://web.ku.edu/~edit/heads.html>
- <http://www.copyblogger.com/how-to-write-headlines-that-work/>

how to Preach

NOTES FOR THE PULPIT: MANUSCRIPT TO MEMORIZE

If you have watched a young seminary student preach, they fall in two basic categories. They are either tied significantly to their notes, or they have next to nothing in the pulpit. This illustrates the dilemma most teachers/preachers face today: how much information should one bring into the pulpit. There are advantages and disadvantages to both methods. A properly constructed manuscript is a wonderful way to think through the whole sermon from start to finish. All the illustrations, expositions, applications, transitions are easily accessible and can be referenced during the preaching event. However, dependence on a manuscript in the pulpit can minimize eye contact, sound unnatural and too academic, and overwhelm the audience with too much detail and technical information. On the other hand, a minimal outline or no-outline is a great way to connect to the audience and be very personable. However, imprecision, lack of detail, and lack of structure opens the door for shallow preaching and emotionalism that in the long run won't develop disciples grounded in the Scriptures. Admittedly, these are extreme pictures of both styles to make a point. So is there a happy balance? Can we have your cake and eat it to? I believe there is and the key is found in the method of preparation.

So whether you use a detailed manuscript, notes, or nothing at all, let me offer the follow suggestions. First, let's remember every destination begins with a journey, and every journey is incremental with milestones. In other words, don't flip the switch overnight. My advice to the "manuscripters" is to move to less notes and to the "noteless" is to add more detail. Now with that said, here are some practical tips.

- ❶ **Develop your outline first from the text and memorize.** Memorizing this alone will provide a framework that any audience can follow. The outline should have audible, visual, and textual clues to guide you and the audience to the next point. Also, show a sequence or process which in turn can make the outline more memorable. For example, Sit, Stand, Run, and Rest. (See Best Practice Video, Lesson 5, Exercises 6-7 | Seminar/Webinar Session #4)
- ❷ **Memorize your introduction, proposition, and conclusion.** This alone can have a dramatic effect gaining the attention of the audience at the beginning and assuring that you will avoid closing too abruptly. This will create confidence in the audience you are prepared.
- ❸ **Practice explaining your point out loud in a conversational manner.** Remove technical language and avoid confusing explanations. If you cannot "keep it simple" and clear, then study the topic further or avoid the subject altogether. I do not mean to avoid difficult subjects, but that clarity is critical and this ensures your audience can understand.
- ❹ **Memorize your applications and illustrations.** Once again you will connect better with your audience and this portion of the lesson will be more authentic. If you can't memorize these items, most likely they are too long and too complex.
- ❺ **Memorize your transitions.** This will allow you to flow from one point to the next naturally and the audience will never know if you added or subtracted material during the preaching event.
- ❻ **Discover your practice point.** After the sermon is finished, start practicing start to finish. Find out how many times it takes to get through the sermon with the most eye contact, and the key parts memorized.
- ❼ **Bring what is essential to the pulpit.** After you practice you will know what you have memorized and what needs practice. Always bring the outline, introduction, proposition, conclusion, and anything else that you need.

how to Preach

THE NECESSARY CONNECTION BETWEEN THE TEXT & APPLICATION

When we take up the role of teaching and preaching we must be mindful of the warning found in **James 3:1** -

*Let not many of you become teachers, my brethren,
knowing that as such we will incur a stricter judgment.*

One of easiest ways to incur stricter judgment is to command your audience to obey an application that is not rooted in the Biblical text. This falls under the same condemnation by Jesus of the scribes and Pharisees in Luke 11:46

*But He said, "Woe to you lawyers as well!
For you weigh men down with burdens hard to bear,
while you yourselves will not even touch the burdens with one of your fingers.*

Imagine having to explain yourself before the Lord how you told people to "obey man" rather than "obey God". In addition to this, when an application is not rooted in the Biblical text, there is significant risk that you may contradict the commands of scripture or worse introduce heresy.

So how do we keep the application rooted in the text? Here are some practical steps:

- ❶ Study the passage and be clear on the author's intended meaning
- ❷ Identify any clear commands in the text and relay that to the audience (do not add and do not subtract)
- ❸ Check your cross reference section in the passage guide and see if there are related passages that have an application tied to the text of the passage you are studying.
- ❹ Consult application commentaries like [Jon Courson](#), [Life Application Bible Commentary](#), [Application Commentaries Bundle](#), or NIV Application Commentary for [OT](#) / [NT](#).
- ❺ Create a collection of your devotionals and search for your passage in them <bible = john 3:16>
 - [See Orange Overview Training CD](#) (Beginner > Searching Books > Collections)
- ❻ Create a principle tied to the text than can be universally applied to the audience
 - [See Blue Best Practices Training 1 & 2](#) (Lesson 9)
- ❼ Test the application against yourself, are you willing to apply?

how to Preach

PLACEMENT OF THE ILLUSTRATION & APPLICATIONS

In the body of the sermon or lesson, there are three locations to place an illustration and application. Let's look at each location and its corresponding benefits.

Before your exposition: This is utilized to introduce your exposition

- It prepares the audience for the point, increasing the chances the idea will be heard in its entirety.
- It can be used to remove prejudice and persuade the audience to listen to what will follow
- It can generate interest and curiosity so that the exposition is stronger and more memorable
- It's a great way to transition from the previous point so there is a clear break between the ideas
- It is recommended you open with an illustration, rather than an application.
- Keep your illustration brief and to the point.
- Don't allow your illustration to be more memorable than the exposition both in emotional content and in length of time

During the Exposition: This is utilized to emphasize the exposition

- Since your illustration or application will follow a portion of your exposition, you will want to ensure that the illustration and application is brief and has a concluding format or style.
- The illustration and application must repeat the point in a practical and relevant way.
- Depending on the length of your exposition, do not employ more than one illustration and one application for each point.
- Only use an illustration or application here for lengthy points. If your exposition is too brief, you run the risk of your illustration and application getting too much attention.

After the Exposition: This is utilized to summarize your exposition

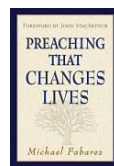
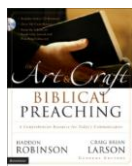
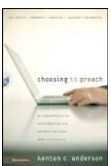
- Employing an illustration or application at the end of your exposition can strengthen the ideas presented and make them stand out even further.
- I recommend applications more than illustration to be used after the exposition.
- Guard against introducing new ideas with the illustration and application, the goal is to repeat the ideas of the exposition in a concluding manner.

Recommend Resources for Building Sermons:

[Choosing to Preach](#)

[The Art and Craft of Biblical Preaching](#)

[Preaching that Changes Lives](#)



how to Preach

RHETORICAL DEVICES, PART 1

Effective rhetoric combines the power of logic and the art of persuasion to inform and change the minds of any listener. We use rhetorical devices all the time without realizing it. For example, when we ask a question that the audience already knows is a rhetorical device to involve the audience. In the next several newsletters, we will provide you a list of rhetorical devices; some from the Bible others from outside the Bible that you can employ in your lessons and sermons. Rhetorical devices can range from the sounds, to words, to sentence structures and more!

#1 Absurd: Using the **unrealistic** to drive home a “realistic” point

Micah 6:6 With what shall I come to the Lord And bow myself before the God on high? Shall I come to Him with burnt offerings, With yearling calves? **7 Does the Lord take delight in thousands of rams, In ten thousand rivers of oil?** Shall I **present my firstborn for my rebellious acts, The fruit of my body for the sin of my soul?**

#2 Alliteration: Repeating sounds, typically with two or more words.

Is 43:19a “Behold, I will do something **new**, **Now** it will spring forth; Will you **not** be aware of it?”

This verse is also alliterated (h sound) in the Hebrew:

19 “Behold, I will do something new ,

1 הִנֵּה 2 נִי → 3 עֲשֶׂה → 4 הִדְעָה
hin ni ʿō·sé(h) hăd·śā(h)

Now it will spring forth;

5 עֲתָה → 6 תִּצְמַח ←
ʿāt·tā(h) tiṣ·maḥ

Will you not be aware of it ?

7 הֲ 8 לֹא → 9 תִּדְעִי ← 10 הֲ
hā lô(ʔ) tē·dā·ʿî hā

Assonance: Rhyme, repetition of sounds in words or syllable¹

“A stitch in time saves nine”

9 He who walks in integrity walks securely,

→ → 1 הֹלֵךְ 2 בְּ 3 אֲטוֹם 4 יֵלֵךְ 5 בְּטָח
ho·lêk b ʾātôm ye·lêk be·tāḥ

¹ Bruce K. Waltke, *The Book of Proverbs. Chapters 1-15*, The New International Commentary on the Old Testament (Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 2004), 41.

Q & A

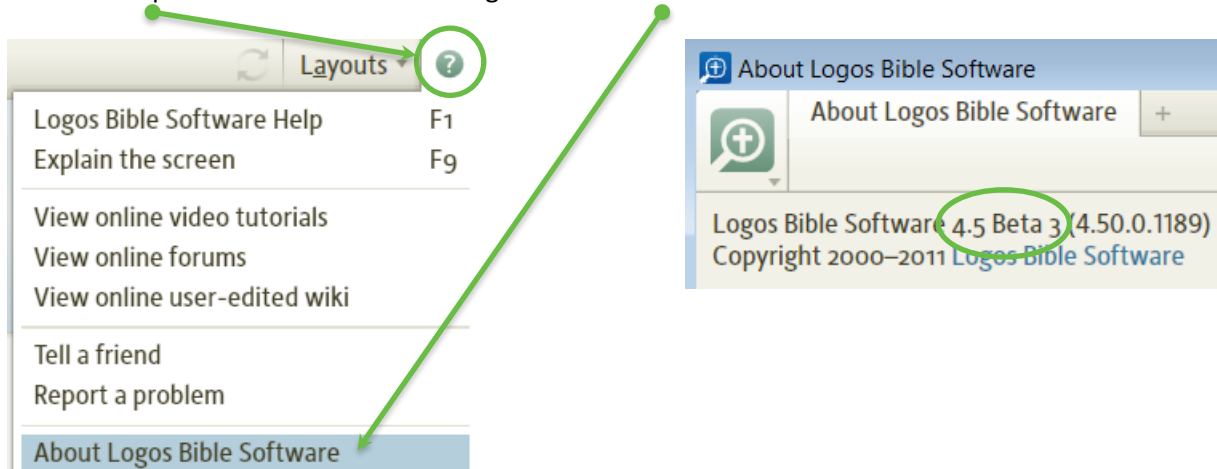
WHAT VERSION DO YOU HAVE?

Q1: John, how do I know if I have the latest version of Logos 4?

A1: There are several ways:

❶ First, always check what current version you have.

- Click the help button > Choose About Logos Bible Software



❷ Check and confirm the latest version here: [Click Here](#)

Logos 4.5	Beta 1	Beta 2	Beta 3
PC 2011	Wed 12 Oct	Thu 13 Oct	Thu 20 Oct
PC Build #	4.50.0.1142	4.50.0.1145	4.50.0.1189
Mac 2011	Wed 12 Oct	Thu 13 Oct	Thu 20 Oct
Mac Build #	4.50.0.1142	4.50.0.1145	4.50.0.1189

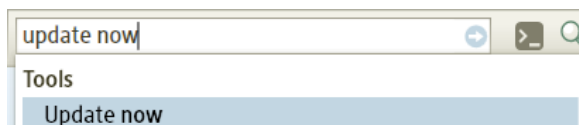
Latest Version for
Beta Testers

Logos 4.3	RC 1	RC 2	RC 3	RC 3 "Gold"	SR-1	SR-2	SR-3	SR-4	SR-5
PC 2011	Thu 28 Jul	Tue 2 Aug	Wed 3 Aug	Tue 9 Aug	Tue 16 Aug	Wed 24 Aug	Mon 12 Sep	Wed 28 Sep	Tue 4 Oct
PC Build #	4.30.0.1498	4.30.0.1512	4.30.0.1516	4.30.0.1516	4.30.0.1553	4.30.0.1572	4.30.0.1592	4.30.0.1597	4.30.0.1603
Mac 2011	Thu 28 Jul	Tue 2 Aug	Wed 3 Aug	Tue 9 Aug	Tue 16 Aug	Wed 24 Aug	Mon 12 Sep	Wed 28 Sep	Tue 4 Oct
Mac Build #	4.30.0.1497	4.30.0.1512	4.30.0.1517	4.30.0.1517	4.30.0.1553	4.30.0.1572	4.30.0.1592	4.30.0.1592	4.30.0.1603

Latest Version for
All Users

❸ To download the latest version:

- In the command box type **Update Now** and press enter (Note: You must be connected to the internet)



Q & A

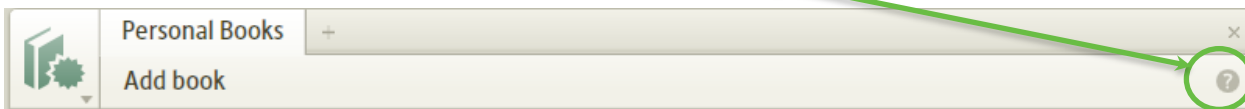
PERSONAL BOOK BUILDER TRAINING

Q1: I heard Logos released a tool where you can make your own Logos searchable books, what is this and how do I get trained?

A1: This tool is called “Logos Personal Books”. It’s available in version 4.3 or higher.

A2: You can get trained three ways:

- 1 Use the **limited** help file (**FREE**): Tools > Personal Books > Press F1 (help) or click the question mark



- 2 Purchase the webinar – Approximately 2 Hours of Training (\$ 4.99) [Click here for Preview & Purchase](#)
- 3 Purchase the Bundle (Overview and Best Practices) and get the webinar for **FREE**
 - o [Click Here to Learn about the Video training CDs/Download](#) (15+ Hours of Logos 4 Training)



Training Bundle



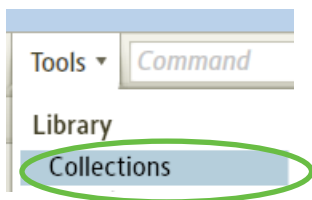
Q & A

PERSONAL BOOKS

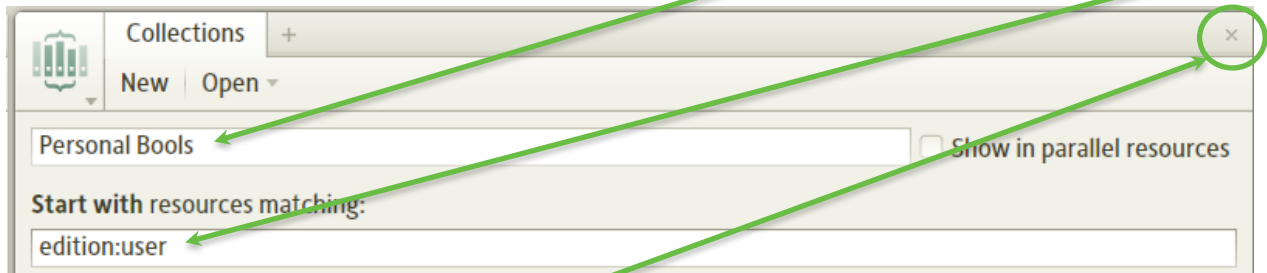
Q1: I want to search only my personal books, how do I do this?

A1: The easiest way to do this is to create a collection of all your personal books.

❶ Tools > Collections



❷ Provide a name for this collection. I have named mine **Personal Books**. For the rule, type **edition:user**



❸ Close the window by click in the x

Q & A

BOOLEAN OPERATORS?

Q1: What is a Boolean operator and how do I use them?

A1: A **Boolean operator** allows you to include or exclude information in your searches.

❶ The **AND** operate will look for **ALL** the items in your search

Note: In Logos, Boolean operators **MUST ALWAYS BE CAPITALIZED**

- Faith **AND** Hope **AND** Love
- In this example, we found all the verses that have faith, hope, and love! *This is the default for Logos.*

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software interface. At the top, there's a search bar with 'Personal Books' and 'Search' buttons. Below it, a dropdown menu shows 'Graph results' and 'Make Filter'. The search results are displayed in a table with columns 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax'. The search query is 'faith AND hope AND love'. The results show 10 results in 3 verses (0.24 sec). The results are listed under the heading 'New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update 10 results in 3 verses'. The results are:

- 1 Cor 13:13 But now faith, hope, love, abide these three; but the greatest of these is love.
- 1 Thess 1: 3 constantly bearing in mind your work of faith and labor of love and steadfastness of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ in the presence of our God and Father,
- 5: 8 But since we are of the day, let us be sober, having put on the breastplate of faith and love, and as a helmet, the hope of salvation.

❷ The **OR** operator will look for *EITHER* of the items in your search

- Faith **OR** love **OR** hope
- (faith, hope, love) – this is a list and works the same way.

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software interface. At the top, there's a search bar with 'Personal Books' and 'Search' buttons. Below it, a dropdown menu shows 'Graph results' and 'Make Filter'. The search results are displayed in a table with columns 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax'. The search query is 'faith OR hope OR love'. The results show 1,064 results in 903 verses (0.21 sec).

③ The **ANDNOT** operator will look for *the first word* and exclude the second word. In other words, any article that has faith and love will not appear in your search results. So use this carefully.

- Faith **ANDNOT** love
- Faith -love

The screenshot shows the LearnLOGOS.com search interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Personal Books', 'Search', and a '+' icon. Below this is a sub-bar with 'Graph results', 'Make Filter', and tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax'. The main search area has a prompt 'Search All Bible Text in All Passages in NASB95 for' followed by an example 'eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace'. A search input field contains the text 'faith ANDNOT hope'. Below the input field, a status bar shows 'VERSES 369 results in 346 verses (0.21 sec)'.

To learn more about Boolean Operators: [Click Here](#)

Q & A

SERACHING THE WORDS OF CHRIST AND MORPHOLOGY

Q1: I would like to search for all the commands that Jesus spoke. Is that possible?

A1: Great Question! This was a little tricky to figure out, but it is possible.

11 Minutes: This worked, but it took some time – 11 Minutes! And I have a fast computer! So be patient for the search results.

The screenshot shows the Logos Bible Software search interface. At the top, there are several 'Search' buttons and a magnifying glass icon. Below these, there are tabs for 'Basic', 'Bible', 'Morph', and 'Syntax', with 'Bible' currently selected. The search bar contains the text: 'Search All Bible Text in All Passages in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for'. Below the search bar, there is a text input field containing the query: '<LogosMorph ~ V??M????> ANDEQUALS WOC:*.'. To the right of the input field, there is a dropdown arrow. Below the search bar, there is a status bar that reads: 'VERSES 1,588 results in 562 verses (704.24 sec)'.

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter! tips@learnlogos.com

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

Interactive Training

Webinars

Bible Studies

Distant Education Class

Personalized Training

Tips, Tricks, and Helps

Welcome! More than a Manual...

If you like this eNewsletter let us know and tell others on [Facebook](#)! Now let's get ready to **LearnLogos**!

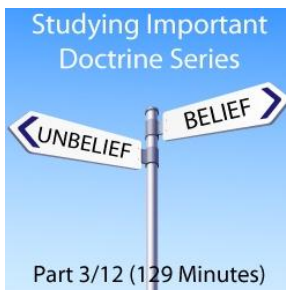
Note: You can click on the colored links above and it will take you to **LearnLogos.com** to learn more about all of the available training products. There are other types of links in this document: book links, Scripture links, and more. Click on them too!

Thanks and Enjoy!

John Fallahee, President/CEO & Video Trainer

RECENT NEWS

More Webinars Released! Only \$~~9.99~~ \$4.99 Click image to learn more!



Note: Most webinars are 1 ½ hours in length! Amazing value!

#2 Logos 4.5 Training update releasing before end of Day

6 New Videos

- Overview of the New Highlighting features
- Overview of the New Note features
- Exploring the new relationship between notes and Highlighting
- Checking your Base Package
- Explore the Wiki via help menu
- Turn on/off the notes in the reading view

Get THREE CDs for the BEST VALUE!
As low as **\$39.99**
(Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)

\$19.99 (Retail \$ 39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)

\$24.99 (Retail \$ 49.99)

*** 50% Off**
Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY

LearnLogos.com/discount

Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

The **NEW GOLD** STANDARD in Training!

Alert: **FREE BOOK**



Click here to get the latest Logos Free Books:

<http://www.logos.com/products/search?q=price%3a0&start=0>

Click here to get the latest Vyrso Free Books:



<http://vyrso.com/products/search?q=price%3a0>

Interactive Training Videos

WITHOUT THIS TRAINING YOU WILL NEVER MAXIMIZE YOUR POTENTIAL TO DISCOVER AND USE THE AMAZING FEATURES OF LOGOS 4

- 100+ videos / 10+ hours of hands-on training
- Interactive and non-interactive training videos • Works on Mac or PC
- Beginner to advanced / Hebrew, Greek, Syntax and more!
- Learn what you are missing / Learn how to use ALL of Logos 4.
- Comprehensive, quality training with excellence is now affordable for everyone!
- FREE updates, "Get More Out of 4"

FREE Live Webinars

- How to study the Bible | How to prepare a sermon | Inductive Bible study (Precept Students)
- New topics each month • 90 minutes (avg.) of training per session • Live Q&A
 - Each session streamed live (downloadable 24x7 afterwards)
 - Live sessions are FREE / Download past sessions for \$4.99 each

FREE eNewsletter/Manual

- 2 eNewsletters per month (better than a manual)
- Tips, Tricks, Helps and Shortcuts / Not weekly, but daily!
- Blog articles, Q&A with John
- And so much more

Online Education Course

- Hermeneutics, Bible study, Sermon preparation
- 8 to 32 week modules taught by John Fallahee • Study at your own pace
 - Equivalent to a 3 hour accredited class (earn credits from Tennessee Temple University)
 - Overview & Best Practices Bundle included (\$80 value!)

Bible Studies using Logos 4 (coming soon)

- JUDE: Study for adults
- Learn how to study the book of Jude

JESUS CHRIST: Study for kids

 - Children 8-13 learn about Jesus & the Gospel and how to study the Bible

Personalized Training

- EXPOSITORY PREACHING ANALYSIS W/LOGOS TRAINING
- 5 sermons analyzed with objective 60 pt grading system
 - Customized sermon preparation with Logos 4
 - 6 months of follow-up support

Academic.LearnLogos.com (coming soon for professors and teachers in Academia)

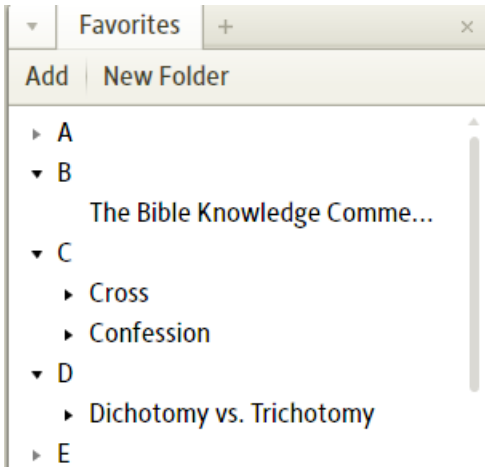
- Effective training for classroom integration or any online education model
- SCORM compliant quizzing/testing
- Tools and helps exclusive for the academic environment
- To schedule a FREE 30 minute consultation, email > academic@learnlogos.com

¹Logos Bible Software & Vyrso are registered trademarks of Logos Research Systems.

Optimizing LOGOS 4

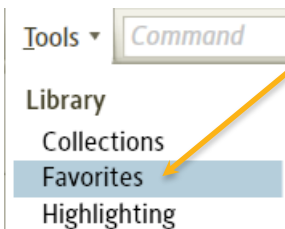
THE GRID VIEW

If you have taken advantage of the “Favorites” feature in Logos, by now you should have several items in the list and it may be quite disorganized. To optimize/organize the list, I recommend that you organize your links alphabetically as seen below.

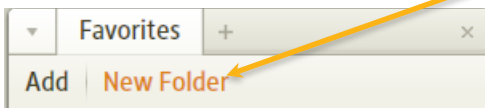


HOW TO:

- 1 Go to the main menu and choose **Tools**, then choose **Favorites**



- 2 Click **New Folder**



- 3 Rename the folder to 'A'. Note: Repeat the process for the whole alphabet



Note: See [Overview \(Orange CD\)](#) > Getting Started > Favorites & Bookmarks to learn more about Favorites.

Prayer in LOGOS 4

PRAYERS OF PAUL

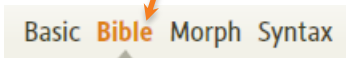
One of the ways to learn more about prayer is to read about those who prayed. Since we have looked at Jesus and prayer in previous eNewsletters, let's look and learn from the Apostle Paul. First let's begin by finding all the passages where Paul mention's prayer.

HOW TO:

❶ Go to the main menu and choose **Search**



❷ Choose **Bible** from the search menu



❸ To search just Paul's letters, you need to create a search range to search only Romans through Philemon.

❹ Click **All Passages**



❺ At the bottom, enter the following information and click the **Save** button.



Note: Now we are ready to search your bible

❻ Type the **following phrase** in your search box and press enter



❼ What to do with the search results?

- Make a list of everything Paul personally prayed about
- Make a list of everyone whom Paul interceded for in prayer
- Make a list of what Paul asked others to pray about
- Make a list of how Paul discusses the Trinity

➤ Get **THREE** CDs for the **BEST VALUE!**
As low as **\$39.99** (Retail \$90)



Overview of Logos 4 (1-CD)
\$19.99 (Retail \$39.99)

Best Practices (2-CD set)
\$24.99 (Retail \$49.99)

Logos 4 Bible Study Magazine
\$24.99 (Retail \$49.99)

50% Off Limited time offer for Bible Study Magazine readers

ORDER TODAY
LearnLogos.com/discount
Skip the CD & save \$5 more! **DOWNLOAD NOW**

➤ **NOW YOU CAN GET THE VERY MOST FROM LOGOS BIBLE SOFTWARE 4**

Customer testimonials describe LearnLogos training as ...

- "thrilling"
- "easy"
- "comprehensive"
- "effective"
- "incredible"
- "fun"
- "excellent"
- "affordable"
- "best value"
- "satisfied"
- "the best"
- "high quality"

➤ **DON'T JUST TAKE HOME TRAINING. TAKE HOME THE TRAINER.**

John has trained tens of thousands of people through his training videos and training workshops. As a former employee of Logos Bible Software, he developed and pioneered their first ever online training videos for Logos 3. John has trained notable people like **Kay Arthur, Mark Dever, Irwin Lutzer, and John Piper!**

John Fallahee, MBA, M.Div.
Your Personal Training Assistant



Historical/Theological Background

DETERMINING DATE RANGES FOR BOOKS OF THE BIBLE

If you have spent any time reading commentaries, you probably have noticed that the commentaries provide a date for the writing of the book. For example, here is an excerpt from the Bible knowledge Commentary¹

Date. Most evangelical scholars affirm that Revelation was written in A.D. 95 or 96. This is based on accounts of the early church fathers that the Apostle John had been exiled on Patmos Island during the reign of Domitian who died in A.D. 96. John was then allowed to return to Ephesus.

Because of a statement by Papias, an early church father, that John the Apostle was martyred before A.D. 70, the Johannine authorship has been questioned. However, the accuracy of this quotation from Papias has been seriously challenged by statements by Clement of Alexandria and Eusebius who affirm that the book was written by John on Patmos in A.D. 95 or 96.

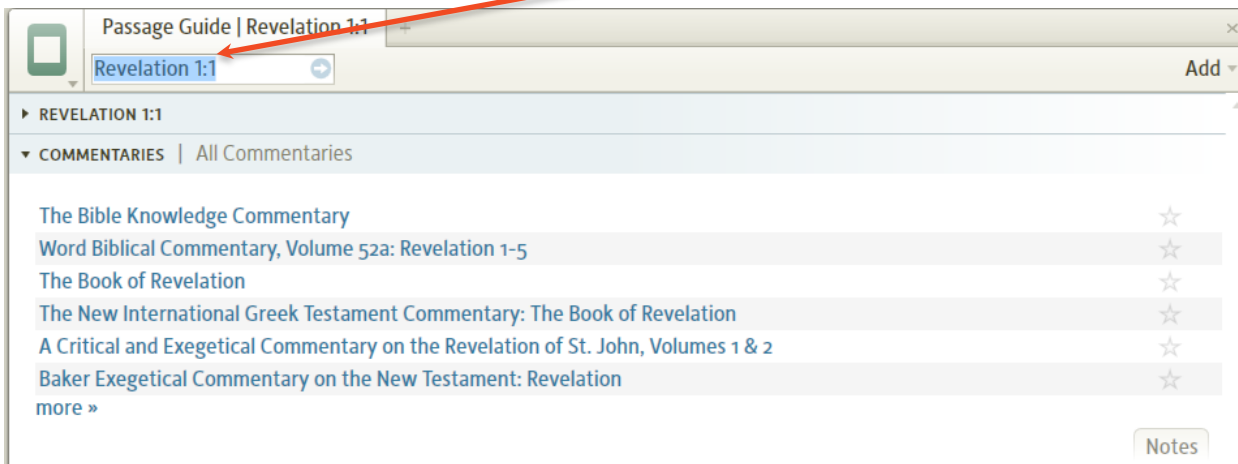
Just in these two paragraphs alone we have two possible dates for Revelation. This poses a problem. For example, if John wrote the book before the fall of Jerusalem, then how should we know interpret the book?

So what do we do with all these dates?

HOW TO:

❶ Using the **Passage Guide (Tools > Passage Guide)**, enter the first verse of the book. For example, **Revelation 1:1**

Note: We are using the passage guide to help locate all our commentaries quickly. We are using verse 1:1 to place us at the front of the commentary.



¹ John F. Walvoord, Roy B. Zuck and Dallas Theological Seminary, vol. 2, *The Bible Knowledge Commentary : An Exposition of the Scriptures* (Wheaton, IL: Victor Books, 1983-), 925.

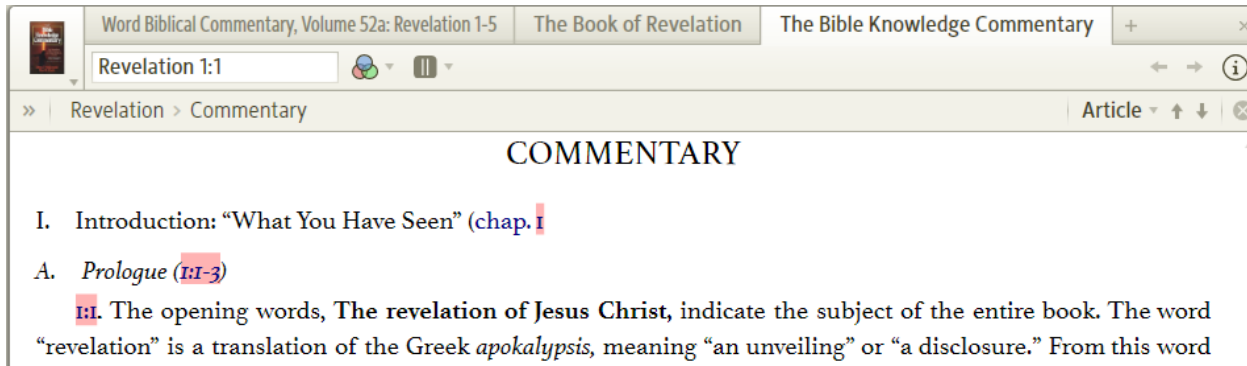
The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

- ② Click the **first** title in your commentary list



- ③ Click in the newly opened commentary and press **Page Up** button on your keyboard or use the **Up Arrow** to scroll upward in the book until you see the paragraph where **dates** are being discussed.

- ④ Here you are after you click the link.



- ⑤ Here you are after you press **Page Up** or **Up Arrow**

Date. Most evangelical scholars affirm that Revelation was written in A.D. 95 or 96. This is based on accounts of the early church fathers that the Apostle John had been exiled on Patmos Island during the reign of Domitian who died in A.D. 96. John was then allowed to return to Ephesus.

Because of a statement by Papias, an early church father, that John the Apostle was martyred before A.D. 70, the Johannine authorship has been questioned. However, the accuracy of this quotation from Papias has been seriously challenged by statements by Clement of Alexandria and Eusebius who affirm that the book was written by John on Patmos in A.D. 95 or 96.

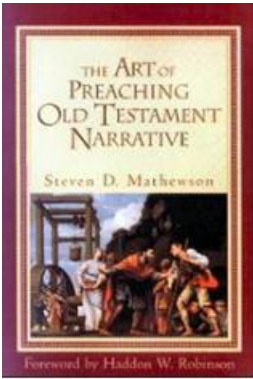
- ⑥ Now review all your commentaries from the passage guide and make a list of all your dates in chronological order. Please note the evidence that the commentaries use to support or reject the proposed date.

Commentary	Date Ranges	
Bible Knowledge:	95-96 ad	70 ad
Word Biblical Commentary:	> 80 <100	
NICOTT:	98-117	41-54
ICC:	60, 64-68, 70-75	

- ⑦ Weigh the evidence that has been provided and **choose a date range** rather than a specific date. Please note that some Bible books provide their own date evidence and that should always be used as the primary date.

Outlining

SURPRISING INSIGHTS FOR YOUR NEXT OUTLINE



The other day I was reading through the [*Art of Preaching Old Testament Narrative*](#)² and was surprised on the author's perspective in outlining for a sermon. He suggested the following:

- Don't try to create outlines that people will remember
- View main points as endings, not beginnings
- State your outline points in full sentences
- Think in terms of moves rather than points

At first blush, you might say that it is the opposite of everything you have observed in the pulpit, been trained, or even what you are currently doing Sunday to Sunday. But as I read further, and I suggest you get this book and do the same for a more detailed explanation, the author has hit upon something we have forgotten in our preaching – the sermon on Sunday, the Sunday school lesson, or even the Bible study is narrative by nature. An expository sermon can take a narrative/story like form with the goal that the audience can learn what the text means while engaging in a memorable experience but not sacrificing the depth needed to go below the surface of the text. Keep in mind this works best for narrative passages.

What do you do about the epistles and other doctrinal heavy passages? Utilize other narrative passages from the Old and New Testament that can illustrate positively or negative the doctrine being discussed. This way, you can make both books more accessible to the audience.

² Steven D. Mathewson, *The Art of Preaching Old Testament Narrative* (Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Academic, 2002), 123.

Word Study

LOUW-NIDA AND HEBREW WORD STUDY

Hopefully by now you have had a chance to learn a little about Louw-Nida from my training videos. For a quick review, the **Louw-Nida** is a numbering system that can help you determine not only the meaning of a word in the Greek New Testament, but it can also help you find related words. For example, love (agape) is **Louw-Nida 25.43** and is part of the **category 25 'Attitudes and Emotions'**. Furthermore, it is part of a **sub-category 'Love, Affection, Compassion'**. The [Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament Dictionary](#) is where you can find these definitions, similar terms and learn what it can and cannot mean. By the way, you can find a link to your Louw-Nida in your interlinear Bible.

[Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament Dictionary](#)

[ESV Bible](#)

25 Attitudes and Emotions^{1,2}

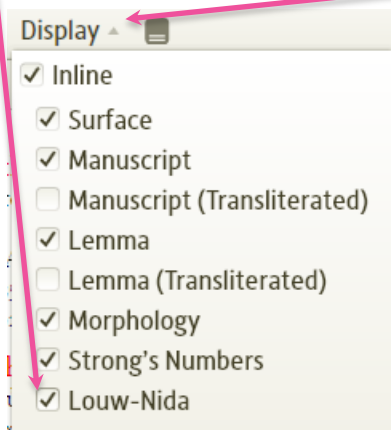
Outline of Subdomains

- A Desire, Want, Wish (25.1–25.11)
- B Desire Strongly (25.12–25.32)
- C Love, Affection, Compassion (25.33–25.58)**
- D Hope, Look Forward To (25.59–25.64)
- E Be Willing (25.65–25.67)

For God So Loved the World

16 "For ^h	God	so	loved
γάρ ₂	ὁ ₄ θεός ₅	οὕτως ₁	ἠγάπησεν ₃
γάρ	ὁ θεός	οὕτως	ἀγαπάω
CLX	DNSM NNSM	B	VAAI ₃ S
1063	3588 2316	3779	25
89.23	92.24 12.1	61.10	25.43

Note: To display your Louw-Nida number links, in your interlinear Bible **click display** and make sure Louw-Nida is checked.

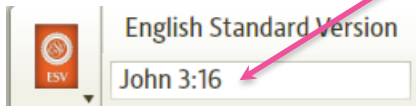


Now how does Hebrew play into all this?

HOW TO:

- ❶ First, let's open [A Dictionary of Biblical Languages Hebrew Old Testament](#)
- ❷ Second, make sure your Reverse interlinear is open. I am going to use the [ESV](#) for this example.

③ Go to John 3:16 by entering **John 3:16** in the Bible reference box and press **Enter**.



④ Next, **right click** on the first use of 'love' and **choose from the menu Louw-Nida**.

⑤ Next, at the left click **'Search all open resource'** (note: you could search entire library if you did not have the dictionary open)

⑥ Next, change the search criteria by removing = (equal sign) replacing it with the ~ (approximate sign) and press enter to re-run the search: <LouvNida ~ Louw Nida 25.43>

⑦ Locate in your search results [Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domains: Hebrew \(Old Testament\)](#). You should have 43 hits, in 41 articles.

▼ **Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domains: Hebrew (Old... 43 hits in 41 articles**

170 אָהַבָּ (DBLH 170, #1)

אָהַבָּ ('ā·hăḇ): v.; ≡ Str 157; TWOT 29—1. LN 25.33–25.58 (qal) love, i.e., have an affection based on a close relationship, sometimes in comparison to other persons with a lesser...

⑧ Lastly, please examine the search results. If you look closely, you will find not only the Hebrew equivalent for 'Agape'/'love', but other Hebrew words related to love!

Illustrations/ Applications

APPLICATION: IT'S EASIER TO LEARN FROM THE SUCCESSES AND FAILURES OF OTHERS, THAN TO SUCCEED OR FAIL ON YOUR OWN!

Some have suggested that the test of true maturity is the ability to learn from others. Expressions like “Fools rush in where angels fear to tread” would affirm such statements. So, if we can learn from others, why not explore the life lessons from individuals disclosed in the pages of scriptures, uncensored and with the full life-experience in view?

Once you have determined the application, the more difficult task is identifying the appropriate individual to discuss in light of your application in a negative or positive way. Therefore, let's presume your application is “revenge”, how do we find the right individual(s)?

Let me show you how.

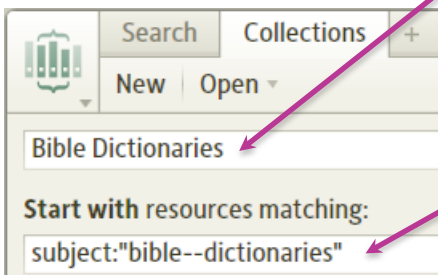
HOW TO:

❶ Let's create a collection of all key Bible Dictionaries (they contain a lot of data on people in the Bible)

❷ Go to the main menu and choose **Tools > Collections**



❸ Name the collection: **Bible Dictionaries**, and use the rule **subject:"bible--dictionaries"**

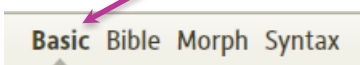


❹ Next we need to search this collection for the word “revenge”

❺ From the main menu, click **Search**



❻ Choose **Basic** search



7 Select your collection **Bible Dictionaries**

Search **All Text in Bible Dictionaries** for

Find

Bible Dictionaries

8 Type in your application keyword **revenge** and press **enter** to start searching

Search **All Text in Bible Dictionaries** for

9 Read through your search results. Here is an example from Easton's Bible Dictionary

▼ **Easton's Bible Dictionary** 11 hits in 9 articles

Absalom 2x
public act of his life was the blood-revenge he executed against Amnon, David's eldest son, who had basely wronged Absalom's sister Tamar. This revenge was executed at the time of the...

Antiochus
are prophetically described by Daniel (11:21-32). He was a "vile person." In a spirit of revenge he organized an expedition against Jerusalem, which he destroyed, putting vast multitudes of...

Curse
Gen. 9:25; 49:7; Deut. 27:15; Josh. 6:26). Such curses are not the consequence of passion or revenge, they are predictions. No one on pain of death shall curse father or mother (Ex. 21:17), nor...

David
David, and sought to promote his advancement; but was treacherously put to death by Joab in revenge for his having slain his brother Asahel at Gibeon (3:22-39). This was greatly to David's...

Dinah
Hivite chief, when Jacob's camp was in the neighbourhood of Shechem. This led to the terrible revenge of Simeon and Levi in putting the Shechemites to death (Gen. 34). Jacob makes frequent...

Jacob
strong in the assurance of the divine favour. Esau came forth and met him; but his spirit of revenge was appeased, and the brothers met as friends, and during the remainder of their lives they...

Jotham
There came a recoil in the feelings of the people toward Abimelech, and then a terrible revenge, in which many were slain and the city of Shechem was destroyed by Abimelech (Judg. 9:45...

Samson 2x
companion" (Judg. 14:20). For this Samson took revenge by burning the "standing corn of the Philistines" (15:1-8), who, in their turn, in revenge "burnt her and her father with fire." Her death...

Tamar
son, Shelah, would become her husband. This promise was not fulfilled, and hence Tamar's revenge and Judah's great guilt (38:12-30). (3.) A daughter of David (2 Sam. 13:1-32; 1 Chr. 3:9...

To learn more on creating a collection and searching see the [Overview CD](#)



Beginner > Searching Books > Collections (5:28 Minutes)

Beginner > Searching Books > Basic Search (7:00 Minutes)

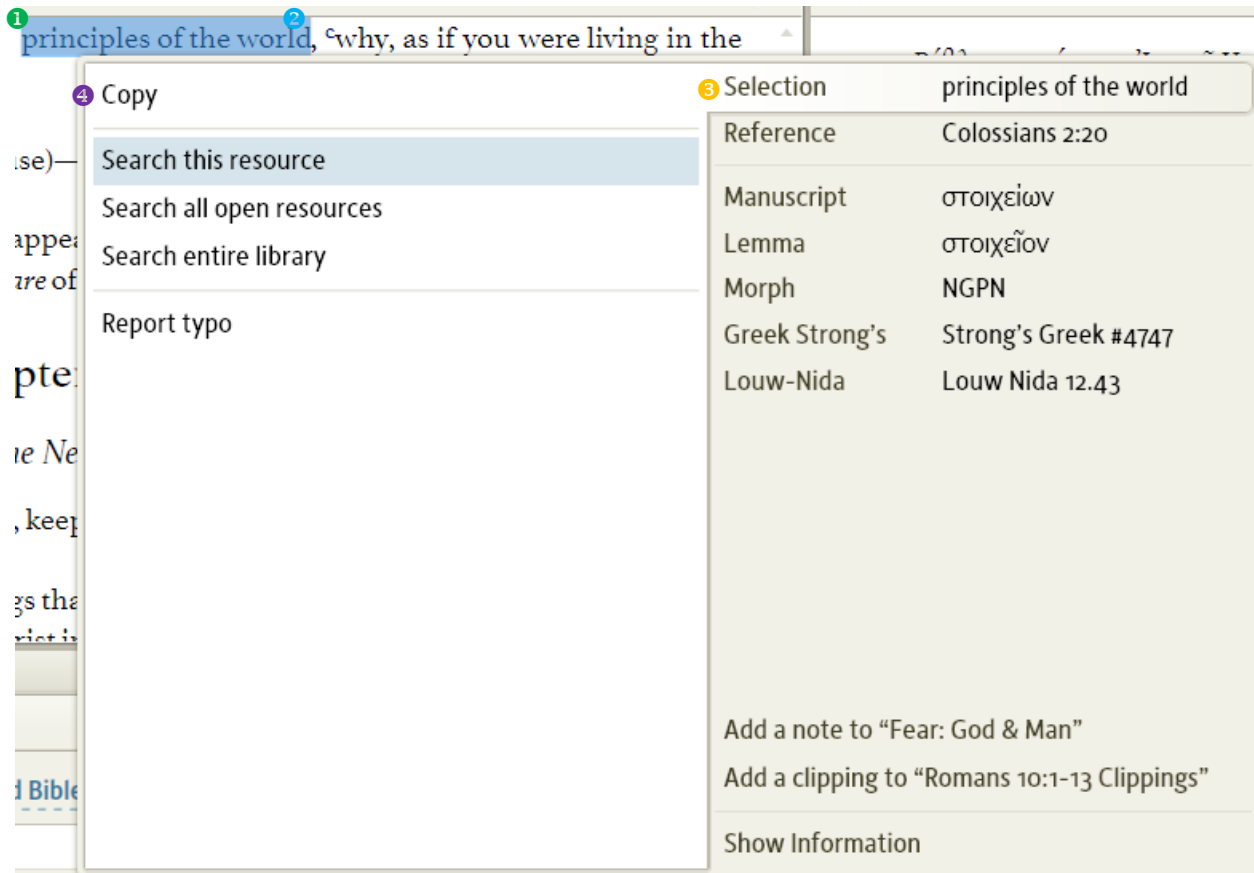
Searching

PHRASE SEARCHING

Searching for phrases (2-5 words) is important in identifying recurring ideas as well as to see patterns in the Biblical writers. There are three basic ways to search for a phrase:

- Search on the English phrase
- Search on the Hebrew/Greek Manuscript
- Search on the Hebrew/Greek lemma

The first two are easily accomplished in Logos 4 simply by ❶ **selecting the text**, then ❷ **right clicking on the text**, and choosing ❸ **selection from the right menu**, and then choosing ❹ **searching this resource** from the left menu.



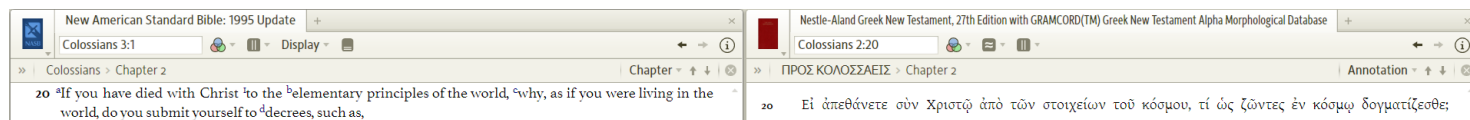
But there are problems searching phrases in this manner. First, if you are searching on the English, the translator may change the English tense or even the word itself. This change will make it next to impossible to find the repeated phrase.

Second, if you are searching on the manuscript form, then word order or a change in morphology will result in a similar fate. So how do you work around this problem? You have to search the lemma. Let's learn how.

Let's search on the phrase "elementary principles of the world" in Colossians 2:20. (I got this idea from a Q&A session with Pastor Jasper Willaims, III).

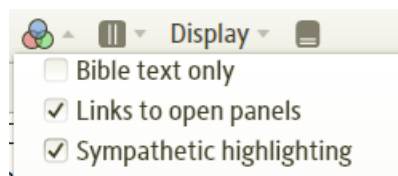
HOW TO:

❶ First open the [NASB](#) and your Greek Bible ([NA27 with Morphology](#))

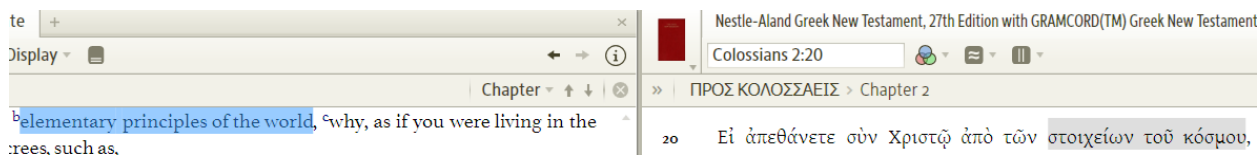


❷ Turn on sympathetic highlighting so as you select the NASB, the NA27 will be automatically selected and vice versa.

- Click the visual filter (3 colored circles)
- Check the box labeled Sympathetic Highlighting
- Do this for both Books



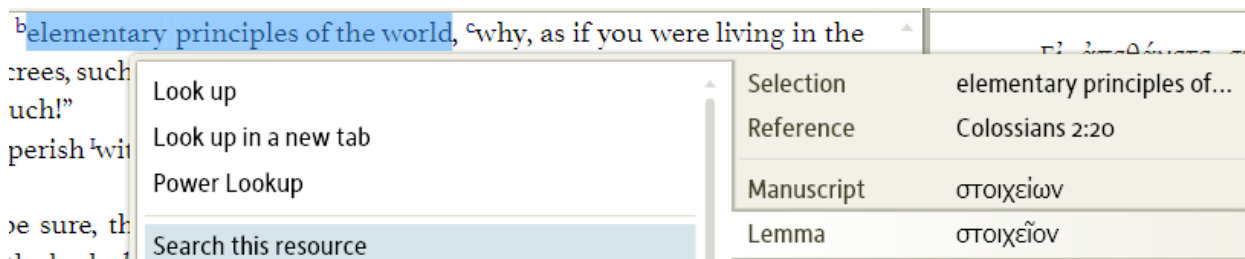
❸ In the NASB, select the phrase “elementary principles of the world” (Note: see how the Greek Text is selected automatically) This makes it easy for you to determine which Greek words are associated with the English words as well as to see if they are together or separate by other words in the Greek.



❹ Let’s now **right click** on **elementary** in the NASB

❺ Choose from the menu at the right **Lemma**

❻ At the menu on the left, choose **Search this Resource**



Note: The reason we search on the lemma through the menu is for logos to populate the search field with the search phrase <Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχείων>

Note: The reason we have the Greek text open is to see how many Greek words make of the English phrase.

The NEW GOLD STANDARD in Training!

⑦ Since there are three Greek words, copy and paste this search phrase three times in the search box so it looks like the following

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

<Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχεῖον><Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχεῖον><Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχεῖον>

⑧ Next, we are going to replace the two other Greek words with the Greek words for “the” and “world”. Let’s begin by **right clicking** on the word “the”, then choose **lemma**, then choose **Copy**.

for the world, why, as if you were living in the

Look up
Look up in a new tab
Power Lookup
Search this resource
Search all open resources
Search entire library
Morph Search: ó
Morph Search: ó@DGSM
Copy

Selection	the
Reference	Colossians 2:20
Manuscript	τοῦ
Lemma	ὁ
Morph	DGSM
Greek Strong's	Strong's Greek #3588
Louw-Nida	Louw Nida 92.24
Person	Jesus

⑨ Go to the **search tab**, select the second Greek word, then **right click** on the selected text, and choose **paste**.

/στοιχεῖον><Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχεῖον>

Copy Ctrl+C
Cut Ctrl+X
Paste Ctrl+V

⑩ Repeat this process for “world”. Your final search phrase will look as follows. Go ahead and press enter to search.

IMPORTANT: Put **one space between** each group of lemma

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for

<Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχεῖον> <Lemma = lbs/el/ὁ> <Lemma = lbs/el/κόσμος>

See next page for Search Results.


- Here are the search results

Search All Bible Text in All Passages in New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update for eg (Paul OR "Saul of Tarsus") AND grace

<Lemma = lbs/el/στοιχείον> <Lemma = lbs/el/ὁ> <Lemma = lbs/el/κόσμος>

▼ VERSES 17 results in 3 verses (0.16 sec)

+ Add Versions Grid Verses Aligned Analysis

 **New American Standard Bible: 1995 Update** 17 results in 3 verses

Gal 4: 3 So also we, while we were children, were held in bondage under the **elemental** things of the **world**.


Col 2: 8 See to it that no one takes you captive through philosophy and empty deception, according to the tradition of men, according to the **elementary** principles of the **world**, rather than according to Christ.

20 If you have died with Christ to the **elementary** principles of the **world**, why, as if you were living in the **world**, do you submit yourself to decrees, such as,


Analysis: We would expect Colossians 2:8 & 2:20 to appear, however, **Galatians 4:3** has been added to the list. We would have missed this because the NASB used 'things' instead of 'principles'.

Now how cool is that!

Note: Currently, Logos does not have the ability to select a phrase and automatically populate the search box with the lemmas, so we have to do this manually. Sounds like a great feature request! :)



Online Class



Hermeneutics, Bible Study, Sermon Prep.
8 to 32 Week Modules
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW


FREE Live Webinars



1) Studying the Bible
2) Preparing Sermons
3) Inductive Study
[Learn More](#)

SIGN UP TODAY

Pastor Training (Personalized)



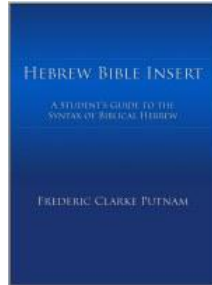
60 Pt. Sermon Analysis
Personalized Training
Application Process
[Learn More](#)

BUY NOW

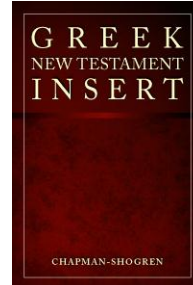
Book Overview and Review

Hebrew & Greek Grammar Made Simple

Working with the original language is a serious undertaking, but can be made simple with the use of these two inexpensive, and concise resources. These two resources can't be a substitute for seminary classes on Hebrew and Greek languages, but they can guide you through basic grammar.



Hebrew Bible Insert \$ 4.95



Greek New Testament Insert \$ 4.95

1.1 Number

1.1 Number. Singular and plural are grammatical categories that are part of the concord system of BH (§1.3), and usually indicate “one” (§1.1.1a) and “more than one” (§1.1.3a), respectively. Languages vary in their use of number, considering some objects countable (and thus either singular or plural), but others as dual, collectives (and thus always grammatically singular), or some other category. Languages also place different words in each category.

1.1.1 Singular

1.1.1a. *singularity*, referring to one of a countable referent.

וַיֹּאמֶר הַמֶּלֶךְ The king said (2 Sam 14:21)

אִישׁ הָיָה בְּאֶרֶץ-עוּז There was a man in the land of Uz (Job 1:1)

1.1.1b. *collective*, referring to a group as a whole.

וַיְהִי־לִי שׁוֹר וַחֲמֹר צֹאן וְעֶבֶד I have bulls, donkeys, and flocks, [male] servants, and female servants

וְשִׁפְחָה (Gn 32:6)

Some nouns occur only or mainly in the singular, whether their referent is singular or collective.

וְטַפְכֶּם אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם לְבִן יְהוָה and your children, whom you said would become spoil (Nu 14:31)

NOMINATIVE

1. Subject. This case most commonly functions as the subject of the sentence.

Καὶ ἄλλος ἄγγελος ἦλθεν καὶ ἐστάθη (Rev. 8:3)

And another angel came and stood

διὸ καὶ ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸν ὑπερύψωσεν (Phil 2:9)

Wherefore also God highly exalted him

2. Predicate Nominative. Copulative verbs (εἶμί, γίνομαι, ὑπάρχω) do not take a direct object; in their predicate, they take a nominative (see also under **Predicate Adjectives**). In the third example, the copulative verb is assumed.

how to Study the Bible

1 & 2 KINGS: WHAT RESOURCES WOULD YOU RECOMMEND?

Exegetical Commentaries

[Word Biblical Commentary: 1 Kings](#)

[Word Biblical Commentary: 2 Kings](#)

[ICC: A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Books of Kings](#)

Expositional Commentaries

[The New American Commentary: 1,2 Kings](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: 1 Kings](#)

[The Pulpit Commentary: 2 Kings](#)

[Lange's Commentary: Kings](#) (Part of 63 Volume Set)

[The Preacher's Commentary Series: 1,2 Kings](#)

Introductory Commentaries

[Be Responsible: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

[Be Distinct: Wiersbe, Warren W.](#)

Outlines

[The Book of 1 Kings by Gingrich, Roy](#)

[The Book of 2 Kings by Gingrich, Roy](#)

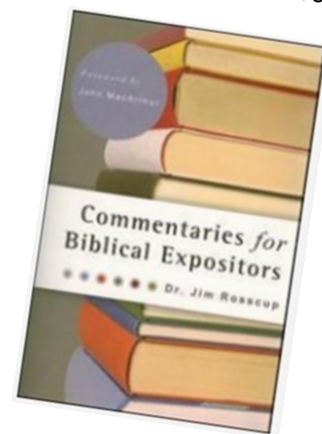
Create a collection of your 1 & 2 King Commentaries


Collection Name: 1 & 2 Kings Resources

Collection Rule: subject:"1 kings" OR subject:"2 kings"

Note: To create a collection: Tools > Collection

To learn more about these and other resources, I recommend the following resource:



 Wesley's Notes: First Kings Collections +

New Open ▾

1 & 2 Kings Resources ☐ Show in parallel resources

Start with resources matching:

subject:"1 kings" OR subject:"2 kings"

+ Plus these resources: - Minus these resources:

Drop resources or collections to add here. Drop resources or collections to subtract here.

how to improve your
**Prayer/Devotional/
Quiet Time**

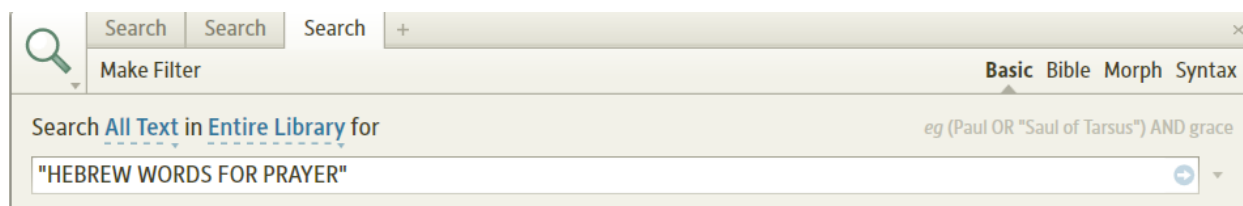
WHO PRAYED IN THE OLD TESTAMENT, PART 1?

It's one thing to study prayer, it another thing to study those who have prayed, and it's entirely on a different level when you pray. To improve your prayer life and grow in the area of prayer you need to study prayer and those who prayed in the Bible. The following search shows you how you can identify those who prayed in the Old Testament and New Testament. And once you identify those who pray, you can see how God responded.

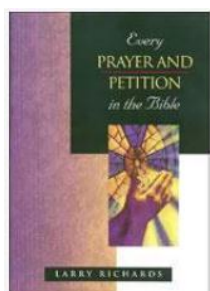
HOW TO:

- 1 First we need to identify all the Hebrew words associated with prayer.

Search > Basic Search > "Hebrew words for prayer"



- 2 If you have "[Every Prayer in the Bible](#)", they provide a list of Hebrew words associated with prayer

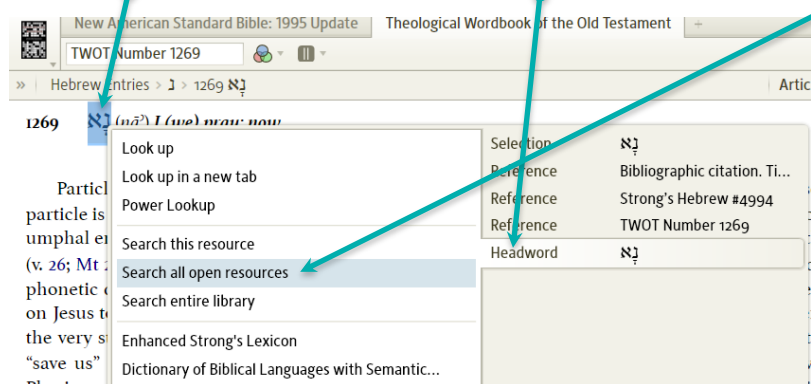


- 1722a** עֲתָר ('ātār) *suppliant, worshiper* (Zech 3:10).
- 1776** פָּלַל (pālāl) *intervene, interpose, pray*
- 1731** פָּגַע (pāga') *encounter, meet, reach, entreat, make intercession*
- 2412** שָׁמַע (šāma') *hear, listen to, obey*
- 2303** שָׁאַל (šā'al) *ask, inquire, borrow, beg*
- 694** חָנַן (hānan) *I, be gracious; pity; in Hithpael stem to beseech, implore*
- 1650** עָנָה ('ānā) *I, to answer, respond, testify, speak, shout*
- 1269** נָא (nā') *I (we) pray; now*

- 3 Open your favorite interlinear Bible. I will use the NASB95.

- 4 Next, click the link with the number above to open the TWOT dictionary to the Hebrew word

- 5 **Right click** on the Hebrew word and choose "headword" and then choose "Search all Open Resources"

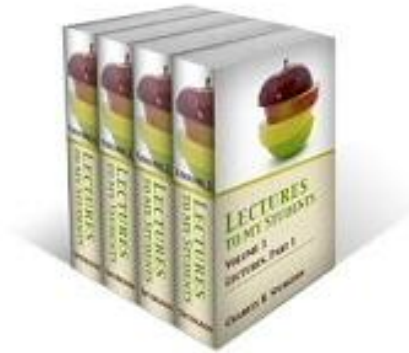


- 6 Examine your search results in your Bible by reading the context and observe what you learn about prayer

how to Preach

PREACHING CLASS WITH CHARLES H. SPURGEON

If you want to grow as a preacher, you have to study the Bible, read sermons from preachers throughout the ages, study contemporary preachers, read books on preaching, and most importantly practice by preaching to others. With this in mind, I would like to recommend to you one book that stands head and shoulders above all others as a starting place to improve your preaching: [Lecture to my Students by Charles H. Spurgeon](#)



The following Screen shot reveals the table of contents for each book.

Approximately 1000 pages of preaching insights from the Prince of Preachers!

Lectures to My Students, Vol. 1: A Selection from Addresses Delivered to My Students	Lectures to My Students, Vol. 2: Addresses Delivered to My Students	Lectures to my Students, Vol. 3: The Art of Illustration; Addresses Delivered to My Students
<p>Page ii</p> <p>Title Page Contents Introduction and Apology Lecture I: The Minister's Self-Watch Lecture II: The Call to the Ministry Lecture III: The Preacher's Private Prayer Lecture IV: Our Public Prayer Lecture V: Sermons Lecture VI: On the Choice of a Text Lecture VII: On Spiritualizing Lecture VIII: On the Voice Lecture IX: Attention! Lecture X: The Faculty of Impromptu Speech Lecture XI: The Minister's Fainting Fits Lecture XII: The Minister's Ordinary Conversation Lecture XIII: To Workers with Slender Apparatus</p>	<p>Page 281</p> <p>Title Page Contents Introduction The Pastors' College Lecture I: The Holy Spirit in Connection with Our Ministry Lecture II: The Necessity of Ministerial Progress Lecture III: The Need of Decision for the Truth Lecture IV: Open Air Preaching—A Sketch of Its History Lecture V: Open Air Preaching—Remarks Thereon Lecture VI: Posture, Action, Gesture, Etc. Lecture VII: Posture, Action, Gesture, Etc. (Second Lecture) Lecture VIII: Earnestness Lecture IX: The Blind Eye and the Deaf Ear Lecture X: On Conversion as Our Aim</p>	<p>Page 189</p> <p>Title Page Introductory Notes Contents Lecture I: Illustrations in Preaching Lecture II: Anecdotes from the Pulpit Lecture III: The Uses of Anecdotes and Illustrations Lecture IV: Where Can We Find Anecdotes and Illustrations? Lecture V: Cyclopædias of Anecdotes and Illustrations Lecture VI: Books of Fables, Emblems, and Parables Lecture VII: The Sciences as Sources of Illustration Appendix A Appendix B General Index Textual Index</p>
<p>LSV4:CCLAPCMT</p> <p>Page 324</p> <p>Title Page Preface Contents Lecture I Lecture II List of Biblical Commentaries and Expositions Eccentric Preachers A Complete List of All of Spurgeon's Sermons</p>		



Q & A

Q1: John, what collections do you use regularly for your Bible Study?

A1: I use the following collections for each step in the Bible study process. (Tools > Collections > New)

COLLECTION NAME: Step 01 – Prayer

COLLECTION RULE: title:prayer OR subject:prayer

COLLECTION NAME: Step 02 - Meditation & Devotions

COLLECTION RULE: type:devotional OR subject:devotional OR title:devotional

COLLECTION NAME: Step 03 - Historical Background Resources

COLLECTION RULE: subject:commentaries OR title:handbook OR title:survey OR subject:"bible--dictionaries" OR subject:archaeology OR subject:"bible--encyclopedia"

COLLECTION NAME: Step 04 - Theology: Journals & Systematics

COLLECTION RULE: type:journal OR subject:theology OR subject:doctrine

COLLECTION NAME: Step 05 - Observing the Text

COLLECTION RULE: title:outline OR title:survey OR title:charts OR author:gingrich –american

COLLECTION NAME: Step 06 - Word Studies

COLLECTION RULE: type:lexicon OR author:wuest OR title:"word pictures" OR title:"word studies" OR title:vocabulary OR title:"anchor yale" OR subject:diction*

COLLECTION NAME: Step 08 - Solving Problems

COLLECTION RULE: subject:"apologetics" OR type:journal OR type:commentary OR type:grammar

COLLECTION NAME: Step 09 – Application

COLLECTION RULE: subject:devotional OR series:"life application" OR author:courson OR type:lectionary OR subject:sermon

COLLECTION NAME: Step 10 – Illustrations

COLLECTION RULE: subject:illustrations OR subject:hymn OR subject:quotations OR subject:anecdote OR type:devotional

COLLECTION NAME: Step 11 – Sermons

COLLECTION RULE: title:sermons OR author:macarthur

Email me your questions, and maybe you will be in the next newsletter! tips@learnlogos.com